

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

20
26

الصف الثالث الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



rd 3
PREP
SECOND TERM

Contents

3rd. Prep.

English

Part 1

- **Unit 7:**
Sports
- **Unit 8:**
Cultures and Traditions
- **Unit 9:**
Courage and Survival
- **Review 3:**

Part 2

- **Unit 10:**
Animal Adaptations
- **Unit 11:**
Stories on the Move
- **Unit 12:**
Leadership and Teamwork
- **Review 4:**

Booklet (free with the book)

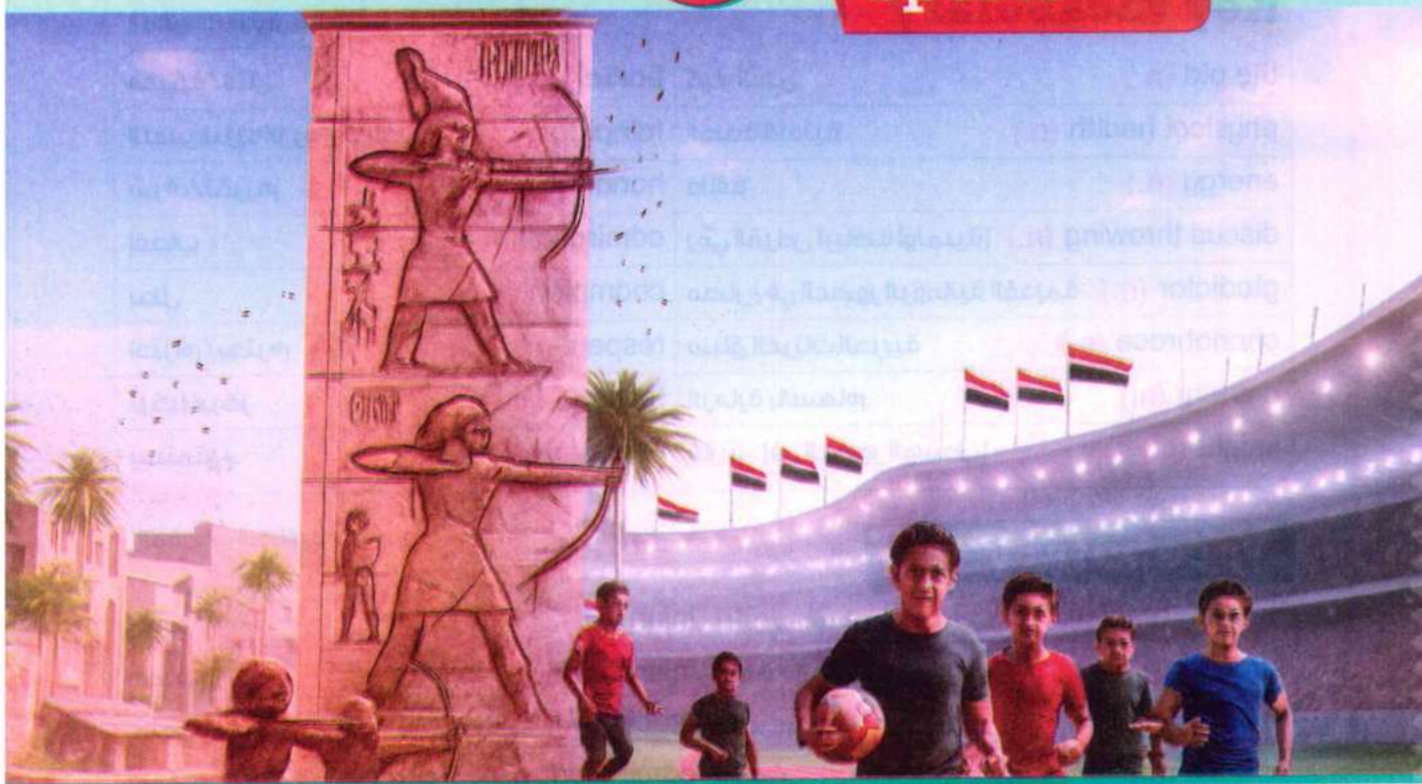
- **Dictation:**
- **Homework exercises on each unit:**
- **Tests on units:**
- **General Tests on the second Term**
- **Al Azhar Tests**

English

Unit

7

Sports



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Correctly compare and contrast ancient and modern sports using at least three specific points of difference.

Writing:

- Write a short descriptive or narrative text (100- 110) words about a sporting event, using relevant vocabulary from the unit.

Listening:

- Identify specific details regarding fair play in an audio text.

Speaking:

- Compare and contrast ancient and modern sports in a 3-minute role-play.
- Express personal views on values such as teamwork and fair play.
- Discuss how sports unite people in a group discussion.

Language:

- Use "used to + inf." to express past habits.



يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

the old (n.)	كبار السن	battle (n.)	معركة / قتال
physical health (n.)	الصحة البدنية	fair play (n.)	اللعب النزيه / الروح الرياضية
energy (n.)	طاقة	honor (n.)	شرف / تكريم
discus throwing (n.)	رمي القرص (رياضة أولمبية)	admiration (n.)	إعجاب
gladiator (n.)	مصارع في العصور الرومانية القديمة	champion (n.)	بطل
chariot race (n.)	سباق العربات الحربية	respect (n. / v. ed)	احترام / يحترم
archery (n.)	الرمية بالسهم	focus (v. ed / n.)	تركيز / يركز
knight (n.)	فارس (في العصور الوسطى)	enjoy (v. ed)	يستمتع بـ

Vocabulary



المفردات الاضافية

human (adj. / n.)	بشري - إنسان	injury (n.)	إصابة
strength (n.)	القوة / الصلابة	injured (adj.)	مصاب
speed (n.)	السرعة	global (adj.)	عالمي
chance (n.)	فرصة	admiration (n.)	إعجاب
wrestling (n.)	المصارعة	final (n. / adj.)	المباراة النهائية - نهائي
fight (n.)	قتال	rival (n.)	منافس / خصم
horse riding (n.)	ركوب الخيل	community (n.)	مجتمع
fencing (n.)	المبارزة (رياضة استخدام السيوف)	competition (n.)	مسابقة / منافسة
cricket (n.)	رياضة الكريكيت	event (n.)	حدث
athlete (n.)	شخص رياضي	reach (v. ed)	يصل إلى
teamwork (n.)	العمل الجماعي	compete (v. d)	يتنافس
opponent (n.)	خصم	include (v. d)	يشمل
lesson (n.)	مغزى / درس مستفاد	practice (v. d)	يمارس / يتدرب
victory (n.)	النصر	admire (v. d)	يُعجب بـ
award (n.)	جائزة	continue (v. d)	يستمر
sportsmanship (n.)	الروح الرياضية	smash (v. ed)	يحطم
honesty (n.)	الأمانة	attack (v. ed)	يهاجم

Definitions

discus throwing (n.) رمي القرص	round object thrown in sport	١. جندي ٢. عربة ٣. معاملة ٤. سمعة ٥. استحسان ٦. سمات ٧. انتباه
knight (n.) فارس	soldier ⁽¹⁾ in the Middle Ages	
chariot (n.) عربة حربية	cart ⁽²⁾ pulled by horses	
fair play (n.) اللعبة النزيه	treating ⁽³⁾ others honestly in games	
honor (n.) الشرف	good reputation ⁽⁴⁾ or respect from other people	
respect (n.) الاحترام	a strong feeling of approval ⁽⁵⁾ of somebody because of their good qualities ⁽⁶⁾	
admiration (n.) اعجاب	a feeling of respect and approval of somebody	
champion (n.) بطل	a person or team that won a competition in a sport	
focus (v.) يركز	to give attention ⁽⁷⁾ to one particular subject or person rather than another	

Expressions & Prepositions

bring people together	يجمع/ يوحد الناس معاً	for fun	من أجل المتعة
in the Middle Ages	في العصور الوسطى	of all ages	من جميع الأعمار
in the 19th century	في القرن التاسع عشر	create friendship	ينشئ/ يخلق الصداقة
popular in	شائع في (مكان)	inspire generation	يلهم الجيل
across the world	في أنحاء/ أرجاء العالم	connect people	يربط بين الناس
in peace	في سلام	take part in	يشارك في
take advantage of	يستفيد من	the Olympic Games = the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
strength (n.)	القوة	power / force		weakness / inability	الضعف
dangerous (adj.)	خطير	risky / unsafe		safe / harmless	آمن
popular (adj.)	شائع	famous / known		unpopular / unknown	غير شائع
global (adj.)	عالمي	universal / worldwide		local / regional	محلي
peace (n.)	سلام	calm / harmony		war / conflict	حرب
inspire (v.)	يلهم	encourage / motivate		discourage	يثبط
champion (n.)	بطل	winner		loser / defeated	خاسر
fair (adj.)	عادل	just		unfair	غير عادل

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
re-	تعطى معنى مرة أخرى / again	restart
ir-	تأتي بعكس الصفة	irregular
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	dangerous / famous
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم أو صفة	running / walking
-ation / -ition	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	generation / competition
-ship	تكون الاسم العام	friendship
th	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	strength / width

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يُبيِّن / يعرض	showed	shown
become	يصبح / يصير	became	become
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
give	يعطي	gave	given
prove	يثبت	proved	proved / proven



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 the + adjective = plural noun

• عند استخدام أداة التعريف "the" قبل بعض الصفات، تتحول هذه الصفات إلى إسم جمع، ويليهما فعل جمع:

Ex. The poor often need more support.

(NOT: needs)

Ex. The young do not understand the worries of the old.

2 spread / publish

• spread (v.) ينشر / ينتشر

• يستخدم الفعل (spread) للإشارة إلى عملية نشر أو انتشار تدريجي لمعلومة أو خبر أو إشاعة لتكون معروفة للآخرين:

Ex. The news spread quickly through the village.

• لاحظ أيضا أن الفعل (spread) يستخدم عند الإشارة إلى انتشار الأمراض أو الحرائق:

Ex. Fire quickly spread through the building.

Ex. The disease spread rapidly amongst the poor.

• **publish (v.)** ينشر

• يستخدم الفعل (**publish**) للإشارة إلى إعداد شيء مقروء وإصداره للجمهور للقراءة أو الرؤية أو الاستخدام - مقالة أو بحث أو تقرير أو كتاب أو مجلة أو رواية:

Ex. The author **published** her first **novel** last year.

Ex. I **published** a new **blog post** on my website this morning.

③ **reach / arrive**

• **reach (v.)** يصل إلى

• يستخدم الفعل (**reach**) بمعنى (يصل إلى)، ويليه المفعول به مباشرة دون وجود حرف جر بعده:

Ex. We finally **reached the city** after a long drive. (~~NOT: reached to/in the city~~)

Ex. She **reached the top** of the mountain at noon. (~~NOT: reached to/on the top~~)

• لاحظ أيضا أن الفعل (**reach**) يستخدم ليشير إلى التوصل إلى قرار أو اتفاق أو الوصول لهدف:

Ex. They are still trying to **reach an** agreement.

Ex. Have you **reached a decision** yet?

Ex. She finally **reached her goal** and took the money.

• **arrive (v.)** يصل

• يستخدم الفعل (**arrive**) بمعنى (يصل)، ولا بد وأن يأتي بعده حرف الجر (**in / at**) وليس (**to**)، إذا جاء بعده مفعول به:

Ex. They **arrived in Cairo** early in the morning.

Ex. We **arrived at the station** just before the train left.

Ex. When the guests **arrived**, the food was ready.

④ **earn / win**

• **earn (v.)** يكسب/يجني/يستحق

• يستخدم الفعل (**earn**) ليشير إلى الحصول على شيء ما أو كسب شيء من خلال العمل من أجله، مثل (المال، الاحترام، الثقة):

Ex. She **earned money** from her part-time job.

Ex. He **earned the respect** of his team.

• **win (v.)** يفوز بـ

• يستخدم الفعل (**win**) ليشير إلى الفوز في مسابقة أو مباراة أو الحصول على ميدالية أو كأس بسبب هذا الفوز:

Ex. They **won the match**.

Ex. She **won a prize** in the competition.

5 sport / sports

• sport (n.) الرياضة

• تستخدم كلمة (sport) كاسم مفرد غير معدود عند الإشارة إلى الرياضة بشكل عام كنشاط بدني، ويليهما فعل مفرد:

Ex. Sport is important for staying healthy.

Ex. Children should do more sport at school.

• sports (n.) الرياضة

• تستخدم كلمة (sports) كاسم جمع عند الإشارة إلى أنواع مختلفة من الأنشطة أو المنافسات الرياضية، ويليهما فعل جمع:

Ex. Football and basketball are popular sports.

Ex. Our school offers many sports, such as tennis and swimming.

6 hero / champion

• hero (n.) بطل

• يُستخدم الاسم (hero) ليشير إلى شخص يحظى بالإعجاب لشجاعته، وصفاته النبيلة، وإنجازاته الاستثنائية، غالبًا في مواجهة الخطر أو الشدائد، ويمثل قدوة ومصدر إلهام للآخرين:

Ex. The fireman was a hero for saving the children from the fire.

Ex. Mohamed Salah is a hero to many young football players.

• champion (n.) بطل

• يُستخدم الاسم (champion) ليشير إلى شخص هو الأفضل في مجال ما - غالبًا في الألعاب الرياضية أو المسابقات أو الإنجازات، مدافع ناجح عن قضية ما ومُناضل من أجلها.

Ex. Sara became the champion after winning the final match.

Ex. She was a champion of human rights.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The journalist was excited when her article was _____ in a daily newspaper.
a. spread b. published c. cancelled d. decided
- The teacher asked the students not to _____ false information about the school trip.
a. publish b. compete c. win d. spread
- We walked for hours but didn't _____ the lake before sunset.
a. reach b. arrive c. get d. swim
- The train will _____ Mansoura at exactly 8:00 pm, right on time.
a. reach in b. get up c. arrive in d. arrive to
- She works extra hours every week to _____ more money for her family.
a. win b. spread c. arrive d. earn

6. He was very happy to the gold medal in the swimming competition.
a. earn b. win c. spend d. pay
7. I enjoy playing many at school, especially basketball and volleyball.
a. sport b. sporty c. sports d. athletes
8. Our school has bought new equipment for the team.
a. sport b. sports c. shoes d. young
9. After saving the child, the firefighter became a local in the village.
a. hero b. champion c. competition d. championship
10. Sport part of human life for thousands of years.
a. have been b. were c. are d. has been
11. The young tennis player became the after winning the big tournament.
a. opponent b. champion c. hero d. sport
12. In many cities, often struggling to find affordable housing.
a. the young are b. the rich is c. the poor is d. the wealthy was



Reading



SB Page (12)



SB Page (12)

The History of Sport

Sport has been part of **human life**⁽¹⁾ for thousands of years. In **ancient times**⁽²⁾, people **competed**⁽³⁾ to show **strength**⁽⁴⁾, **speed**⁽⁵⁾, and skill. For example, **the Olympic Games**⁽⁶⁾ began in Greece more than 2,700 years ago. They **included**⁽⁷⁾ running, **wrestling**⁽⁸⁾, and **discus throwing**⁽⁹⁾. These games were not only **for fun**⁽¹⁰⁾, but also to **bring communities together**⁽¹¹⁾.

Later, the **Romans**⁽¹²⁾ enjoyed sports such as **gladiator fights**⁽¹³⁾ and **chariot racing**⁽¹⁴⁾. Although some of these were dangerous, they showed how important sport was in **Roman culture**⁽¹⁵⁾.

In the **Middle Ages**⁽¹⁶⁾, people in Europe practiced **archery**⁽¹⁷⁾, horse riding, and **fencing**⁽¹⁸⁾. These activities prepared **knights**⁽¹⁹⁾ for **battles**⁽²⁰⁾, and they also became forms of **competition**⁽²¹⁾.



استمع إلى النصوص

١. الحياة البشرية
٢. في العصور القديمة
٣. تنافس
٤. القوة
٥. السرعة
٦. الألعاب الأولمبية
٧. شملت
٨. المصارعة
٩. رمي القرص
١٠. للمتعة
١١. تجمع الناس معا
١٢. الرومان
١٣. معارك المصارعين
١٤. سباق العربات الحربية
١٥. الثقافة الرومانية
١٦. في العصور الوسطى
١٧. الرماية
١٨. المبارزة بالسيف
١٩. الفرسان
٢٠. المعارك
٢١. مسابقة

Modern sports started to grow in the 19th century. Football, tennis, and cricket became **popular**⁽²²⁾ in England and soon **spread**⁽²³⁾ across the world. The modern Olympic Games were **restarted**⁽²⁴⁾ in 1896 in Athens, and today they are a **global event**⁽²⁵⁾ where athletes from many countries compete in peace.

Sport is now practiced not only for winning, but also for **teamwork**⁽²⁶⁾, **fair play**⁽²⁷⁾, and health. It continues to **connect**⁽²⁸⁾ people, create friendships, and **inspire**⁽²⁹⁾ new **generations**⁽³⁰⁾.

٢٢. شائع
٢٣. انتشر
٢٤. أعيد تشغيلها
٢٥. حدث عالمي
٢٦. العمل الجماعي
٢٧. اللعب النظيف
٢٨. يربط
٢٩. يلهم
٣٠. أجيال

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. When did the Olympic Games first begin?
2. What sports did the Romans enjoy?
3. Why did people in the Middle Ages practice activities like archery and horse riding?
4. What are some reasons people practice sport today?

مهارات القراءة

1. They began more than 2,700 years ago in ancient Greece.
2. They enjoyed gladiator fights and chariot racing.
3. Because these activities prepared knights for battles and also became competitions.
4. People practice sport for teamwork, fair play, health, and to connect with others.

Answers:



Audio Script SB Page (14)

Mohamed Rashwan used to be one of Egypt's **most admired**⁽¹⁾ sports **champions**⁽²⁾.

He became famous during the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, where he **reached**⁽³⁾ the judo **final**⁽⁴⁾ against a strong Japanese opponent. His **rival**⁽⁵⁾ used to train hard, but he was **injured**⁽⁶⁾ at that time. Many people said Rashwan had the chance to **attack**⁽⁷⁾ his rival's weak point to win the gold medal.

Rashwan used to believe that fair play was more important than **victory**⁽⁸⁾. He chose to compete **with honor**⁽⁹⁾ and refused to **take advantage of**⁽¹⁰⁾ his rival's **injury**⁽¹¹⁾. Although he lost the final and won only the silver medal, he **earned**⁽¹²⁾ something far greater - **respect**⁽¹³⁾ and **admiration**⁽¹⁴⁾. Later, the Japanese people gave him a special **award**⁽¹⁵⁾ for his great **sportsmanship**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Rashwan's story reminds us that sport isn't just about medals. Athletes often say, "We used to train harder" or "We should have focused more." Rashwan **proved**⁽¹⁷⁾ that **honesty**⁽¹⁸⁾ and respect can make someone a true champion - even without gold.

١. الأكثر إثارة للإعجاب
٢. أبطال الرياضة
٣. وصل إلى
٤. المباراة النهائية
٥. خصم / منافس
٦. مصاب
٧. يهاجم
٨. الانتصار
٩. بشرف
١٠. يستفيد من
١١. إصابة
١٢. كسب
١٣. الاحترام
١٤. الإعجاب
١٥. جائزة
١٦. الروح الرياضية
١٧. أثبت
١٨. الأمانة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A / An _____ was a soldier in the Middle Ages.
a. teacher b. officer c. knight d. vet
2. A _____ is a cart pulled by horses.
a. car b. chariot c. boat d. bike
3. _____ play means treating others honestly in games.
a. Fair b. Pair c. Role d. Fun
4. The discus is a round object _____ in sport.
a. hit b. run c. dropped d. thrown

Synonyms and antonyms

5. "Champion" and "winner" are _____.
a. verbs b. synonyms c. adjectives d. antonyms
6. "Global" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. local b. limited c. universal d. national
7. The opposite of the word "inspire" is _____.
a. discourage b. support c. help d. encourage
8. "Dangerous" and "safe" are _____.
a. verbs b. synonyms c. nouns d. antonyms
9. They live together in peace. The antonym of peace is _____.
a. calm b. quiet c. war d. rest
10. The synonym of "strength" is _____.
a. powerful b. power c. weak d. weakness

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. To get the noun from the verb "compete", we add the suffix "_____".
a. ation b. ion c. ition d. sion
12. The prefix "Re-" in restart means _____.
a. again b. not c. no d. second
13. To form an adjective from the noun "danger" we add the suffix _____.
a. -ing b. -y c. -ous d. -ment
14. To get the opposite of "regular" we add the prefix _____.
a. dis- b. im- c. il- d. ir-
15. To get the adjective from the noun "friend" we add the suffix _____.
a. -ly b. -ship c. -er d. -ment

16. Archery and fencing prepared knights for
 a. tests b. exams c. battles d. meals
17. In this ancient sport, players use a bow and arrows. It is called
 a. fencing b. wrestling c. horse riding d. archery
18. fights were popular sports in ancient Rome.
 a. Player b. Student c. Gladiator d. Teacher
19. People respect the soldier because he fights with great courage and
 a. honor b. fear c. anger d. laziness
20. I'd like to express my for the way the teacher handled the lesson.
 a. determination b. conversation c. admiration d. communication
21. Good students always show for their teachers and classmates.
 a. anger b. fear c. respect d. hate

Guess the meaning

22. I will play against him in the final. He is my
 a. friend b. opponent c. teacher d. helper
23. When the other team won, our players showed and congratulated them.
 a. sportsmanship b. scholarship c. spaceship d. hardship
24. In, two players try to hold each other down to win the match.
 a. football b. fencing c. running d. wrestling
25. What does Rashwan's story teach us? - It teaches us honor.
 a. lesson b. unit c. word d. history
26. After working hard, he didn't have enough to go out with his friends.
 a. energy b. courage c. sleep d. memory
27. After years of training, he finally became the national in swimming.
 a. actor b. champion c. gladiator d. supporter
28. During the exam, students must very well to avoid mistakes.
 a. relax b. whisper c. complain d. focus
29. The scientist studied how behavior changes under stress.
 a. modern b. ancient c. human d. creative
30. This exercise helps build arm, especially for young athletes.
 a. strength b. patience c. confidence d. balance
31. Only students who train regularly can in the school marathon.
 a. prepare b. travel c. celebrate d. compete
32. Our new science book a chapter on climate change.
 a. exchanges b. includes c. describes d. protects
33. Sorry, I dropped the plate by mistake, and it on the floor.
 a. smashed b. polished c. played d. carried
34. The local organized a clean-up day to keep the park beautiful.
 a. continent b. country c. community d. festival



Language

قواعد لغوية

Used to + infinitive اعتاد أن

Affirmative

في الاثبات

فاعل + **used to + inf.**

Ex. I **used to get up** before 6 a.m. when I was a student.

Ex. I **used to get up** late, but now I don't.

Negative

في النفي

didn't use to + inf. / never + used to + inf.

Ex. She **didn't use to play** chess, but now she does.

Ex. He **never used to stay up** late when he was young.

Interrogative

في الاستفهام

use to + inf. + did + (أداة استفهام)

Ex. Did you **use to get up** early?

Ex. Where did you **use to go** for holiday?

Passive

في المبني للمجهول

used to be + p.p. + المفعول به

Ex. The classes **used to be cleaned** every morning.

Ex. They **didn't use to be told** what to do.

Usage

الاستخدام

١- للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة في الماضي لم نعد نقوم بها الآن نستخدم **used to + inf.**

• My grandfather **used to live** in a village . (but now he doesn't).

= My grandfather **no longer lives** in a village.

= My grandfather **doesn't live** in a village **any longer / anymore**.

٢- تستخدم **used to** أيضا للتعبير عن أوضاع أو حالات كانت موجودة في الماضي وتغيرت أو توقفت الآن:

• She **used to be** happy . (but now she **isn't**.)

Notes

لاحظ التعبير التالي:

اسم / ضمير **be used to + v.ing**

٢- ويأتي بمعنى اعتاد على / لا يجد مشكلة في (و يمكن أن يشير إلى الماضي أو الحاضر أو المستقبل)

Ex. We **are used to going to** school early. This is not a problem for us.

Ex. My father **was used to walking** to work, but now he **isn't**. He has a car.

يمكننا أيضا أن نقول:

اسم / ضمير **get / become used to + v ing**

Ex. They **became / got used to living** in this crowded city.

- يجب عدم الخلط بين الاستخدام السابق و بين استخدام الفعل **use** بمعنى (يستخدم):

عندما يأتي بمعنى (يستخدم) في / ل (يكون الفاعل في الغالب أداة أو آلة أو مادة خام - فنستخدم النموذج التالي:

subject + be + used to + inf. / be used for + v-ing

Ex. A saw **is used to cut / is used for cutting** wood.

Check your understanding ✓

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- I (**use / played**) tennis when I was in school.
- She (**use / is**) a teacher, but now she's a writer.
- They (**use / lived**) in London, but they moved to Paris last year.
- My brother (**use / not liked**) vegetables, but now he loves them.
- (**you / use / have**) a pet when you were a child?

B Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- I played football every weekend when I was a boy. (**used to**)
- She was shy when she was young. (**used to**)
- He didn't drink coffee, but now he does. (**not use**)
- Did you live next door to Mr. Smith? (**use to**)
- My hair was very long when I was young. (**used to**)

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. I (use) to play in the park when I was a child.
2. My father didn't (used) to work in a bank.
3. We used to (going) to Alexandria every summer.
4. He (not / use) to drink tea.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Mia (use / walking) to school, but now she takes the bus.
6. My grandparents (use / live) in a small village when they were young.
7. Sam (use / ate) a lot of sweets, but now he eats healthy food.
8. We (use / playing) computer games after finishing our homework.
9. I (use / am) afraid of the dark, but now I'm fine.
10. They (use / meets) in the park every weekend.
11. My sister (use / has) very long hair, but she cut it short last year.
12. People (use / writes) letters, but now they send emails.
13. Our teacher (use / tell) stories at the end of class.
14. I (use / drinks) milk, but now I drink juice.
15. My dad (not use / came) late, but now he does.
16. We (use / stayed) with our cousins in the village every summer.
17. Children (use / played) outside before mobile phones became common.
18. (you / use / rode) your bike to school when you were young?
19. People (use / lived) without smartphones.
20. In the past, I (use / spent) my summer holidays in the village.

2 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

SB Exercises

1. He used to ride his bike to school. (not)

2. Where did she live when she was a child? (use)

3. Did she travel alone to the village? (use)

4. She visited ancient sites on my visits to Luxor. (used)

5. She didn't like coffee when she was young. (use)

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. My father played tennis every weekend in the past. (not use)

7. Did she live in Paris when she was a child? (use)

8. We walked to school when we were young. (used)

9. My brother drank coffee every morning. (used)

10. They were good friends, but now they aren't. (used)

11. I watched that TV show every Friday when I was young. (used)

12. The shop wasn't open until late in the past. (not use)

13. I had a dog when I was young. (used)

14. People listened to the radio in the old days. (used)

15. She didn't wear glasses when she was young. (not use)



Speaking

Ask and answer about the history of sport:

• اسأل وأجب عن الأسئلة عن "كيف تتكيف الحيوانات من أجل البقاء في بيئاتها":

Question

1. Where and when did the Olympic Games first start?

- أين ومتى بدأت الألعاب الأولمبية لأول مرة؟

2. Why did people in Ancient Greece start the Olympic Games?

- لماذا بدأ الناس في اليونان القديمة الألعاب الأولمبية؟

3. What's your favorite sport?

- ما الرياضة المفضلة لديك؟

4. Why do people enjoy races?

- لماذا يستمتع الناس بالسباقات؟

5. What sport shows a lot of skill?

- ماهي الرياضة التي تُظهر مهارة كثيرة؟

Answer

- The Olympic Games began in Greece more than 2700 years ago.

- بدأت الألعاب الأولمبية في اليونان منذ أكثر من ٢٧٠٠ عام.

- Because the Greek people wanted to bring communities together.

-- لأن الشعب اليوناني أراد جمع المجتمعات معًا.

- My favorite sport is football because it is exciting and fast.

- رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة القدم لأنها مثيرة وسريعة.

- People enjoy races because they are competitive and full of energy.

- يستمتع الناس بالسباقات لأنها تنافسية ومليئة بالطاقة.

- I think archery shows a lot of skill.

- أعتقد أن الرماية تتطلب مهارة كبيرة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Omar and Salma are talking about a sports day they watched at school

Omar : Hi, Salma! Did you watch the school sports day yesterday?

Salma: Yes, I did! It was great. ①

Omar : I liked the football match. Our class played really well.

Salma: I enjoyed the running race. ②

Omar : That's true! The runners were very fast. ③

Salma: Yes, I play volleyball after school.

Omar : Nice! ④

Salma: I play it because it's fun and helps me stay active. ⑤

Omar : Yes, I'd love to! Let's plan a game this weekend.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

global - train - ancient - competition - medals

Many young athletes dream of competing in the Olympic Games. They ¹ for years to do well in the events and hope to win ² The opening ceremony inspires them as the Olympic torch is lit. During the ³, they try to break records and show great discipline. The Games remind everyone of teamwork, fairness, and ⁴ unity.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In the ancient Roman games, brave fighters raced in fast
a. chariots b. helmets c. weapons d. swords
- Daily walks have greatly improved my health.
a. political b. critical c. physical d. moral
- The coach told the team that play was more important than winning.
a. team b. fair c. cheating d. fighting
- The young artist received a lot of after presenting her new painting.
a. pollution b. permission c. calculation d. admiration
- Receiving the award from the President was a great for the scientist.
a. warning b. effort c. honor d. shame
- The runner increased her in the final round to win the race.
a. speed b. memory c. courage d. distance
- The price of the vacation will the hotel, the flights, and all the meals.
a. contain b. conclude c. repeat d. include
- The school planned several outdoor for the students during the picnic.
a. newspapers b. activities c. habits d. promises
- Good leaders earn the of their teams by helping and supporting others.
a. respect b. result c. moment d. limit
- In ancient Rome, a brave fought animals or other people to survive.
a. scientist b. emperor c. teacher d. gladiator

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (use / played) video games every day, but now I read books.
2. My sister (not use / liked) cheese when she was a small child.
3. (Does he / used / had) a dog when he lived on the farm?
4. We (use / went) to the same beach every summer holiday when we were young.
5. My mom (not use / drank) coffee in the morning, but now she does.

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. He had a small blue bike as a child, but he has a big red one now. (used to)
.....
2. We did not have a dog in the past, but we have one now. (use to)
.....
3. Did you visit the library every week when you were a student? (use to)
.....
4. She lived in that tall building with her family when she was young. (used to)
.....
5. I always watched cartoons on TV every morning as a boy. (used to)
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Sports"

.....
.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. Why do many people enjoy playing sports?
2. What benefits can sports give to students?
3. Which sport do you think is the easiest to learn, and why?
4. How can sports help people make new friends?



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

athlete (n.)	لاعب رياضي	respect (n. / v. ed)	الاحترام - يحترم
continent (n.)	قارة	united (adj.)	مُتَّحِد
excellence (n.)	الامتياز / التفوق	famous (adj.)	مشهور
opponent (n.)	خصم	modern (n.)	حديث / مُعاصر
peace (n.)	السلام	Olympic (adj.)	أوليمبي
friendship (n.)	الصداقة	ancient (adj.)	قديم

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

gymnastics (n.)	الجمباز	fan (n.)	مُشجّع (الفريق)
football (n.)	كرة القدم	rings (n.)	دوائر
basketball (n.)	كرة السلة	values (n.)	قيم
volleyball (n.)	الكرة الطائرة	achievements (n.)	إنجازات
tennis (n.)	التنيس	spirit (n.)	روح
swimming (n.)	السباحة	proudly (adv.)	بفخر
handball (n.)	كرة اليد	fairly (adv.)	بعادلة
running (n.)	الركض / الجري	remind (v. ed)	يُذكّر
weightlifting (n.)	رفع الأثقال	join (v. ed)	ينضم / يلتحق بـ
wrestling (n.)	المصارعة	attend (v. ed)	يحضر
athletics (n.)	ألعاب القوى	represent (v. ed)	يمثل
the Olympics (n.)	الألعاب الأولمبية	celebrate (v. d)	يحتفل بـ
nation (n.)	أمة / دولة / شعب		

Definitions

athlete (n.)	لاعب رياضي	a person who competes in sports	١. كُتِل يابسة ٢. قارة أنتراكتيكا
excellence (n.)	التفوق	the quality of being extremely good	
opponent (n.)	خصم	a person that you are playing or fighting against	
continent (n.)	قارة	one of the earth's large land masses ⁽¹⁾ (Asia, Australia, Africa, Europe, North and South America, and Antarctica ⁽²⁾)	

Expressions & Prepositions

The Olympic Games	دورة الألعاب الأولمبية	come together	يلتقي / يجتمع
I'm a big fan of ...	أنا مشجع كبير لـ	compete in	يتنافس في
I enjoy ... because ...	أنا أستمتع بـ... لأن...	win a medal	يفوز بميدالية
In my free time , I ...	في وقت فراغي، أنا	sports event	حدث رياضي
It makes me feel ...	هذا يجعلني أشعر بـ...		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
ancient (adj.)	قديم	old		modern / recent	حديث
respect (n.)	الاحترام	honor / admiration		disrespect	عدم احترام
peace (n.)	السلام	harmony		war / conflict	حرب / صراع
friendship (n.)	الصداقة	companionship / fellowship		rivalry	التنافس
united (adj.)	متحد	combined		divided	منقسم
famous (adj.)	مشهور	well-known / popular		unknown	غير معروف
modern (adj.)	حديث	recent		ancient / old	قديم

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	united
-ic	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	athletic
-s	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	Olympics / athletics

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hold	يُعقد / يقيم	held	held
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	taught
bring	يُحضِر / يجمع	brought	brought



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1) nation / country

• **nation (n.)** أمة / دولة / شعب

• تستخدم (nation) لتشير إلى مجموعة من الأشخاص الذين يتشاركون نفس الثقافة أو اللغة - حتى لو لم يعيشوا في نفس البلد:

Ex. The President asked the **nation** to be patient. (NOT country)

Ex. The **Japanese nation** is proud of its traditions. (NOT country)

• **country (n.)**

• تستخدم كلمة (country) لتشير إلى مكان أو منطقة جغرافية وسياسية لها حدود وموجودة على الخريطة:

Ex. Egypt is a **country** in North Africa. (NOT a nation)

Ex. Each **country** has its own flag and leader. (NOT a nation)

- باختصار شديد، عند الإشارة للبشر، نستخدم (nation)، وعند الإشارة لدولة لها حدود وخريطة جغرافية، نستخدم (country).

2) remind (v. ed) يذكر

• يستخدم الفعل (remind) بأربعة أشكال مختلفة:

• **remind somebody that + جملة** : يذكر شخصاً أن

Ex. She **reminded** her boss **that** he still had a meeting.

• **remind somebody about + شيء** : يذكر شخصاً بخصوص

Ex. I always have to **remind** my brother **about** his homework.

• **remind somebody + of + شخص أو شيء** : يذكر شخصاً بشخص أو شيء

Ex. This old woman **reminds** me **of** my grandmother.

Ex. This photo **reminds** me **of** my adventure in the forest last year.

• **remind somebody + to + فعل بالمصدر** : يذكر شخصاً أن يفعل شيء

Ex. I **reminded** my sister **to buy** bread on her way back.

3 athletics (n.) ألعاب القوى

• رغم أن كلمة (athletics) عبارة عن اسم جمع من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المعنى، إلا أنها يمكن أن يليها فعل مفرد أو فعل جمع:

Ex. Athletics **is** exciting to watch.

Ex. Athletics **are** popular in my school.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Egypt is a beautiful with a long history and famous landmarks.
a. nation b. continent c. country d. city
- The Egyptian is known for its creativity and kindness.
a. nation b. country c. continent d. district
- The teacher reminded the students they had to revise well for their exam.
a. of b. about c. with d. that
- This song reminds me our trip to Al-Kanater last summer.
a. that b. of c. at d. in
- I always have to remind my mother the times of her medicine.
a. about b. than c. then d. whether
- Please, remind me my mother when I get home.
a. to call b. call c. calling d. to calling
- Athletics my favorite event to watch.
a. been b. be c. is d. has
- In many schools, athletics taught every week.
a. have b. are c. been d. be



Reading



SB Page (16)



SB Page (16)

The Olympic Games⁽¹⁾ are the most famous⁽²⁾ sports event⁽³⁾ in the world. Today, they are held⁽⁴⁾ every four years in different countries. Athletes⁽⁵⁾ from more than 200 nations⁽⁶⁾ come together⁽⁷⁾ to compete in⁽⁸⁾ many sports such as football, swimming, athletics, and gymnastics. The Olympic flag, with its five rings, represents⁽⁹⁾ the five continents⁽¹⁰⁾ - Africa, Asia, the Americas, Europe, and Australia - of the world united⁽¹¹⁾ in friendship.

استمع إلى النص



١. دورة الألعاب الأولمبية
٢. مشهور
٣. حدث
٤. يقام
٥. رياضيون
٦. أمم
٧. يلتقي
٨. يتنافس في
٩. تمثل
١٠. قارات
١١. متحد

The Olympics are not only about winning medals. They also teach the values of **excellence**⁽¹²⁾, respect, and friendship. Athletes are expected to compete fairly, respect their **opponents**⁽¹³⁾, and **celebrate**⁽¹⁴⁾ achievements together. Egypt has proudly joined the modern Olympics since 1912 and has won medals in weightlifting, wrestling, and handball.

The Olympic **spirit**⁽¹⁵⁾ reminds us that sport can bring people from different countries, cultures, and languages together in peace.



١٢. تفوق / امتياز
١٣. خصوص
١٤. يحتفل بـ
١٥. روح

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. Where are the Olympic Games held?
2. What do the five rings on the Olympic flag represent?
3. What values do the Olympic Games teach?
4. Which sports has Egypt won medals in?

مهارة القراءة

- Answers:
1. They are held in different countries every four years.
 2. They represent the five continents of the world united in friendship.
 3. They teach excellence, respect, and friendship.
 4. Egypt has won medals in weightlifting, wrestling, and handball.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A/An _____ is a person who competes in sports.
a. receipt b. athlete c. deceit d. defeat
2. _____ is the quality of being extremely good.
a. Intelligence b. Confidence c. Performance d. Excellence
3. A/An _____ is a person that you are playing or fighting against in a game.
a. opponent b. appointment c. accident d. president
4. A/An _____ one of the earth's large land masses (Asia, Australia, Africa, etc).
a. component b. ingredient c. continent d. achievement

Synonyms and antonyms

5. The pyramids are ancient buildings. "Ancient" is an antonym for _____.
a. modern b. antique c. old d. outdated

6. We should show respect our parents and teachers. "Respect" means

- a. hatred b. generosity c. honor d. award

Prefixes and Suffixes

7. To get the adjective from the verb "unite", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. y b. d c. s d. n

8. To get the noun from the adjective "athletic", we add the suffix ".....".

- a. es b. er c. al d. s

Guess the meaning

9. The trained hard every day to prepare for the marathon race.

- a. gymnast b. footballer c. wrestler d. athlete

10. Africa is a very large that contains many different countries.

- a. country b. continent c. village d. incident

11. The team achieved by winning all the games they played this season.

- a. preference b. reference c. excellence d. evidence

12. The boxer faced a very strong in the final match.

- a. opponent b. assistant c. colleague d. partner

13. After the long war, the two nations finally signed a treaty for

- a. piece b. geese c. niece d. peace

14. Sports events can build strong between players.

- a. hardship b. friendship c. scholarship d. leadership

15. Athletes must show to their opponents.

- a. respect b. suspect c. insect d. object

16. The team was and worked together to win the championship.

- a. delighted b. excited c. united d. invited

17. The Olympics are a sports event that's known worldwide.

- a. gracious b. famous c. precious d. dangerous

18. In times, advances in technology have made the world smaller.

- a. sudden b. ancient c. odd d. modern

19. The Games take place every four years.

- a. Critic b. Historic c. Olympic d. Academic

20. Archaeologists discovered tools that were thousands of years old.

- a. ancient b. patient c. fluent d. vacant

21. Sara loves because she enjoys jumping and balancing.
 a. football b. swimming c. gymnastics d. painting
22. The teacher talked about good like honesty and kindness.
 a. colors b. values c. statues d. songs
23. The team has a strong and never gives up, even when they are losing.
 a. habit b. merit c. limit d. spirit
24. Players must compete and follow the rules of the game.
 a. slowly b. loudly c. fairly d. easily
25. You must the meeting if you want to know about the new rules.
 a. pretend b. attend c. spend d. send
26. Athletes from many countries will in the marathon.
 a. compete b. delete c. complete d. repeat
27. includes sports like weightlifting, running and jumping.
 a. Genetics b. Accounts c. Athletics d. Dynamics
28. My brother is a big of Manchester United, but I like Liverpool.
 a. fan b. pan c. man d. tan
29. We will have a big party to my sister's birthday this weekend.
 a. hesitate b. forget c. decorate d. celebrate
30. After winning the medal, the athlete held his country's flag
 a. loudly b. proudly c. clearly d. blindly
31. It makes me happy when I help my friends.
 a. feel b. make c. do d. have
32. She trained hard because she wanted to a medal.
 a. give b. gain c. win d. look

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

united - respect - together - excellence - Friendship

In ancient times, people lived in small groups and learned to show ① to one another. ② was important because friends worked ③ and shared goals and interests. When people stayed ④, they were stronger and safer, and their lives became better.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

tournament (n.)	بطولة / دوري	active (adj.)	نشيط
excitement (n.)	إثارة	relaxing (adj.)	مريح
competition (n.)	مسابقة	healthy (adj.)	بصحة جيدة
championship (n.)	بطولة	refreshed (adj.)	مُنْتَعِش
inspiration (n.)	إلهام	calm (adj.)	هادئ
respect (n.)	احترام	focused (adj.)	في حالة تركيز
fit (adj.)	لائق بدنيا	encourage (v. d)	يشجع

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

team sport (n.)	رياضة جماعية	energy (n.)	طاقة
individual sport (n.)	رياضة فردية	coach (n.)	مدرب
fitness (n.)	اللياقة البدنية	semi-final (n. / adj.)	قبل النهائي
relay race (n.)	سباق تناوبي	favorite (adj.)	مُفَضَّل
discipline (n.)	الانضباط	exciting (adj.)	مثير
teamwork (n.)	العمل الجماعي	regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
long jump (n.)	القفز الطويل	benefit (v. ed)	يفيد / ينفع - يستفيد
atmosphere (n.)	الشعور العام		

Expressions & Prepositions

That sounds fun	يبدو هذا ممتعاً	join a competition	ينضم لمسابقة
stay fit and active	يظل لائقاً بدنياً ونشيطاً	score points	يحرز نقاط
work as a team	يعمل كفريق	for me	بالنسبة لي
make friends	كُونُ صداقات	feel calm and focused	يشعر بالهدوء والتركيز
have fun	يستمتع	stay strong	يظل قوياً
show respect to	يُظهر الاحترام لـ	a real inspiration for	إلهام حقيقي لـ
on / at weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	take part in	يشارك في
(be) on a TV show	في برنامج تلفزيوني	spirit of competition	روح المنافسة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
inspiration (n.)	إلهام	encouragement		discouragement	تثبيط
fit (adj.)	لائق بدنيا	healthy / strong		unfit / weak	ضعيف
active (adj.)	نشط	energetic / lively		inactive / lazy	خامل / كسول
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	calming		tiring	مُجهِد
refreshed (adj.)	منتعش	renewed		exhausted	مُنْهَك
focused (adj.)	في حالة تركيز	concentrated		distracted	مُنْتَبِهَة
tournament (n.)	بطولة	competition/ championship			

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ition	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	competition
-ation	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	inspiration
-ship	تحول اسم الفاعل إلى اسم عام	championship

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
meet	يقابل	met	met
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
take part in	يشارك في	took part in	taken part in

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 not only but also (ليس فقط بل أيضا ...)

• تُستخدم هذه العبارة لربط فكرتين أو صفتين أو فعلين، وغالبًا ما يكون العنصر الثاني أكثر أهمية من الأول.
- يجب أن تكون العناصر المرتبطة متماثلة في جزء الكلام الذي تنتمي إليه، (اسم مع اسم، فعل مع فعل، صفة مع صفة، إلخ).

Ex. She plays **not only the piano but also the violin.** (الربط بين اسمين)

Ex. He **not only studied hard but also came first.** (الربط بين فعلين)

Ex. The car is **not only fast but also safe.** (الربط بين صفتين)

- إذا بدأت الجملة بـ "Not only"، يتم عكس ترتيب الكلمات بعدها؛ (فعل مساعد ثم فاعل):

Ex. **Not only did he call,** but he also paid me a visit.

2) both and

both and (كل من و)

• تُستخدم (both.....and....) لعطف عنصرين متماثلين من حيث جزء الكلام، ويليهما دائماً فعل جمع إذا بدأت بها الجملة:

Ex. The project requires **both time and money**. (لعطف اسمين)

Ex. She **both sings and dances** in the musical. (لعطف فعلين)

Ex. The story was **both sad and inspiring**. (لعطف صفتين)

Ex. **Both** my brother **and** my sister **are coming** to the party tonight.

(NOT is coming)

Check on Language Notes ✓

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The book is (**both**) fun to read but also educational.
2. She not only cooked dinner but (**and**) cleaned the kitchen after.
3. The athlete is both fast (**only**) strong.
4. Both Ahmed and Ali (**is going**) to the club after school.

B Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The team practiced every day and won the match. (**Not only**)
.....
2. Ahmed is clever and polite. (**both**)
.....
3. The teacher explained the lesson and gave us a quiz. (**not only**)
.....
4. The old man crossed the street, then he stopped a taxi. (**both**)
.....

Reading

SB Page (20)

SB Page (20)

استمع إلى النصوص



Salma : Hi Mona! What's your favorite sport?

Mona : My favorite sport is basketball. I play it with my friends after school, and sometimes we even join small **competitions**⁽¹⁾.

Salma : **That sounds fun**⁽²⁾! Why do you like basketball so much?

Mona : Because it's fast and **exciting**⁽³⁾, and it also helps me stay fit and **active**⁽⁴⁾. I love the feeling when we **work as a team**⁽⁵⁾ and **score points**⁽⁶⁾. What about you?

Salma : I really enjoy swimming. For me, it's very relaxing, and I feel healthy and **refreshed**⁽⁷⁾ after I swim. It also makes me feel calm and **focused**⁽⁸⁾.

Mona : That's great! Swimming sounds like a wonderful way to stay strong. Do you go to a club or a pool near your house?

Salma : Yes, I usually go to the sports club on weekends. It's also a good place to meet new people and practice **regularly**⁽⁹⁾.

Mona : Amazing! Maybe one day we can try each other's sport. You can join me for a basketball match, and I can try swimming with you.

Salma : That would be fun! Trying new sports is always a good idea. We can both learn new skills and enjoy ourselves.

Mona : Exactly! Sports are not only for **fitness**⁽¹⁰⁾ but also for **making friends**⁽¹¹⁾ and **having fun**⁽¹²⁾.



١. مسابقات
٢. يبدو ممتعاً
٣. مثير
٤. نشيط
٥. نعمل كفريق
٦. نحرز نقاط
٧. منتعش
٨. في حالة تركيز
٩. بانتظام
١٠. اللياقة البدنية
١١. تكوين الصداقات
١٢. الاستمتاع

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. What is your favorite sport?
2. When do you play or watch it?
3. Who do you play or watch it with?
4. Why do you like it?

مهاراة القراءة

1. My favorite sport is football.
2. I usually play or watch it in the afternoon or on weekends.
3. I play or watch it with my friends or family.
4. I like it because it is exciting, fun, and helps me stay active.

Answers:



SB Page (21)

- Imagine you are on a TV show called "Sports Talk" and complete the following dialog about each of the speaker's favorite sport:

Ahmed : Hey Karim, did you attend the school sports day yesterday?

Karim : Yes! It was exciting. I really enjoyed the relay race.

Ahmed : The relay race is so fun to watch, isn't it⁽¹⁾?

Karim : Exactly I Everyone was shouting and cheering for their teams.

Ahmed : I think sports events are great because they bring everyone together⁽²⁾.

Karim : True. They also teach us discipline and teamwork.

Ahmed : And they help us stay healthy and active⁽³⁾.

Karim : I agree. Next year, I want to take part in the long jump.

Ahmed : That's a good idea. You should start practicing for it now⁽⁴⁾!

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

- Listening to soft music is very relaxing. "Relaxing" is an antonym for
a. resting b. stressful c. comforting d. pleasing
- After a short nap, I felt refreshed. "Refreshed" is a synonym for
a. exhausted b. tired c. revived d. stressed
- She stayed focused during the exam. "Focused" is closest in meaning to
a. unfocused b. distracted c. alert d. stupid

Prefixes and suffixes

- To get the noun from the verb "compete", we add the suffix ".....".
a. ion b. ness c. sion d. ition
- To get the noun from the verb "inspire", we add the suffix ".....".
a. ation b. asion c. ism d. ness

Guess the meaning

6. The food you eat gives your body the _____ it needs.
a. energy b. strategy c. ceremony d. melody
7. Daily exercise is important for your _____ and overall health.
a. tiredness b. sadness c. fitness d. weakness
8. The football team's _____ gave them a clear plan for winning the final game.
a. student b. coach c. player d. vehicle
9. Eating fresh fruit and vegetables will greatly _____ your health and skin.
a. benefit b. spoil c. hurt d. damage
10. Long jump is a/an _____ sport because you play it alone.
a. team b. individual c. group d. dual
11. My friends and I love playing team sports, especially _____ after school.
a. skating b. gymnastics c. weightlifting d. football
12. The party had a fun and happy _____ with music and dancing.
a. furniture b. atmosphere c. temperature d. adventure
13. In a _____, each runner passes a stick to the next person on their team.
a. running contest b. jumping event c. long marathon d. relay race
14. Lack of _____ in our schools will lead to poor education.
a. discipline b. energy c. atmosphere d. freedom
15. The team won the match because they showed great _____ and helped each other.
a. homework b. schoolwork c. teamwork d. handwork
16. Swimming is my _____ sport because it helps me stay fit and healthy.
a. hungry b. careful c. enormous d. favorite
17. Even on rainy days, the children are very _____ and love to play in the garden.
a. slow b. active c. lazy d. sleepy
18. Sitting by the pool and reading a book is a very _____ way to spend the afternoon.
a. hard b. tiring c. stressful d. relaxing
19. Eating vegetables and fruit every day helps you stay strong and _____.
a. healthy b. sick c. weak d. wealthy

20. A cold shower in the morning makes me feel and awake.
 a. hungry b. exhausted c. refreshed d. relaxing
21. She took a deep breath to stay before starting her presentation.
 a. active b. calm c. fit d. healthy
22. She stayed on the test questions and didn't look around the room.
 a. focused b. worried c. silly d. distracted
23. The teacher always the students to ask questions if they don't understand.
 a. competes b. discourages c. forces d. encourages
24. The football teams will play in a big next month to win the city cup.
 a. excitement b. tournament c. practice d. leadership
25. The children filled with when they heard about the trip to the zoo.
 a. boredom b. fear c. excitement d. sadness
26. The cooking was fierce, with many talented chefs participating.
 a. cooperation b. conversation c. celebration d. competition
27. The basketball team worked hard all year to win the national
 a. championship b. friendship c. hardship d. warship
28. The brave firefighter was a/an to all the children.
 a. excitement b. respect c. inspiration d. competition
29. Good players always show to their opponents.
 a. anger b. respect c. fear d. doubt
30. He runs every morning to stay and strong.
 a. fit b. weak c. slow d. tired
31. If you want to friends, you can join the community club.
 a. make b. do c. give d. take
32. I always visit my grandparents weekends.
 a. with b. to c. on d. up
33. Our team worked hard to points in the game.
 a. miss b. score c. give d. lose
34. I will part in the school sports day this year.
 a. take b. make c. do d. give
35. My cousin was a TV show last summer.
 a. in b. at c. on d. of



Writing a sports report

• What is a sports report? ما هو التقرير الرياضي؟

A sports report is a journalistic piece that covers sporting events and provides clear and accurate information.

- التقرير الرياضي هو عمل صحفي يُغطي الأحداث الرياضية ويُقدم معلومات واضحة ودقيقة.

• It includes: يتضمن التقرير الرياضي

• Headline: العنوان الرئيسي

A title that reflects the event وهو عنوان يعكس الحدث

• Introduction: المقدمة

A brief summary of the event, including teams, players, and key details.

- وهي ملخص موجز للحدث، يشمل الفرق واللاعبين والتفاصيل الرئيسية.

• Main Events: الأحداث الرئيسية

Highlight key moments (goals, saves, etc...)

- سلط الضوء على اللحظات الرئيسية (الأهداف، التصديقات، إلخ).

• Conclusion: الخاتمة

Summarize the significance of future impact. لخص أهمية التأثير المستقبلي لهذا الحدث.



Writing



SB Page (22)



SB Page (22)

The National School Championship

Last week, our school team **took part in**⁽¹⁾ the **National School Championship**⁽²⁾, and the **atmosphere**⁽³⁾ here was full of **excitement**⁽⁴⁾ and energy. Teams from many cities joined the **tournament**⁽⁵⁾ to show their best skills and **spirit of competition**⁽⁶⁾. Our **coach**⁽⁷⁾ **encouraged**⁽⁸⁾ every player to **believe in**⁽⁹⁾ themselves and play with **teamwork**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **honesty**⁽¹¹⁾. Although we didn't win in the **semi-final**⁽¹²⁾, the players showed great respect to the winners.

This event was a real **inspiration**⁽¹³⁾ for everyone. It taught us that sport is not only about winning medals, but also about friendship.

١. شارك في
٢. بطولة المدارس الوطنية
٣. الجو العام
٤. الإثارة
٥. البطولة
٦. روح المنافسة
٧. المدرب
٨. شجع
٩. يؤمن بـ
١٠. العمل الجماعي
١١. الأمانة
١٢. قبل النهائي
١٣. إلهام



Writing Task

Write a report of (100-110) words about an important football match you watched.

يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية من خلال الإجابة على الأسئلة التالية:

1. Which two teams played in the football match, and where was it held?
2. What made the match exciting or special for you?
3. Who scored the winning goal, and how did the crowd react?
4. What did you learn from watching the match?

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Omar is talking to Salma about her favorite sport

Omar : Hi Salma! What's your favorite sport?

Salma : I love volleyball. I play it after school with my friends.

Omar : ①

Salma : It makes me feel happy and active.

Omar : That sounds fun. ②

Salma : I usually play it twice a week at the school playground.

Omar : Do you have a coach?

Salma : ③ He always encourages us.

Omar : Why is playing sports important?

Salma : Because ④

Omar : Can I join you next time you play?

Salma : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The school is hosting a football next month for all grades.
a. movement b. apartment c. tournament d. instrument
2. The child is very and loves to run and jump all day long.
a. active b. native c. lazy d. massive
3. Listening to soft music is very after a long day of hard work.
a. tiring b. stressful c. boring d. relaxing
4. The kind teacher was a big to all her students who wanted to help people.
a. expiration b. inspiration c. situation d. celebration

5. It is important to show to your teachers by listening when they talk.
a. respect b. effect c. benefit d. hatred
6. After a good night's sleep, I felt and ready to start the new day.
a. dressed b. depressed c. impressed d. refreshed
7. We usually go hiking weekends when the weather is nice.
a. of b. for c. on d. with
8. Cycling is an because you play alone, not with a team.
a. national b. individual c. team d. cultural
9. Running every day helps improve your
a. weakness b. illness c. kindness d. fitness
10. Athletes need strong to follow rules and keep training.
a. discipline b. medicine c. magazine d. gasoline

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

focused - flexible - distracted - refreshed - relaxing

Gymnastics is my favorite sport because it helps me stay strong and ①
After training, I like to take a short break because it feels ② When I rest,
I feel ③ and ready to continue. Gymnastics also teaches me to stay
④ while I practice new moves.

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Team sports."

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. Why are team sports popular among students?
2. How do team sports teach communication?
3. What skills can players learn from team sports?

Review on Unit 7

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

the old (n.)	كبار السن	united (adj.)	مُتّحد
energy (n.)	طاقة	Olympic (adj.)	أوليمبي
gladiator (n.)	مصارع في العصور الرومانية القديمة	ancient (adj.)	قديم
chariot race (n.)	سباق العربات الحربية	smash (v. ed)	يحطم
archery (n.)	الرمية بالسهم	board (v. ed)	يصعد إلى (سفينة أو طائرة)
knight (n.)	فارس (في العصور الوسطى)	doubt (v. ed)	يشك في
battle (n.)	معركة/قتال	combine (v. d)	يمزج/يجمع
fair play (n.)	اللعب النزيه/الروح الرياضية	tournament (n.)	بطولة/دوري
honor (n.)	شرف/تكریم	excitement (n.)	إثارة
admiration (n.)	إعجاب	competition (n.)	مسابقة
champion (n.)	بطل	championship (n.)	بطولة
respect (n. / v. ed)	احترام/يحترم	inspiration (n.)	إلهام
athlete (n.)	لاعب رياضي	active (adj.)	نشط
continent (n.)	قارة	relaxing (adj.)	مريح
excellence (n.)	الامتياز/التفوق	refreshed (adj.)	مُنْتَعِش
opponent (n.)	خصم	focused (adj.)	يشعر بالتركيز
peace (n.)	السلام		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Used to + infinitive اعتاد أن

Affirmative

في الإثبات

فاعل + **used to + inf.**Ex. I **used to get up** late, but now I don't.

Negative

في النفي

didn't use to + inf. / never + used to + inf.Ex. She **didn't use to play** chess, but now she does.

Interrogative

في الاستفهام

فاعل + **use to + inf.?** (استفهام)Ex. Did you **use to get up** early?Ex. Where did you **use to go** for holiday?

Passive

في المبني للمجهول

المفعول به + **used to be + p.p.**Ex. The classes **used to be cleaned** every morning.Ex. They **didn't use to be told** what to do.

Usage الاستخدام

- ١- للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة في الماضي لم نعد نقوم بها الآن نستخدم **used to + inf.**
- My grandfather **used to live** in a village . (but now he doesn't).
- ٢- تستخدم **used to** أيضا للتعبير عن أوضاع أو حالات كانت موجودة في الماضي وتغيرت أو توقفت الآن:
- She **used to be** happy . (but now she isn't.)



- يجب عدم الخلط بين الاستخدام السابق وبين استخدام الفعل **use** بمعنى (يستخدم):
 عندما يأتي بمعنى يُسْتَخْدَم في / ل (يكون الفاعل في الغالب أداة أو آلة أو مادة خام -
 فنستخدم النموذج التالي:

subject + be + **used to + inf. / be used for + v-ing**Ex. A saw **is used to cut / is used for cutting** wood.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Sports are an important part of our daily lives. Many people enjoy doing sports because they help us stay healthy and strong. Children and adults can choose different sports such as football, swimming, running, or basketball. Playing sports teaches us how to work with others and how to respect rules. It also helps us make new friends and feel more confident. Schools often encourage students to join sports clubs so they can discover what they like. Some people enjoy team sports, while others prefer individual activities. No matter the sport, being active is good for our bodies and minds. Sports also bring fun and excitement to our lives.

Lessons 5 & 6

Team sports are an important part of many people's lives. They bring players together and teach them how to work as a team. In games like football, basketball, and volleyball, every player has a special role, and everyone must cooperate to win. Team sports also help us build strong communication skills because players need to talk and plan during the game. They make us active, healthy, and confident. Many students enjoy team sports because they make new friends and learn how to solve problems together. Team sports are not only about winning; they are also about respect, support, and learning from mistakes. That's why team sports are valuable for everyone.

Al-Azhar Test

My favorite sport is swimming. I enjoy it because it helps me stay healthy and strong. I usually go swimming twice a week at the local sports centre. When I swim, I feel relaxed and forget about stress. Swimming also improves my breathing and fitness. I always feel happy after finishing my training.

Test on Unit 7

Last Thursday, our school held an exciting Sports Day that everyone had been waiting for. The playground was decorated with colorful flags, and music played loudly as students arrived. Each class wore a different T-shirt color to show team spirit. The events included running races, long jump, tug of war, and a fun obstacle course designed by the PE teachers. Parents were invited, and many cheered loudly for their children. My favorite moment was the teachers' relay race, which made everyone laugh. At the end of the day, medals were given to the winners, but our principal reminded us that teamwork and fair play were the real prizes.

1 Complete the following dialog:

Omar and Youssef are talking about individual sports

Omar : Hi Youssef! I was reading about individual sports today.

Youssef : Really? That's nice.

Omar : ①

Youssef : I like running.

Omar : Running sounds fun. Why do you like it?

Youssef : ②

Omar : Also, I think it keeps you healthy.

Youssef : ③

Omar : Great! I hope you enjoy your sport.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Good helps a group reach goals faster.
a. teamwork b. homework c. handwork d. artwork
- I used to my weekends at home, but now I go out with my friends.
a. spending b. spent c. spend d. spends
- Students greatly from joining school sports clubs.
a. benefit b. divide c. repeat d. avoid
- My sister help with the housework, but now she does.
a. used to b. didn't use to c. was used to d. wasn't used to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

healthy - coach - gymnastics - weights - championship

Ali is training for a weightlifting ① His coach teaches him how to build strength. Ali eats vegetables every day to stay ② and strong. He practices hard, lifts heavier ③ each week, and listens carefully to his ④

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She (not use / be) very confident, but now she is.
- I (used / watch) cartoons every Saturday morning.
- (they / use / meet) after school to practise basketball?
- We (used / eat) dinner together as a family every day.

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Practicing sports is important for staying healthy and feeling energetic. When people play sports regularly, their bodies become stronger, and they develop better fitness. Sports also help reduce stress because physical activity makes the mind calmer and more focused. In addition, joining sports teams teaches valuable skills such as discipline and teamwork. Young people who play sports often feel more confident and motivated in their daily lives. Whether it's running, swimming, or playing football, practicing sports helps everyone build good habits and enjoy a balanced lifestyle.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do sports help people feel calmer and more focused?

2. Which sport do you think helps you the most, and why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. According to the text, practicing sports helps people feel -----.

a. more stressed

b. more energetic

c. more tired

d. less focused

4. One benefit of joining sports teams is learning -----.

a. cooking skills

b. driving skills

c. discipline and teamwork

d. painting skills

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your favorite sport"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- To get the noun from the adjective "active", we add the _____ "ity".
a. suffix b. prefix c. antonym d. synonym
- I found inspiration in my coach's words. "Inspiration" is an antonym for _____.
a. encouragement b. development c. improvement d. discouragement
- She decided to _____ the competition to test her skills against others.
a. show b. take c. work d. join
- His main reason for running was to improve his physical _____.
a. discipline b. inspiration c. fitness d. respect

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

tournament - show - balance - nervous - proud

My cousin appeared on a TV ① _____ last Friday. It was a quiz program testing general knowledge. He was very ② _____ at first, but he answered almost every question correctly. In the end, he won the ③ _____. Our whole family watched it together, and we were so ④ _____ of his amazing performance.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Last winter, a small mountain village faced an unusual problem: several homes were losing vegetables from their outdoor storage boxes. At first, the villagers thought someone was stealing them, but soon they discovered the real culprit—a young red fox. The fox was not dangerous; it was simply hungry and searching for food during the cold months. Instead of chasing it away, the villagers decided to help. They built a small wooden shelter near the forest and left food there each evening. Over time, the fox stopped visiting the houses and used the shelter instead. This experience taught the villagers the value of understanding and protecting wild animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The villagers first believed that the missing vegetables were taken by _____.
a. birds b. a thief c. a farmer d. a neighbor
- The villagers built a small wooden shelter to _____.
a. trap the fox b. store their vegetables
c. provide food for the fox d. keep warm in winter
- The experience taught the villagers the importance of _____.
a. planting more vegetables b. avoiding wild animals
c. protecting wildlife d. moving their homes

B. Answer the following questions

4. What unusual problem did the village face last winter?

5. How did the villagers solve the problem with the fox?

6. What lesson did the villagers learn from this experience?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Professor Aronnax was invited on the voyage because he was a
 - wealthy nobleman
 - skilled harpooner
 - warship captain
 - marine scientist
- When the monster was finally seen, the crew attacked it using
 - cannons and harpoons
 - nets and traps
 - swords and axes
 - knives and axes
- The sea monster responded to the crew's attack by
 - diving deep and disappearing
 - stopping its attack
 - speaking to the crew
 - turning and hitting the ship
- When the monster turned and hit the ship,
 - it was killed
 - the ship was destroyed
 - the crew were thrown into the sea
 - the crew celebrated their victory

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What kind of ship did the crew take to capture the sea monster?

6. What happened to the crew when the sea monster suddenly hit the ship?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. When I was young, I didn't listen to classical music. (not use)
-
2. Did your sister work in a bank? (use)
-
3. In the past, we spent our holidays at the seaside. (used)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My town (not use / be) very much noisy as it's now.
2. She (use / has) a bicycle, but it was stolen.
3. (it / used / snowed) a lot in this region in winter?

7 Finish the following dialog:

Ahmed and Tamer are talking about football

Ahmed : Hi Tamer! Did you watch yesterday's football match?

Tamer : Yes, it was a fantastic match.

Ahmed : ①

Tamer : Mohamed Salah is my favorite footballer.

Ahmed : ②

Tamer : Because he scores amazing goals.

Ahmed : Do you like playing football?

Tamer : ③

Ahmed : Where do you play football games with your friends?

Tamer : ④

Ahmed : Can I join you in the next match you play?

Tamer : ⑤

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A sports day at school"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

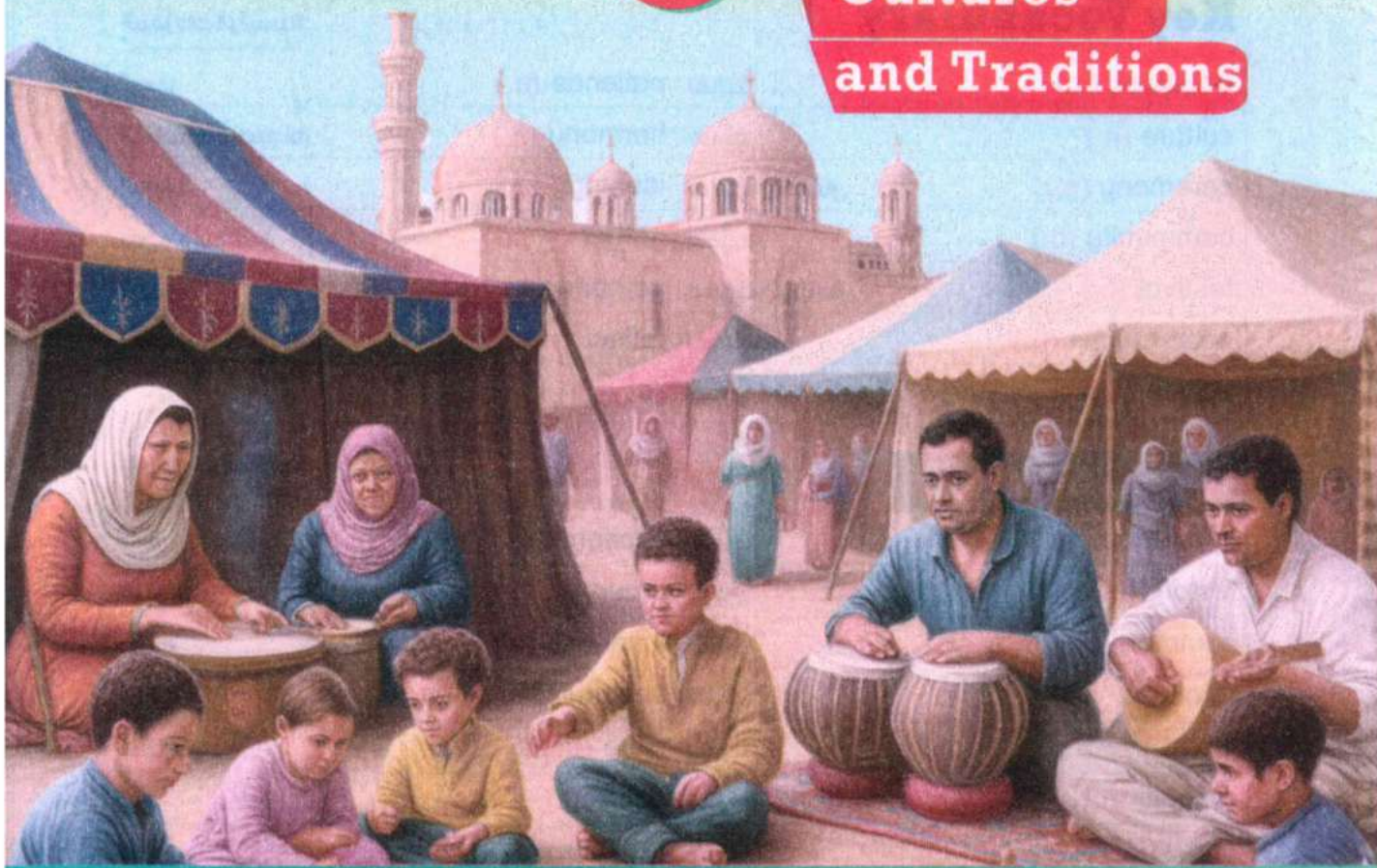
1. What activities did the students do on the sports day?
2. How did the teachers help during the sports day?
3. Which part of the sports day did you think was the most exciting, and why?
4. How did the students feel at the end of the sports day?

English

Unit

8

Cultures and Traditions



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the core values in short texts describing specific cultural practices.

Writing:

- Write a short article expressing a personal opinion on the importance of traditions using at least two reasons to support their view.

Listening:

- Correctly identify three specific cultural details in a short interview about cultures and traditions.

Speaking:

- Compare and contrast traditions from two different countries in a 3-minute conversation.
- Share personal experiences about a local or family tradition, providing at least three specific details in a conversational setting.

Language:

- Use "defining relative clauses."



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

traditions (n.)	تقاليد	patience (n.)	الصبر
culture (n.)	ثقافة	harmony (n.)	التناغم/الانسجام
ceremony (n.)	مراسم/احتفال	identity (n.)	الهوية
community (n.)	مجتمع	gather (v. ed)	يتجمع/يجتمع
festival (n.)	مهرجان/احتفال	gathering (n.)	تجمع
celebrations (n.)	احتفالات	reflect (v. ed)	يعكس
values (n.)	قيم		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

importance (n.)	اهمية	excitement (n.)	اثارة
history (n.)	تاريخ	elderly (adj.)	كبير السن
common (adj.)	شائع	kindness (n.)	طيبة
relatives (n.)	اقارب	sculptures (n.)	تماثيل
joy (n.)	بهجة	alike (adj.)	مشابه
respect (n.)	احترام	spirit (n.)	روح
snow (n.)	جليد	transformation (n.)	تحول
massive (adj.)	هائل / ضخم	customs (n.)	عادات
creativity (n.)	ابداع	neighbors (n.)	جيران
seasonal (adj.)	فصلي	wisdom (n.)	حكمة
friendship (n.)	الصداقة	gift (n.)	هدية
guest (n.)	ضيف	joyful (adj.)	مبهج
source (n.)	مصدر	Easter (n.)	عيد الفصح
sports events (n.)	أحداث رياضية	real-life (n.)	الحياة الواقعية
region (n.)	إقليم/منطقة	record (v.) (ed)	يسجل
feast (n.)	وليمة	pass (v.) (ed)	يمرر/ينقل
music (n.)	موسيقى	appear (v. ed)	يظهر
clothes (n.)	ملابس	greet (v. ed)	يحيي



Definitions

tradition (n.)	تقليد	a belief ⁽¹⁾ , custom or way of doing something	١. اعتقاد
culture (n.)	ثقافة	the way of life of a group of people	٢. إشارة لـ
reflect (v.)	يعكس	to show or be a sign of ⁽²⁾ the nature of something or of somebody's attitude ⁽³⁾ or feeling	٣. موقف
ceremony (n.)	احتفال	special event like a wedding	٤. القدرة
patience (n.)	الصبر	the ability ⁽⁴⁾ to stay calm and accept a delay or something annoying ⁽⁵⁾ without complaining ⁽⁶⁾	٥. مزعج
harmony (n.)	الانسجام	peace or balance ⁽⁷⁾ among people or things	٦. شكوى
identity (n.)	الهوية	who someone is	٧. توازن

Expressions & Prepositions

feel connected to	يشعر بالارتباط بـ	tells a story about	يحكي قصة عن
around the world	حول العالم	for example	على سبيل المثال
care for	يعتني بـ	light up	ينير
such as	مثل	rich in	غني بـ
step by step	خطوة بخطوة		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
appear (v)	يظهر	emerge		disappear	يختفي
common (adj)	منتشر	familiar		uncommon	غير منتشر
massive (adj)	هائل	huge		tiny	ضئيل
different (adj)	مختلف	various		similar	متشابه
harmony (n.)	انسجام	balance		conflict	صراع

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	excite ment
-ce	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	importance - patience
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kind ness
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	creativity

Unit 8 Cultures and Traditions

-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	seasonal - cultural
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	transformation
-ship	تحول الاسم إلى اسم عام	friendship
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	joyful

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
tell	يخبر	told	told
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
show	يبين	showed	shown
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
teach	يدرس	taught	taught
light up	ينير	lit up	lit up



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 clothes / cloth / clothing / a cloth

• **clothes (n)** ملابس: اسم جمع ليس له مفرد

Ex. All my **clothes** are packed and I'm ready for my trip.

• **cloth (n)** قماش: اسم (لا يعد)

Ex. This dress is made of the finest silk **cloth**.

• **clothing (n)** الملابس-الكساء: اسم (لا يعد)

Ex. The flood victims need shelter and warm **clothing**.

• **a cloth (n)** قطعة قماش (تستخدم لغرض معين): اسم مفرد

Ex. Is there a clean **cloth** for the table?

2 feel / fall / fail / fill

• **feel (v)** (felt - felt) يشعر

Ex. Do you still **feel** hungry?

• **fail (v)** (failed - failed) يفشل

Ex. Doctors **failed** to save the girl's life.

• **fall (v)** (fell - fallen) يقع/يسقط

Ex. He slipped and **fell** on the ice.

• **fill (v)** (filled - filled) يملأ

Ex. He poured me a drink and **filled** his own glass.

3 elderly / the elderly

يوجد بعض الصفات إذا سبقت بـ (the) تتحول إلى اسم جمع مثل (old - young - elderly - rich - poor)

• **elderly (adj)** كبير في السن

Ex. He left his seat for **an elderly** woman.

• **the elderly (n)** كبار السن

Ex. The young must respect **the elderly**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How much _____ do I need to make a suit ?
a. clothes b. cloth c. clothing d. cloths
- My job was _____ the flour sacks.
a. filling b. falling c. failing d. feeling
- I _____ my driving test the first time.
a. filled b. felt c. fell d. failed
- Stop exercising if you _____ any pain.
a. fail b. fall c. feel d. fill
- Ramy was wearing sports _____ and sunglasses.
a. clothe b. clothes c. cloths d. cloth
- It's important to be kind and patient with your _____ relatives.
a. costly b. curly c. chilly d. elderly

Reading

SB Page (25)

SB Page (25)

استمع إلى النص

- Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold.

Traditions⁽¹⁾ are an important part of every **culture**⁽²⁾. They help people feel connected to their families, communities, and history. Around the world, traditions **appear**⁽³⁾ in festivals, food, music, and **celebrations**⁽⁴⁾. Each tradition tells a story about the values of a society.

- التقاليد
- الثقافة
- تظهر
- احتفالات
- من الشائع
- الأقارب
- تجلب



For example, in Egypt, **it is common**⁽⁵⁾ for people to wear new clothes and visit **relatives**⁽⁶⁾, during festivals. This tradition, which **brings**⁽⁷⁾ joy and excitement, shows

the importance of family. Another important **value**⁽⁸⁾ in Egyptian culture is respect for **the elderly**⁽⁹⁾. Younger people are taught to greet and care for older people, which **reflects**⁽¹⁰⁾ kindness and respect. In Japan, the tea **ceremony**⁽¹¹⁾, which is carefully performed step by step, reflects respect, **patience**⁽¹²⁾, and **harmony**⁽¹³⁾. Another famous tradition is the Sapporo snow festival in Japan, where people **gather**⁽¹⁴⁾ to build massive ice and snow **sculptures**⁽¹⁵⁾ that light up the winter city. The celebration, which draws people and tourists alike, shows **creativity**⁽¹⁶⁾, community **spirit**⁽¹⁷⁾ and the beauty of **seasonal transformation**⁽¹⁸⁾.

Although traditions are different, they often teach similar values such as respect, friendship, and sharing. Some **customs**⁽¹⁹⁾ are hundreds of years old, while others are modern but are quickly becoming part of cultural **identity**⁽²⁰⁾.

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. What are two examples of traditions mentioned in the passage?
2. According to the passage, what does the tradition of younger people caring for the elderly in Egypt show?
3. What is one similar value that different traditions often teach?

- Answers:
1. Festivals and food (also acceptable: music, celebrations, wearing new clothes, visiting relatives, respecting the elderly, the tea ceremony, or the snow festival).
 2. It reflects/shows kindness and respect.
 3. Respect (also acceptable: friendship or sharing).

مهارات القراءة

٨. قيمة
٩. كبار السن
١٠. تعكس
١١. احتفال
١٢. الصبر
١٣. الانسجام
١٤. يتجمع
١٥. التماثيل
١٦. الإبداع
١٧. الروح
١٨. التحول الموسمي
١٩. العادات
٢٠. الهوية



SB Page (27)

Traditions in Italy

Italy is a country rich in traditions that bring families and **communities**⁽¹⁾ together. One of the most famous traditions is the **celebration**⁽²⁾ of food. Italians enjoy long family **gathering**⁽³⁾, often starting with pasta and ending with coffee. Every region has its own special dishes, such as pizza in Naples and risotto in Milan. **Festivals**⁽⁴⁾ are also an important part of Italian culture. At Easter, people share special cakes, which at Christmas, gather to **share**⁽⁵⁾ and **exchange**⁽⁶⁾ gifts. Weddings, too, are celebrated with music, dancing, and big feasts. These traditions show how much Italians **value**⁽⁷⁾ family, history, and joyful gatherings.

١. المجتمعات
٢. احتفال
٣. تتجمع
٤. مهرجانات
٥. تتشارك
٦. يتبادل
٧. يقيم/يقدر



Audio Script

SB Page (28)

An interview between a presenter and a guest.

Welcome to Culture Talk! Today we are learning about **traditions**⁽¹⁾ and customs. Can you **share**⁽²⁾ an example from your country?

Guest : Of course. In my town, there is a **festival**⁽³⁾ which is celebrated every spring. People wear colorful clothes and **play**⁽⁴⁾ traditional music, which makes the streets full of life.

Presenter : That sounds exciting! What do people usually do during this festival?

Guest : Families **prepare**⁽⁵⁾ special meals that are shared with neighbors. Dancing and singing are also enjoyed, and everyone **feels connected**⁽⁶⁾.

Presenter : Wonderful. In Egypt , many people respect the **elderly**⁽⁷⁾, who are considered a **source**⁽⁸⁾ of **wisdom**⁽⁹⁾. Is there a similar **value**⁽¹⁰⁾ in your culture?

Guest : Yes, respect for older people is very important. Children are taught customs that show kindness and **honor**⁽¹¹⁾.

Presenter : One last question- why are cultural interviews important?

Guest : Because they give us real-life stories. Many interviews are **recorded**⁽¹²⁾ and then shared online, so traditions are preserved and **passed**⁽¹³⁾ to new **generations**⁽¹⁴⁾.

١. تقاليد
٢. يشارك
٣. مهرجان
٤. يعزف
٥. يجهز
٦. يشعر بالارتباط
٧. الكبار في السن
٨. مصدر
٩. الحكمة
١٠. قيمة
١١. الشرف
١٢. تسجل
١٣. تنقل / تتمرر
١٤. الأجيال

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. is the ability to stay calm and accept something annoying.
a. Harmony b. Patience c. Tradition d. Ceremony
2. A / An is a special event like a wedding.
a. ceremony b. harmony c. tradition d. identity
3. A is a belief, custom or way of doing something.
a. harmony b. ceremony c. culture d. tradition
4. A is the way of life of a group of people.
a. culture b. harmony c. ceremony d. patience

5. _____ is peace or balance among people or things.
 a. Ceremony b. Culture c. Tradition d. Harmony
6. A / An _____ is who or what somebody or something is.
 a. patience b. tradition c. identity d. harmony

Synonyms and antonyms

7. Bad dreams are common among children. "Common" can be replaced by _____.
 a. easy b. international c. familiar d. uncommon
8. A man suddenly appeared from behind a tree. "Appeared" is opposite in meaning to _____.
 a. showed b. emerged c. disappeared d. stayed
9. The castle has massive walls. "Massive" is similar in meaning to _____.
 a. boring b. favorite c. huge d. weak
10. Her jacket's different to mine. "Different" is opposite in meaning to _____.
 a. tiny b. similar c. various d. huge

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. The suffix " _____ " gives the noun of the word "excite".
 a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ion
12. To get the adjective from the noun "joy", we add the suffix " _____ ".
 a. -ful b. -able c. -ment d. -ion
13. The suffix " _____ " gives the noun of the word "kind".
 a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ness
14. To get the noun from the verb "transform", we add the suffix " _____ ".
 a. -ship b. -able c. -ation d. -ness

Guess the meaning

15. Every country has its own food, music, and _____ that make it special.
 a. patience b. culture c. wisdom d. snow
16. The _____ of the team was clear as they all worked together happily.
 a. joy b. spirit c. history d. food
17. During festivals, all our _____ meet at my grandmother's house.
 a. relatives b. identities c. events d. sculptures
18. The wedding was a beautiful _____ with music, flowers, and vows.
 a. ceremony b. identity c. region d. kindness
19. The children waited with great _____ for the festival to begin.
 a. excitement b. patience c. harmony d. creativity

20. We must work in with each other to finish the project on time.
a. joy b. spirit c. harmony d. importance
21. The whole came together to clean up the park.
a. history b. community c. feast d. values
22. The wedding brought great to everyone in the family.
a. ice b. joy c. clothes d. source
23. We should always our teachers and elders.
a. enjoy b. greet c. respect d. appear
24. After the storm, people began to in the town square to help each other.
a. reflect b. gather c. explore d. hide
25. The ancient pyramid was a structure that took many years to build.
a. common b. tiny c. seasonal d. massive
26. Painting and writing are great ways to show your
a. creativity b. identity c. wisdom d. feast
27. The workers at the store are always very helpful to customers.
a. elderly b. joyful c. famous d. alike
28. Our new brought us a cake to welcome us to the street.
a. guests b. neighbors c. relatives d. values
29. Family is the main of love and support for most people.
a. importance b. spirit c. source d. identity
30. Showing to others, like helping them when they fall, is very important.
a. kindness b. importance c. spirit d. source



Language

قواعد لغوية

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

A relative clause gives more information about a noun.

تعطي جملة الوصل مزيداً من المعلومات حول الاسم.

Relative Pronouns:

• هي الجمل التي تبدأ بأحد ضمائر الوصل (who /whom/ which/ that/ where/ when/ whose) والتي نستخدمها عند ربط الجمل منعاً للتكرار.

1- who = that الذي/التي/الذاتان/اللاتي/اللاتي

• تحل محل فاعل عاقل مكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدها في هذه الحالة فعل

Ex. The man who is wearing a hat is my uncle.

• تحل أيضا محل مفعول عاقل مكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدها في هذه الحالة فاعل

Ex. This is the girl. The President praised her yesterday.

= This is the girl **who the President** praised yesterday.

2- **whom = that** الذي/التي/الذان/اللتان/اللائي/اللواتي

• تحل محل مفعول به عاقل مكرر في الجملة الثانية

Ex. This is the girl. I helped her yesterday.

= This is the girl **whom/ who/ that** I helped yesterday.

لاحظ!

• تتميز **whom** عن **who/ that** بأنه يمكن أن يأتي قبلها مباشرة حرف جر

Ex. This is the footballer **about whom** we were talking. (NOT: about who)

انتبه!

• لا يأتي بعد **whom** فعل لكن الفعل يأتي بعد **who** و بعد **that**

Ex. She is the woman **whom** wrote two books.

(جملة خطأ) (XXX)

Ex. She is the woman **who / that** wrote two books.

(جملة صحيحة) (✓✓✓)

3- **which = that** الذي/التي/الذان/اللتان/اللائي/اللواتي

• تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول به غير عاقل مكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدها فعل أو فاعل

Ex. That's the book. **It** is a best seller.

= That's the book **which / that** is a best seller.

ملحوظة

• يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبل **which** مباشرة ولكن ليس قبل **that**

Ex. The job for **which** Abo Bakr applied is well paid.

(✓✓✓)

Ex. This is the article **in which** she writes about science.

(✓✓✓)

4- That

• تحل محل **who/ whom/ which** وتشير إلى العاقل و غير العاقل

• تأتي بعد فاصلة أو بعد حرف جر.

Ex. "Gulliver's Travels", **that** we read last year, is a very interesting.

(جملة خطأ) (XXX)

5- whose

• نستخدم **whose** لتوضيح الملكية أو الصلة بين اسمين.

• تحل محل صفة ملكية مثل **his/ her/ its/ their** أو **(s) (s')** التي تدل على الملكية

Ex. I know a girl. **Her** hair is brown.

= I know a girl **whose** hair is brown.

Ex. I bought a dog. **Its** tail is short.

= I bought a dog **whose** tail is short.

6- Where

• تستخدم بمعنى (حيث) وتحل محل مكان مكرر في الجملة الثانية - يأتي قبلها مكان وبعدها فاعل

Ex. That's the shop. My brother works in it.

= That's the shop **where** my brother works.

انتبه!

١- لا يأتي قبل **where** حرف جر ولا في الجملة التي تليها عند استخدامها كضمير وصل.

٢- يمكن استخدام (**which** + حرف جر) بدلا من **where** للإشارة إلى المكان.

= That's the shop **in which** my brother works.

7- when

• تستخدم بمعنى (الوقت الذي فيه - عندما) وتحل محل اسم زمان مكرر في الجملة الثانية.

Ex. Sunday is the day. Peter visits his aunt on it.

= Sunday is the day **when** Peter visits his aunt.

انتبه!

١- لا يأتي قبل **when** حرف جر ولا في الجملة التي تليها عند استخدامها كضمير وصل.

٢- يمكن استخدام (**which** + حرف جر) بدلا من **when** للإشارة إلى الوقت أو الزمن.

= Sunday is the day **on which** Peter visits his aunt.

Check up on Language ✓

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the house (**when**) my dad built.
2. I like the girl (**which**) sits next to me.
3. That is the dog (**where**) barks all night.
4. Summer is the season (**who**) it is very hot.
5. He is the boy (**when**) bike was stolen.

B Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. A festival is a special event. People celebrate it every year. (**which**)
.....
2. The teacher explained the tradition . The students asked about it. (**which**)
.....
3. The man lives next door. He is a firefighter. (**who**)
.....
4. This is the park . We play football there. (**where**)
.....
5. That is the woman . Her cat is missing. (**whose**)
.....

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. The book _____ (who) I borrowed is very interesting.
2. The man _____ (which) spoke to us is my teacher.
3. The city _____ (when) we visited last summer is very old.
4. 2006 was the year _____ (which) my brother was born.
5. The woman _____ (whose) won the prize is very talented.
6. A rat is an animal _____ (when) doesn't like cats.
7. This is the man _____ (which) lives next door.
8. This is the school _____ (which) I learn.
9. It is the room _____ (which) Mai works.
10. This is my neighbor _____ (who) car was stolen.
11. She walked to the clinic _____ (who) wasn't far from her house.
12. A science lab is a place _____ (which) we do experiments.
13. The student _____ (which) answered the question was correct.
14. This is the restaurant _____ (when) we had our first date.
15. The movie _____ (who) we saw yesterday was too long.
16. That was the reason _____ (which) I decided to leave.
17. I remember the day _____ (who) you arrived.
18. The company _____ (when) my father works is downtown.
19. The dog _____ (which) barked all night belongs to our neighbors.
20. The artist _____ (when) painted this portrait is very famous.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. A festival is a special event . People celebrate it every year. (which)

2. The teacher explained the question. The students asked about it. (that)

3. This is the guest. We interviewed him on TV. (whom)

4. The boy is playing football. He is my cousin.

(who)

6. I know the city .It has a famous museum.

(which)

7. She is the teacher .She teaches us English.

(who)

8. That is the place. We met our teacher here for the first time.

(where)

9. This is the girl. Her father works in a bank.

(whose)

10. My father was born in 1990.

(in which)



Speaking

A short interview:

• اجراء مقابلة و السؤال و الاجابة عن التقاليد:

Question

1. What tradition is important in your family or country?

- ما هو التقليد المهم في عائلتك أو بلدك؟

2. What do people usually do during this tradition?

- ما الذي يفعله الناس عادةً خلال هذا التقليد؟

3. Why should this tradition be remembered or preserved?

- لماذا يجب تذكر هذا التقليد أو الحفاظ عليه؟

Answer

- The Mid-Autumn Festival, also known as the Moon Festival is a major harvest festival.

- مهرجان منتصف الخريف، المعروف أيضًا باسم مهرجان القمر، هو مهرجان حصاد رئيسي.

- The festival is a time for family reunions and celebrating.

- يُعد المهرجان وقتًا للاجتماعات العائلية والاحتفالات.

- This tradition is vital to preserve because it strengthens family bonds and connects us to culture and history.

- من الضروري الحفاظ على هذا التقليد لأنه يُعزز الروابط العائلية ويربطنا بالثقافة والتاريخ.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Heba is reading a book

Amira : Hello Heba! What are you doing ?

Heba : Hi Amira. ①

Amira : Who wrote this book, Heba?

Heba : ②

Amira : Nabawiya Mousa! ③

Heba : It is called "Girls Education".

Amira : ④

Heba : Yes, it is an interesting book.

Amira : ⑤

Heba : Of course. I'll lend it to you as soon as I finish it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather is full of and always gives me good advice about life.

- a. wisdom b. excitement c. history d. music

2. We enjoyed the of delicious food at the harvest festival.

- a. feast b. region c. culture d. sports event

3. The children the colorful fireworks at the New Year's celebration.

- a. reflected b. explored c. enjoyed d. greeted

4. Christmas and Diwali are that are celebrated around the world.

- a. festivals b. clothes c. customs d. sculptures

5. The team's victory was a for the entire school.

- a. celebration b. patience c. harmony d. guest

6. The two sisters looked so alike in many ways.

- a. common b. famous c. alike d. seasonal

7. The caterpillar's into a butterfly is amazing.

- a. transformation b. celebration c. tradition d. friendship

8. We our grandparents last weekend and had a wonderful time with them.

- a. explored b. reflected c. visited d. gathered

9. The artist used blocks of to create beautiful swans and bears.

- a. snow b. ice c. joy d. gift

10. Judy and I the driving, so it wasn't too tiring.

a. showed

b. emerged

c. shared

d. stayed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

elderly - source - gathered - respect - harmony

Our family ① with relatives to visit our ② grandparents. This common tradition is a ③ of great joy. We greeted everyone with kindness and ④ , sharing a massive feast. Such celebrations reflect our family's values and strengthen our community, reminding us of our shared history and identity.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cake (who) my mother baked tastes delicious.
2. That is the house (where) I told you about.
3. The person (which) helped me was very kind.
4. Tuesday was the day (who) I first met my best friend.
5. I lost the necklace (who) my husband gave me.

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets.

1. I have a friend . He can speak five languages. (who)
.....
2. This is the school . I studied at this school as a child. (where)
.....
3. The man lives next door. His wife is a doctor. (whose)
.....
4. That's the restaurant . We went there yesterday. (where)
.....
5. The book who was fantastic. I borrowed it from you (which)
.....



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

customs (n)	العادات	hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة
honors (v)	تكرم	community (n)	مجتمع
generations (n)	أجيال		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

everyday (adj)	يومي	candles (n.)	شموع
practices (n.)	ممارسات	loved (adj)	محبوب
role (n.)	دور	grand (adj)	عظيم/كبير
envelope (n.)	مظروف	guest (n.)	ضيف
luck (n.)	حظ	memory (n.)	ذكرى
long-standing (adj)	قديم	warmly (adv)	بدفء
prepare (v. d)	يعد/يجهز	way (n.)	طريقة
dishes (n.)	وجبات	alive (adj.)	حي
care (n.)	اهتمام/عناية	modern (adj)	حديث
replace (v. d)	يحل محل	share (v. d)	يشارك
abroad (adv)	في الخارج	believe (v. d)	يؤمن/يصدق
purpose (n.)	غرض	reflect (v. ed)	يعكس
decorating (n.)	تزيين/زخرفة	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
graves (n.)	قبور	connect (v. ed)	يوصل/يتصل



Definitions

custom (n)	عادة	an accepted ⁽¹⁾ way of behaving ⁽²⁾ or of doing things in a society or a community	١. مقبول
honor (v)	تكرم	To do something that shows great respect for someone or something	٢. التصرف ٣. تجاه
hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة	friendly and generous behaviour towards ⁽³⁾ guests	
generation (n)	جيل	all the people who were born at about the same time	

Expressions & Prepositions

play an important role	تلعب دورا هاما	look different	يبدو مختلفا
around the world	حول العالم	belong to	يخص
Day of the Dead	يوم تكريم الموتى	bring people together	يجمع الناس معا
keeps their memory alive	يحافظ على الذكرى حية	remind us of	يذكرنا بـ
whether simple or grand	سواء كان صغيرا أو كبيرا	the Lunar New Year	العام القمري الجديد
		take part	يشارك



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
hospitality	كرم الضيافة	generosity		inhospitality	عدم الضيافة
community	مجتمع	neighborhood		isolation	عزلة
honor	يكرم	respect		dishonor	يهين
simple	بسيط	easy		grand	كبير
guest	ضيف	visitor		host	مضيف
polite	مehذب	respectful		impolite	غير مهذب
long-standing	قديم	old		recent	حالي
grand	كبير	great		simple	بسيط
alive	حي	living		dead	ميت
warmly	بدفء	kindly		coldly	ببرود

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	generation
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	happiness

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
give	يعطي	gave	given
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 everyday / every day

• **everyday (adj)** يومي (قبل الاسم فقط)

Ex. The book is written in simple **everyday** language.

• **every day (adv)**

كل يوم (في أول أو وسط أو آخر الجملة)

Ex. So I go there **every day**, except Wednesday.

2 live / alive / life

• **live (v)** يعيش

Ex. He **lives** across the street from me.

• **alive (adj)** حي / على قيد الحياة

Ex. My grandparents are still **alive**.

• **life (n)** حياة (lives) حيوات

Ex. It was one of the best days of my **life**.

3 abroad / aboard

• **abroad (adv.)** بالخارج

Ex. We never travelled **abroad** when we were kids.

• **aboard (adv. / prep.)** متن على

Ex. They finally went **aboard** the plane.

4) plate / dish

• **plate** طبق مسطح صغير (للأكل منه)

Ex. She broke a dinner **plate** while washing it.

• **dish** طبق/صحن كبير (لتقديم الطعام)

Ex. Please pass the **dish** of potatoes.

• **dish** وجبة/وصفة

Ex. This **dish** can be served hot or cold.

• **dishes**

كل الأطباق والأواني الخاصة بتقديم الطعام

Ex. I washed the **dishes** after dinner.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ali spent his caring for others.
a. lively b. live c. alive d. life
- They are discussing the problems of life.
a. every day b. everyday c. day d. a day
- They see each other
a. every day b. everyday c. day d. a day
- Are all your grandparents still?
a. lively b. live c. alive d. life
- A lot of goods are imported from
a. abroad b. board c. broad d. aboard
- My favorite Italian is Spaghetti.
a. dishes b. plate c. dish d. bowl

Reading

SB Page (23)

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold.

Customs⁽¹⁾ are everyday **practices**⁽²⁾ that show the **culture**⁽³⁾ of a community. They are not always big festivals, but they play an important **role**⁽⁴⁾ in people's lives. Around the world, customs may look different, but they often share the same purpose: to bring people together.

١. العادات
٢. ممارسات
٣. الثقافة
٤. دور



In Mexico, people **celebrate**⁽⁵⁾ the Day of the Dead by decorating graves with flowers and candles. Families believe this custom **honors**⁽⁶⁾ their loved ones and keeps their memory alive. In China, the Lunar New Year is a time when families clean their houses, wear new clothes, and give red envelopes with money to children. This custom shows hope for luck and happiness.

In Egypt, **hospitality**⁽⁷⁾ is a long-standing custom that reflects generosity and respect. Guests are welcomed warmly, and a lot of food is often prepared.

Offering tea, coffee, or traditional **dishes**⁽⁸⁾ is not just polite—it is a way of showing **friendship**⁽⁹⁾ and care. These customs may belong to different cultures, but they all **remind**⁽¹⁰⁾ us of shared values: love, respect, and community. Customs, whether simple or grand, keep traditions alive and connect **generations**⁽¹¹⁾.

٥. يحتفل
٦. تكريم
٧. كرم الضيافة
٨. وجبات
٩. الصداقة
١٠. يذكر
١١. أجيال

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. Why are customs important in daily life?
2. How do Mexicans honor their loved ones during the Day of the Dead?
3. What do Egyptian customs during festivals show about family values?

مهارات القراءة

1. They play an important role in people's lives, bring people together, keep traditions alive, and connect generations.
2. By decorating graves with flowers and candles.
3. They show generosity, respect, friendship, and care.

Answers:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A / An _____ is an accepted way of behaving or of doing things in a society.
a. harmony b. uniform c. custom d. ceremony
2. To _____ is to do something that shows great respect for someone.
a. share b. belong c. honor d. believe
3. A _____ is all the people who were born at about the same time.
a. harmony b. generation c. custom d. ceremony
4. _____ is friendly and generous behaviour towards guests.
a. Harmony b. Generation c. Hospitality d. Ceremony

Synonyms and antonyms

5. The fish is still alive in the bucket. "Alive" is an antonym for
- a. alike b. dead c. smart d. living
6. She had invited six guests. "Guest" is the opposite in meaning to
- a. stranger b. visitor c. host d. manager
7. She was very polite to him. "Polite" is similar in meaning to
- a. respectful b. rude c. impolite d. lazy

Prefixes and suffixes

8. The suffix "....." gives the noun of the verb "generate".
- a. -ment b. -ation c. -ship d. -ion
9. To get the noun from the word "happy", we add the suffix ".....".
- a. -ful b. -able c. -ment d. -iness
10. To get the adjective from the word "tradition", we add the suffix ".....".
- a. -ful b. -able c. -al d. -less

Guess the meaning

11. In many cultures, there are special for how to greet a guest.
- a. wishes b. practices c. memories d. dishes
12. My grandfather was for his bravery in the war.
- a. hoped b. loved c. honored d. replaced
13. The family showed great by offering us food and a place to sleep.
- a. hospitality b. generation c. cruelty d. grave
14. It's for a bride to wear a white dress on her wedding ceremony.
- a. traditional b. unique c. modern d. ancient
15. What do you play on the soccer team? Are you a defender or a forward?
- a. role b. way c. uniform d. envelope
16. I will my toys with my little sister so she can play too.
- a. wear b. share c. smash d. prepare
17. Many people that modern technology has reduced our creativity.
- a. welcome b. believe c. care d. connect
18. You must a helmet when you ride a bicycle for safety.
- a. wear b. hope c. reflect d. explore
19. She put the letter inside a blue and mailed it to her friend.
- a. uniform b. purpose c. candle d. envelope

20. sometimes, _____ helps more than skill.
a. luck b. hospitality c. purpose d. way
21. Our family has a _____ tradition of baking bread every Friday.
a. wide-open b. long-standing c. half-finished d. well-paid
22. My mother will _____ a special meal for my birthday party.
a. prepare b. share c. reflect d. connect
23. What are your favorite _____ to eat during the holidays?
a. dishes b. generations c. candles d. graves
24. Good parents _____ for their children and keep them safe.
a. hope b. care c. believe d. wear
25. The power went out _____ the storm, so we lit some candles.
a. warmly b. during c. abroad d. everyday
26. When the old window broke, we had to _____ it with a new one.
a. welcome b. replace c. explore d. honor
27. My cousin moved _____ to study in a different country.
a. during b. aboard c. warmly d. abroad
28. The _____ of this meeting is to plan the school festival.
a. purpose b. luck c. role d. uniform

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

importance - gathered - traditions - joy - enjoyed

The community **1** _____ for the annual sports events on the snow and ice. The excitement was a source of great **2** _____ for all. After the games, we enjoyed a massive feast as guest speakers highlighted the **3** _____ of patience and teamwork. These **4** _____ are a vital part of our shared identity.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Hany was Ali's only friend. They were neighbors. Hany was a taxi driver. He did not have much money. Ali was a carpenter and he had lots of money. People in their street liked Ali very much because he was kind and he lent them his tools whenever they needed them. However, they didn't like Hany because he didn't like helping anyone. One night, Ali's wife was ill and needed a doctor. He asked his friend, Hany, to take them to hospital in his taxi. Ali didn't think Hany would agree but to his surprise, he did. When Ali asked him about that, Hany told him that he wanted to change because he wanted people to like him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hany _____ Ali and his wife.
 a. didn't help a. didn't like c. helped d. killed
2. People in the street didn't like Hany because.....
 a. he liked helping them a. he didn't like helping them
 c. he didn't have much money d. he had much money
3. Hany wanted to change because.....
 a. he likes his neighbors b. he wanted people to like him
 c. he didn't have much money d. he had much money

B. Answer the following questions

4. Why did people like Ali?

5. Who was richer, Hany or Ali?

6. What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to?

4

Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A tradition that you like in your community"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. What the tradition you like most?
2. What happens in this tradition?
3. Why do you like it?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

1. I really like the Community Day Picnic tradition
2. Everyone comes to the main park on a Saturday. People bring food to share, like sandwiches and cookies.
3. I like it because it brings all our neighbors together.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Important Vocabulary

cultural (adj)	ثقافي	alive (adj)	حي / على قيد الحياة
expert (n)	خبير	festival (n)	احتفال
history (n)	تاريخ	connected (adj)	مرتبط
values (n)	قيم	community (n)	مجتمع
special (adj)	مميز	explanation (n)	توضيح / شرح
meal (n)	وجبة	family ties (n.)	روابط أسرية
unity (n)	الوحدة	shape (v. d)	يشكل
generosity (n)	الكرم	share (v. d)	يشارك
traditions (n)	عادات	decorate (v. d)	يزين / يزخرف
families (n)	عائلات	connect (v. ed)	يربط يوصل
together (adv)	معا	exist (v. ed)	يوجد
carnival (n)	مهرجان	create (v. d)	يخلق/يبدع

Expressions & Prepositions

welcome to	مرحبا بك في	fast-changing world	عالم سريع التغير
sense of identity and belonging	شعور بالهوية و الانتماء	what about	ماذا عن
That sounds lovely	هذا يبدو رائعا	Not at all	إطلاقا
		stay connected	يبقى على اتصال



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	tasty		tasteless	بلا طعم
beautiful (adj)	جميل	lovely		ugly	قبيح
special (adj)	مميز	unique		ordinary	عادي
unity (n)	وحدة	harmony		separation	انفصال
generosity (n)	كرم	charity		stinginess	بخل

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	cultural / traditional
-ly	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	lovely
-ce	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	importance
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	wonderful
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	explanation
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	generosity

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
show	يوضح	showed	shown

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Sound

• sound (v) يبدو

Ex. That sounds a good idea.

Ex. Are you okay? You sound tired.

• sound (n) صوت [ما تسمعه]

Ex. There's no sound coming from the TV.

Ex. Turn the sound down a little, will you?

Reading

SB Page (34)

SB Page (34)

استمع إلى النصوص



Read the following dialog between a TV presenter & an expert.

Presenter : Good evening, and welcome to "Culture Around Us"! Tonight, we're talking about **traditions and customs**⁽¹⁾. With me is Dr. Salma, a cultural **expert**⁽²⁾. Dr. Salma, could you tell us why traditions are so important?

Dr. Salma : Thank you. Traditions are important because they **connect**⁽³⁾ people to their history and **values**⁽⁴⁾. They create a **sense**⁽⁵⁾ of **identity and belonging**⁽⁶⁾.

Presenter : Interesting! Can you give us an example from England?

Dr. Salma : Of course. In England, one tradition is the "afternoon tea". Families and friends **gather**⁽⁷⁾ to drink tea and eat small cakes or sandwiches. It shows the values of **hospitality**⁽⁸⁾ and friendship.

Presenter : That sounds lovely. What about customs in Saudi Arabia?

Dr. Salma : In Saudi Arabia, Eid is a very special time. Families visit **relatives**⁽⁹⁾, wear new clothes, and share delicious meals. This **reflects**⁽¹⁰⁾ the values of family unity, and generosity.

Presenter : Beautiful. And what about Malaysia?

Dr. Salma : In Malaysia, during "Hari Raya Aidilfitri" (the end of Ramadan), people **decorate**⁽¹¹⁾ their homes, visit neighbors, and prepare traditional foods. It shows respect, **harmony**⁽¹²⁾, and the importance of **community**⁽¹³⁾.

Presenter : So, would you say traditions are only about the past?

Dr. Salma : Not at all! Some traditions are hundreds of years old, but others are modern and still **developing**⁽¹⁴⁾. The important thing is that they help people stay connected in today's **fast-changing**⁽¹⁵⁾ world.

Presenter : Thank you, Dr. Salma. That was a wonderful **explanation**⁽¹⁶⁾ of how traditions and customs shape our lives.

١. العادات و التقاليد
٢. خبير
٣. تربط
٤. قيم
٥. شعور
٦. الهوية والانتماء
٧. يتجمع
٨. كرم الضيافة
٩. أقارب
١٠. يعكس
١١. يزخرف/يزين
١٢. تناغم
١٣. مجتمع
١٤. تتطور
١٥. سريع التغير
١٦. توضيح

Role-Play SB Page (35)

Complete the missing parts in the following dialog.

Lina : Mariam, have you ever watched the spring festival in Thailand on TV?

Mariam : Yes, last year. The streets were full of decorations and music.

Lina : What did people do during the festival?

Mariam : People wore colorful clothes and carried flowers.

Lina : That's wonderful. I think traditions like this are important because they make people gather and see each other.

Mariam : Right . They also bring happiness to children and tourists.

Lina : Would you like to go there one day?

Mariam : Yes, I would love to go there one day.

Lina : That's great. We can go together the next time.

Writing a short article كتابة المقال القصير

- A short Article المقال القصير

A short article is a piece of writing that gives information or ideas about a topic in a clear and simple way

المقال القصير هو قطعة من الكتابة تقدم معلومات أو أفكارًا حول موضوع ما بطريقة واضحة وبسيطة.

- Structure of a short Article تكوين المقال القصير

- Title → Choose a catchy title العنوان: اختر عنوانًا جذابًا.
- Introduction → One or two sentences to introduce the main idea المقدمة: جملة أو جملتان لعرض الفكرة الرئيسية.
- Body → The main topic and giving more examples المتن: الموضوع الرئيسي مع أمثلة إضافية.
- Conclusion → A simple sentence to summarize your article الخاتمة: جملة بسيطة لتلخيص مقالك.

Example:

The importance of Traditions SB Page (36)

Traditions, which connect families and communities, bring people together and keep history alive. In Egypt, families gather in Ramadan to share meals, which **strengthens** ⁽¹⁾ **family ties** ⁽²⁾ and teaches hospitality. In India , people celebrate Diwali, the Festival of lights, which spreads joy and hope everywhere. In Brazil, the Carnival, which is full of music and **colorful** ⁽³⁾ clothes, fills the streets with happiness. Although traditions are different, they teach values like respect, friendship, and sharing. They also create happy **memories** ⁽⁴⁾ that are **passed** ⁽⁵⁾ from one generation to another. Old or new, traditions are part of cultural identity, which helps people stay connected **across time** ⁽⁶⁾.

١. يقوّي
٢. الروابط الأسرية
٣. غني بالألوان
٤. ذكريات
٥. يتم نقلها
٦. عبر الزمن

Exercises on lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

- The apple pie is delicious. "Delicious" is the antonym of.....
 a. cool b. tasteless c. soft d. tasty
- No one receives special treatment. "Special" is opposite in meaning to.....
 a. ordinary b. high c. clever d. unique
- Visiting relatives reflects the value of unity. "Unity" is a synonym for.....
 a. division b. separation c. harmony d. weakness
- He is famous for his generosity. "Generosity" can be replaced by.....
 a. charity b. wisdom c. stinginess d. weakness

Prefixes and suffixes

- The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the verb "love".
 a. -ment b. -ship c. -ful d. -ly
- The suffix "....." gives the noun of the word "important".
 a. -ment b. -ce c. -ship d. -ation
- We can change the adjective "generous" into a noun by adding the suffix ".....".
 a. -ment b. -ce c. -ity d. -ation

Guess the meaning

- The two neighbors felt deeply after years of friendship.
 a. created b. connected c. shared d. decorated
- Egypt's is full of stories that tell about the many great leaders
 a. history b. explanation c. value d. unity
- The artist a beautiful painting for the community center.
 a. explored b. decorated c. created d. existed
- During the holiday, all the gather for a large, special meal.
 a. traditions b. festivals c. families d. communities
- The of helping others is very important in our culture.
 a. history b. value c. explanation d. carnival

13. The scientist is a/an _____ on ancient languages and can read the old stones.
a. expert b. unity c. tradition d. festival
14. The whole town comes together to celebrate the spring _____.
a. share b. festival c. unity d. history
15. The bright flags and lights _____ the entire street for the parade.
a. connected b. decorated c. explored d. shaped
16. His kindness created a feeling of trust and _____ within the group.
a. history b. unity c. generosity d. community
17. The stories he told _____ the difficult times his family experienced long ago.
a. explored b. decorated c. reflected d. connected
18. The ancient traditions are still _____ in the remote villages.
a. special b. connected c. alive d. cultural
19. Can you give me an _____ for why we decorate eggs for this holiday?
a. expert b. explanation c. history d. value
20. Their _____ was clear when they offered us food and a place to stay.
a. unity b. generosity c. history d. community
21. We all _____ a delicious meal of rice and vegetables.
a. created b. explored c. shared d. connected
22. Dinosaurs _____ millions of years before humans.
a. decorated b. explored c. existed d. reflected
23. The music and dance at the event were very _____ and unique to the region.
a. alive b. connected c. cultural d. special

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tradition - decorate - share - explanation - special

Our town festival is a ① _____ event. Families come together to ② _____ a large meal. We ③ _____ the streets, and the community feels a strong unity. An expert once gave an ④ _____ of its long history. This tradition has existed for ages, keeping our cultural values alive.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Adel and Bassam are speaking about learning foreign languages

Adel : Hello Bassam! What are you doing?

Bassam : Hi Adel! ①

Adel : A story in English! ②?

Bassam : Yes, I 'm trying to improve my English.

Adel : Great! Where do you get these stories?

Bassam : ③

Adel : Are you allowed to borrow them from the school library?

Bassam : ④ for a week.

Adel : ⑤?

Bassam : Yes you can come with me the next time.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

values - cultural - share - unity - community

The carnival is alive with color! This ① event creates a feeling of ② Everyone feels connected. We ③ food and laughter. The generosity of the community is clear. This special celebration reflects our shared ④ and history, bringing all families together.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Our town has many museums and art shows that teach about our past.
a. boring b. cold c. cultural d. fast
- She is an in cooking; she knows every recipe.
a. student b. expert c. driver d. singer
- The two new roads the city center and the airport.
a. washed b. painted c. connected d. forgot
- We learned about the long of our country in school today.
a. history b. music c. rain d. sport
- Honesty and kindness are important that my parents taught me.
a. cars b. clothes c. values d. names

6. The artist a beautiful painting of the sunset.
a. created b. broke c. opened d. bought
7. Today is a very day because it is my birthday!
a. dirty b. sad c. special d. cheap
8. My favorite to eat is dinner with my family.
a. tree b. meal c. hat d. desk
9. The friendly helped us clean the park after the festival.
a. families b. traditions c. values d. community
10. The long journey his character and made him stronger.
a. existed b. shared c. shaped d. reflected

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Traditions, which connect people together"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. What are traditions?
2. Why do you think that traditions are powerful?
3. What do traditions teach us?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

1. Traditions are like old, special habits that groups of people share.
2. These acts are powerful because they link us to the past and to each other.
3. Traditions teach important values, like being kind or being generous.

Review on Unit 8

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

traditions (n.)	تقاليد	history (n.)	تاريخ
culture (n.)	ثقافة	create (v. d)	يخلق/يبدع
reflect (v. ed)	يعكس	special (adj)	مميز
ceremony (n.)	مراسم/احتفال	meal (n.)	وجبة
community (n.)	مجتمع	unity (n.)	الوحدة
festival (n.)	مهرجان/احتفال	generosity (n.)	الكرم
celebrations (n.)	احتفالات	families (n.)	عائلات
values (n.)	قيم	together (adv)	معا
patience (n.)	الصبر	carnival (n.)	مهرجان
harmony (n.)	التناغم/الانسجام	alive (adj)	حي / على قيد الحياة
identity (n.)	الهوية	connected (adj)	مرتبط
gathering (n.)	تجمُّع	explanation (n.)	توضيح / شرح
customs (n.)	العادات	shape (v. d)	يشكل
honors (v)	تكرم	share (v. d)	يشارك
generations (n.)	أجيال	decorate (v. d)	يزين / يزخرف
hospitality (n.)	كرم الضيافة	connect (v. ed)	يربط يوصل
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	exist (v. ed)	يوجد
expert (n.)	خبير		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

A relative clause gives more information about a noun.

تعطي جملة الوصل مزيدًا من المعلومات حول الاسم.

Relative Pronouns:

• هي الجمل التي تبدأ بأحد ضمائر الوصل (**who / whom / which / that / where / when / whose**) والتي نستخدمها عند ربط الجمل منعًا للتكرار.

1- **who = that** الذي/التي/الذئ/الذئ/اللتان/اللتان/اللاتي/اللاتي

• تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول به عاقل عاقل مكرر ويأتي بعدها في هذه الحالة فعل

Ex. This is the boy **who** scored the goal.

Ex. This is the girl **who the President** praised yesterday.

2- **whom = that** الذي/التي/الذئ/الذئ/اللتان/اللتان/اللاتي/اللاتي

• تحل محل مفعول به عاقل مكرر في الجملة الثانية

Ex. This is the scientist **whom / who / that** I met yesterday.

3- **which = that** الذي/التي/الذئ/الذئ/اللتان/اللتان/اللاتي/اللاتي

• تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول به غير عاقل مكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدها فعل أو فاعل

Ex. That's the book. It is a best seller.

Ex. That's the film **which / that** was best seller.

4- **That**

• تحل محل **who / whom / which** في جمل الوصل التعريفية وتشير إلى العاقل و غير العاقل

Ex. My uncle, **that** lives in London, is a doctor.

(جملة خطأ) (XXX)

5- **whose**

• نستخدم **whose** لتوضيح الملكية أو الصلة بين اسمين.

• تحل محل صفة ملكية مثل **his / her / its / their** أو **(s') (s')** التي تحل على الملكية

Ex. This is my uncle **whose** flat is in Cairo..

Ex. I bought a dog **whose** tail is short.

6- **Where**

• نستخدم بمعنى (حيث) وتحل محل مكان - يأتي قبلها مكان وبعدها فاعل

Ex. That's the factory **where** my father works.

7- **when**

• نستخدم بمعنى (الوقت الذي فيه - عندما) وتحل محل اسم زمان.

Ex. September is the month **when** we go back to school.

انتبه!

١- لا يأتي قبل **when** حرف جر ولا في الجملة التي تليها عند استخدامها كضمير وصل.

٢- يمكن استخدام (**which** + حرف جر) بدلا من **when** للإشارة إلى الوقت أو الزمن.

= September is the month **in which** we go back to school.

Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات انشائية و رسائل البريد الالكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 3 & 4

I really like the Community Day Picnic tradition. It happens every summer.

Everyone comes to the main park on a Saturday. People bring food to share, like sandwiches and cookies. Children play games, like sack races. Older people sit and talk under the big trees. There is often live music, too. I like it because it brings all our neighbors together. We talk to people we don't see often. It helps us feel like a big family. It is a very happy and relaxed day for everyone in the community. It makes our neighborhood strong.

Lessons 5 & 6

Traditions are like old, special habits that groups of people share. They are things we do over and over, often at the same time each year. Think of a big holiday dinner or a special song we always sing. These acts are powerful because they link us to the past and to each other. When we follow a tradition, we feel close to our family members and our community. We share the same happy memories and feelings. This shared experience creates a strong feeling of unity.

Traditions teach important values, like being kind or being generous. They help shape who we are as people and as a group. A tradition is a thread of history that connects everyone. It makes us feel like we exist as one big family, giving us a strong sense of belonging and meaning in our lives.

Al-Azhar Test

People have different traditions and customs in festivals. These customs reflect their unique culture and history. Some communities gather for a massive feast with special food. Others may create beautiful ice sculptures. The clothes people wear and the music they enjoy can also be very different. However, a common value in all festivals is the spirit of joy and community they bring to everyone.

Test on Unit 8

In my family, our festival traditions are a very important part of our lives. They help us celebrate our culture and stay connected. For example, during our New Year celebration, we have a massive feast. All our relatives visit our home, and we gather around a big table filled with delicious food. We always wear new, special clothes for this ceremony. The excitement is felt by everyone, young and elderly alike.

We greet each other with great joy and kindness. This tradition is a common one in our community and reflects our values of respect and harmony. We enjoy music and share stories about our family history. These celebrations strengthen our friendship and family spirit.

Al Azhar Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Waleed and his father are talking about Waleed's birthday present.

Father : What would you like me to get you for your birthday?

Waleed : I need a computer, please, Dad.

Father : ① _____?

Waleed : We need to do some work on the internet.

Father : Do you know how to use the internet?

Waleed : ② _____ We use computers at school.

Father : OK. ③ _____

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The potter _____ the clay into a tall, beautiful vase.

- a. threw b. shaped c. slept d. ate

2. We felt very _____ to our history after visiting the museum.

- a. alive b. connected c. special d. cultural

3. The doctor _____ treated me was very kind.

- a. when b. which c. who d. where

4. This is the house _____ my grandfather built.

- a. when b. which c. who d. where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traditions - relatives - respect - enjoyed - celebrate

My family has many traditions. Last week, we had a big feast to ① _____ my grandfather's birthday. All our ② _____ came to visit. We gathered for a massive meal and ③ _____ delicious food and music. It was a common event in our community, full of joy. We showed ④ _____ to our elderly family members. These customs are an important part of our identity.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The author _____ (which) wrote this book is very famous.

2. This is the park _____ (whose) we first met.

3. The computer _____ (who) I bought last week has already broken.

4. I have a friend _____ (that) father is a pilot.

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

A young boy went into a shop late at night and the shop assistant said; "What can I get you? Please hurry up. It's eleven and we are going to close the shop." The boy said; "Get me a piece of paper and a pen, then write: a kilo of sugar at 30 pounds, half a kilo of cheese at 40 pounds and a half of a kilo of butter at 150 pounds. I'll give you three hundred pounds. How much will you give me back?" "eighty pounds," said the shop assistant. "Thank you very much. That was my homework for tonight," the boy said. The shop assistant solved the student's problem in maths. Though the boy was lazy, he was clever.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A kilo of cheese costs pounds.
 a. 60 b. 80 c. 100 d. 300
2. The boy went to the shop to.....
 a. buy some goods b. help the shopkeeper
 c. do his math homework d. make a call

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did the boy ask the shop assistant to do?

4. Why was the shop assistant in a hurry?

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"People have different traditions in festivals"

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The Roman Empire for several centuries.
a. existed b. drove c. flew d. laughed
- The sun appeared on the horizon. "Appeared" can be replaced with.....
a. vanished b. emerged c. disappeared d. stayed
- Friendly and generous behaviour towards guests is called.....
a. harmony b. generation c. hospitality d. ceremony
- To get the noun of the verb "generate", we add the suffix.....
a. -ment b. -ation c. -ship d. -ion

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

traditions - share - connected - shaped - moments

My grandmother created a tradition that ① us to our history. We ② stories that reflect our family's values, like generosity. These moments have ③ who I am. They show how old ④ can still feel alive and keep a family together.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Science has told us so much about the moon that it became easier now to know a many things about it. The moon is not a friendly place. As there is no air or water, there can be no life of any kind. There are many big mountains there. On the moon, the sun and stars shine in a black sky. If you move away from the mountain shadows, it will mean moving from very low temperatures into great heat. These temperatures break rocks away from the surface of the mountains. The moon is also a very silent world because sounds can only travel through air. From this distance, the Earth is shining more than the stars. It looks like a big ball, colored blue, green and brown.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are many big on the moon.
a. mountains b. countries c. houses d. farms
- The underlined word "there" refers to the.....
a. sun b. earth c. star d. moon
- Above the moon, the sun and stars shine in a sky.
a. blue b. black c. green d. brown

B. Answer the following questions

4. Why is the moon a silent world?

5. Who tells us about the moon?

6. What does the Earth look like from the moon?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Captain Nemo's ship, called _____, was built for life beneath the sea.

- a. Nautilus b. Atlantis c. Sea King d. Odyssey

2. The primary source of power for the Nautilus was _____.

- a. steam b. wind c. electricity d. nuclear energy

3. How did the men begin to feel about their situation on the submarine?

- a. Like honored guests. b. Like permanent prisoners.
c. Half-prisoners and half-guests. d. Like members of the crew.

4. Captain Nemo insisted that _____ was the only homeland for him.

- a. the Nautilus b. the sea
c. his library d. his past life on land

B. Answer the following questions

5. What were some of the astonishing features of life aboard the Nautilus?

6. If you were in Ned Land's place, would you try to escape or stay on the ship?
Why?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using words in brackets:

1. Ali is My uncle. He sells meat.

(who)

2. This is the house. My friend lives in this house.

(where)

3. February is the month. I was born in February.

(when)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Summer is the season (who) most people go on holiday.
2. I remember the day (where) my little sister was born.
3. The car (what) he drives is very expensive.

7 Finish the following dialog:

Aya meets her friend, Mona in the street.

Aya : Hello Mona! Why are you in a hurry?

Mona : Hi Aya. ①

Aya : The hospital! ②

Mona : To visit my uncle.

Aya : ③

Mona : He was badly injured in a car accident.

Aya : ④ Could I go with you?

Mona : ⑤ That's very kind of you.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your family traditions in festivals"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

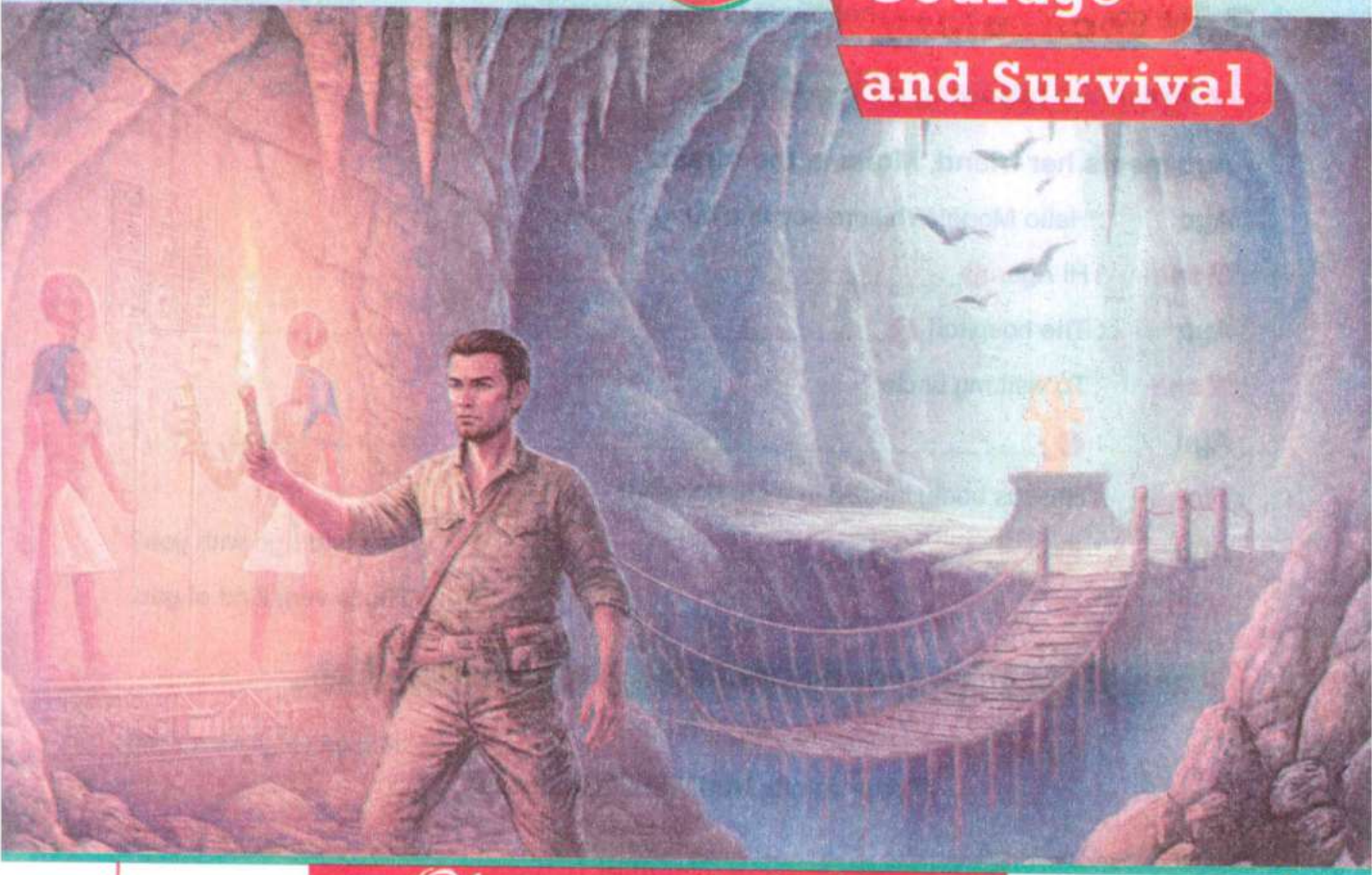
English

Unit

9

Courage

and Survival



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the moral lesson in a short legendary or heroic text.

Writing:

- Write a short paragraph outlining an exploration plan.
- Connecting short-term goals to a long-term aspiration.

Listening:

- Identify the challenge heroes faced in a short podcast

Speaking:

- Discuss a plan for a treasure hunt in group discussion.
- Retell a folk tale in a short role-play.

Language:

- Accurately identify and use the correct verb form (gerund or infinitive).



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

clue (n.)	قرينة/دليل	torch (n.)	كشاف كهربائي
riddle (n.)	لُغز	survival (n.)	البقاء / النجاة
explorer (n.)	مُستكشف	sour (adj.)	حامض الطعم
artifacts (n.)	قطعة أثرية	panicked (adj.)	مذعور
shelter (n. / v. ed)	ماوى / ملجأ - يَحْتَمي	hidden (adj.)	مخفي

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

courage (n.)	الشجاعة	sunken (adj.)	غارق
century (n.)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	popular (adj.)	رائج / منتشر
teamwork (n.)	العمل الجماعي	alive (adj.)	حي / على قيد الحياة
pirate (n.)	قرصان	lucky (adj.)	محظوظ
legend (n.)	أسطورة	final (adj.)	نهائي
problem-solving (n.)	حل المشكلات	historical (adj.)	تاريخي
excitement (n.)	إثارة / انفعال	acidic (adj.)	حمضي
smart (adj.)	ذكي	safe (adj.)	آمن
survival (n.)	البقاء	sudden (adj.)	مفاجئ
danger (n.)	خطر	creatively (adv.)	بشكل إبداعي
choice (n.)	اختيار	matter (v. ed)	يهم
jungle (n.)	غابة / أدغال	encourage (v. d)	يشجع
leaves (n.)	أوراق (النبات أو الشجر)	block (v. ed)	يسد / يغلق
branches (n.)	فروع / أغصان	pack (v. ed)	يعبئ
taste (n.)	طعم / مذاق	race (v. d)	ينبض بسرعة
hunt (n.)	البحث عن	fear (n. / v. ed)	خوف - يخاف
brave (adj.)	شجاع	hint (n. / v. ed)	إشارة / تلميح - يلمح



Definitions

clue (n.)	قرينة/دليل	a hint that helps you solve ⁽¹⁾ something.
riddle (n.)	لُغز	question or puzzle with a hidden answer.
artifact (n.)	قطعة أثرية	a piece of historical object ⁽²⁾ from the past.
explorer (n.)	مُستكشف	a person who travels to discover new places.

١. يحل
٢. شيء

hidden (adj.)	مخفي	being out of sight or not easily seen.	
shelter (n.)	ملجأ/ماوى	a safe place to stay and protect yourself.	٣. موقف
torch (n.)	كشاف	light carried to see in the dark.	٤. حمضي
survival (n.)	النجاة	living through a dangerous or difficult situation ⁽³⁾ .	
sour (adj.)	حامض	having an acidic ⁽⁴⁾ taste, like lemon.	
panicked (adj.)	مذعور	showed sudden fear.	

Expressions & Prepositions

a series of	سلسلة من	get lost	يتوه/يضل طريقه
popular for	رائج لمدة/رائج بسبب	survival skills	مهارات البقاء
treasure hunt	البحث عن الكنز	stay alive	يبقى على قيد الحياة
solve a question / riddle	يحل سؤال / لغز	make a choice	يختار
(be) connected to	متصل بـ	stay calm	يبقى هادئاً
search for	يبحث عن	(be) out of sight	خارج نطاق الرؤية
face danger	يواجه الخطر	find a way out	يجد طريق للخروج



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
clue (n.)	قرينة/دليل	evidence		mystery	غموض
riddle (n.)	لغز	puzzle		solution	الحل
brave (adj.)	شجاع	courageous		cowardly	جبان
shelter (n.)	ماوى	protection		danger	خطر
survival (n.)	النجاة	existence		death	الموت
sour (adj.)	حامض	bitter		sweet	طازج
panicked (adj.)	مذعور	scared		calm	هادئ
hidden (adj.)	مخفي	covered		visible	مكتشف
courage (n.)	الشجاعة	bravery		fear	الخوف/الجبن
alive (adj.)	حي	living		dead	ميت

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	activity
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	explorer
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	creatively
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	excitement
-able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	enjoyable
en-	تحول الاسم إلى فعل	encourage

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hide	يخفي	hid	hidden
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
build	يبنى	built	built
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
find	يجد	found	found
see	يرى	saw	seen



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 explore / discover / invent

explore (v. d) يستكشف

يُستخدم الفعل (explore) ليشير إلى السفر عبر مكان أو فكرة لفحصها ومعرفة المزيد عنها:

Ex. The children **explored** the forest behind their house.

Ex. In class, we **explored** different ways to solve the problem.

discover (v. ed) يكتشف

يُستخدم الفعل (discover) ليشير إلى العثور على شيء ما للمرة الأولى - شيء كان موجودًا بالفعل ولكن لم يكن معروفًا من قبل:

Ex. Columbus **discovered** America in 1492.

Ex. She **discovered** a new café near her office.

invent (v. ed) يخترع

يُستخدم الفعل (invent) ليشير إلى إنشاء أو تصميم أو اختراع شيء أو فكرة جديدة لم تكن موجودة من قبل - عادةً من خلال الخيال أو الإبداع أو المهارة:

Ex. Thomas Edison **invented** the light bulb.

Ex. She invented an **excuse** for being late.

2 leaves

leaves (n.)

أوراق

• تُستخدم كلمة (leaves) بمعنىين مختلفين تماما، فيمكن استخدامها بمعنى (أوراق الشجر أو النبات)، كذلك يمكن استخدامها بمعنى (أوراق أو صفحات من كتاب)، وهي إسم جمع ومفردهُ (leaf) في الحالتين:

Ex. The leaves of the tree turned yellow in autumn.

Ex. The old book had several torn leaves.

3 make + مفعول به + صفة / فعل بالمصدر

• في حالة وجود مفعول به بعد الفعل (make)، فيمكن أن يليه صفة أو فعل بالمصدر بدون (to):

Ex. Treasure hunts make learning fun.

Ex. Riddles make treasure hunts enjoyable.

Ex. I like her because she makes me laugh.

- لاحظ أن الفعل (make) لو كان مبنيا للمجهول، يأتي بعده فعل بالمصدر مسبقا بـ (to):

Ex. I was made to do my homework before going out.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The scientists the deep ocean to learn about new sea creatures.
a. discovered b. explored c. created d. invented
- After years of research, the team finally a cure for the disease.
a. explored b. searched c. ruined d. discovered
- When the boy couldn't find his homework, he a story about losing it.
a. invented b. forgot c. explored d. decided
- The old diary had several torn at the back.
a. stems b. branches c. leaves d. roots
- Autumn is the season when tree change color and fall.
a. papers b. leaves c. sheets d. notes
- The colorful presents made the child
a. happy b. happiness c. to feel happy d. was happy
- The children were made their rooms.
a. clean b. cleaning c. to clean d. cleaned

Reading

SB Page (39)

SB Page (39)

استمع إلى النص



Treasure hunts have been **popular**⁽¹⁾ for **centuries**⁽²⁾, not only in stories, but also in real life.

A treasure hunt is a game in which players follow a **series of**⁽³⁾ **clues**⁽⁴⁾ to find **hidden**⁽⁵⁾ **objects**⁽⁶⁾ or a **final**⁽⁷⁾ "treasure." The clues may be written on paper, hidden in places, or even given as **riddles**⁽⁸⁾.

In schools, treasure hunts are often used to make learning fun. Teachers may hide small cards around the classroom, each with a question to answer. When students **solve the question**⁽⁹⁾, they get the next clue. This activity **encourages**⁽¹⁰⁾ **teamwork**⁽¹¹⁾, problem-solving, and quick thinking.

In history, real treasure hunts were often **connected to**⁽¹²⁾ **explorers**⁽¹³⁾ and **pirates**⁽¹⁴⁾. Many **legends**⁽¹⁵⁾ tell about pirates hiding gold on islands and brave sailors searching for it. Even today, some people search for lost treasures, such as old coins, **sunken ships**⁽¹⁶⁾, or valuable **artifacts**⁽¹⁷⁾.

A treasure hunt is more than just a game-it builds skills. Students learn to read carefully, think **creatively**⁽¹⁸⁾, and work together. Whether in a classroom, a garden, or a whole city, the **excitement**⁽¹⁹⁾ of finding the "hidden prize" makes treasure hunts **enjoyable**⁽²⁰⁾ for all ages.



١. منتشر / رائج
٢. قرون
٣. سلسلة من
٤. قرائن / أدلة
٥. مخفي
٦. أشياء
٧. نهائي
٨. آغاز
٩. يحل سؤال
١٠. يشجع
١١. العمل الجماعي
١٢. متصل بـ
١٣. مستكشفون
١٤. قراصنة
١٥. أساطير
١٦. سفن غارقة
١٧. قطع أثرية
١٨. بإبداع
١٩. إثارة
٢٠. ممتع

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What makes a treasure hunt exciting for students?
2. How can treasure hunts help you learn teamwork?
3. Do you prefer real treasure hunts or classroom ones? Why?

1. Finding hidden clues and discovering the final prize makes it exciting.
2. They encourage students to cooperate, share ideas, and solve clues together.
3. I prefer classroom treasure hunts because they are fun, safe, and help us learn while playing.

Answers:



Lost in the Jungle Podcast

"My name is Nader, and this is the story of how I **survived**⁽¹⁾ in the **jungle**⁽²⁾."

I had planned a trip, but **unfortunately**⁽³⁾, I **got lost**⁽⁴⁾ in the jungle. The air was hot, and the trees seemed to **block**⁽⁵⁾ every path. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound that made my heart **race**⁽⁶⁾. I tried to stay calm, reminding myself that **panicking**⁽⁷⁾ means losing energy.

The rain kept falling heavily, but I forced myself to keep walking. I used an empty bottle to collect water. I remembered **packing**⁽⁸⁾ a **filter straw**⁽⁹⁾ in my **backpack**⁽¹⁰⁾. For food, I chose sour fruits, even though they weren't easy to eat. At night, I built a **shelter**⁽¹¹⁾ from leaves and branches. Hearing animals near my shelter made me nervous, but holding my torch helped me to feel safe.

During the day, I followed the sun to avoid walking in **circles**⁽¹²⁾. I was tired, but I refused to stop moving. After three days, I reached a river. Following it meant finding **a way out**⁽¹³⁾.

Finally, I discovered a small village. People welcomed me and listened to my story.

"The jungle taught me this," I say now. "**Survival**⁽¹⁴⁾ isn't about being physically strong -it's about thinking clearly, making **smart choices**⁽¹⁵⁾, and never giving up."

١. نجوت
٢. الغابة
٣. لسوء الحظ
٤. ضل الطريق
٥. يغلق
٦. ينبض بسرعة
٧. الذعر
٨. تعبئة
٩. ماصة فلتر
١٠. حقيبة ظهر
١١. ملجأ
١٢. دوائر
١٣. طريق للخروج
١٤. البقاء
١٥. خيارات ذكية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A is a hint that helps you solve something.
a. shoe b. clue c. glue d. canoe
2. If a food or drink is, this means it has an acidic taste, like lemon.
a. poor b. sweet c. delicious d. sour
3. The word "....." means living through a dangerous or difficult situation.
a. survival b. arrival c. approval d. musical
4. A is a light carried to enable you to see in the dark.
a. beach b. crash c. torch d. peach
5. A is a safe place to stay and protect yourself.
a. shelter b. filter c. butler d. helper

Synonyms and antonyms

6. There was a clue near the broken window. "Clue" is a synonym for
 a. evidence b. confusion c. mystery d. taste
7. The children tried to solve the riddle. "Riddle" is close in meaning to
 a. legend b. choice c. jungle d. puzzle
8. They were brave during the battle. "Brave" is opposite in meaning to
 a. courageous b. cowardly c. fearless d. sour
9. I built a small shelter from branches and leaves. "Shelter" means
 a. refuge b. threat c. danger d. skill
10. Food and water are essential for survival. The antonym of "survival" is
 a. existence b. continuation c. death d. confidence

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. To get the noun from the adjective "active", we add the "ity".
 a. antonym b. suffix c. synonym d. prefix
12. To get the verb from the noun "courage", we add the "en".
 a. antonym b. suffix c. synonym d. prefix
13. The suffix "....." changes the adjective "creative" into an adverb.
 a. ness b. less c. ly d. full
14. To get the adjective from the verb "enjoy", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. able b. ous c. ion d. ness
15. To get the noun from the verb "excite", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. less b. ness c. tion d. ment

Guess the meaning

16. The firefighter showed great when he ran into the burning house.
 a. garbage b. courage c. carriage d. marriage
17. The ship was attacked by a group of who stole the gold.
 a. pirates b. pockets c. buckets d. parrots
18. With good, the students managed to finish the project on time.
 a. homework b. network c. teamwork d. framework
19. For lunch, you have a between fish and meat.
 a. chance b. choice c. voice d. chase
20. In autumn, the yellow fall from the trees and cover the ground.
 a. papers b. sheets c. notes d. leaves
21. The teacher gave the students a small to help them find the answer.
 a. tent b. hunt c. hint d. rent

Unit 9 Courage and Survival

22. The box was very heavy, so I needed all my _____ to lift it onto the shelf.
a. strength b. length c. tenth d. width
23. The divers found a _____ ship at the bottom of the sea.
a. given b. drunken c. sudden d. sunken
24. She used the old blankets _____ to make a new, colorful carpet for her room.
a. natively b. creatively c. passively d. negatively
25. You must _____ a choice about which book to buy.
a. make b. take c. do d. break
26. Can you help me _____ this riddle, please? It's very difficult.
a. break b. lose c. solve d. block
27. The cat ran quickly until it became out of _____ behind the fence.
a. light b. sight c. mind d. right
28. Learning survival _____ can help you stay safe in the wild.
a. grills b. mills c. bills d. skills
29. All living things need food and water to _____ alive.
a. pray b. play c. stay d. say
30. His job requires good _____ skills to fix broken computers and find errors.
a. problem-solving b. holiday-planning
c. story-telling d. house-cleaning



Language

قواعد لغوية

Verbs + to + inf. / Verbs + v-ing

A- Verbs + to + inf.

• بعض الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.) فقط مثل:

need	يحتاج	decide	يقرر	expect	يتوقع	choose	يختار
arrange	يرتب	promise	يعد	hope	يأمل	offer	يعرض
ask	يسأل/ يطلب	want	يريد	refuse	يرفض	agree	يوافق
learn	يتعلم	aim	يهدف	plan	يخطط	encourage	يشجع

Ex. We **need to use** cleaner renewable energy.

Ex. Amr has **decided to go** to Italy next year.

B- Verbs + V-ing

• بعض أفعال يتبعها (V - ing) مثل:

enjoy يستمتع بـ	prevent يمنع	dislike لا يحب	mind يمانع
avoid يتجنب	suggest يقترح	practise يمارس	recommend يوصي بـ
finish ينهى	go يذهب	keep يحافظ على	

Ex. We must **avoid polluting** the environment.

Ex. Nada **enjoys drawing** pictures.

C- Verbs + to + inf. / V - ing

• هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها: (to + inf.) أو (V - ing) دون تغيير في المعنى، مثل:

start يبدأ	prefer يفضل	love يحب
hate يكره	like يحب	

Ex. I **like playing** football when I have free time.

Ex. I **like to play** football today.

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (V + ing) مع وجود تغيير في المعنى ومن هذه الأفعال:

Verb	Examples
forget	I forgot to call my friend. ينسى أن يفعل شيء ما I forgot calling my friend. فعل شيء ثم نسي أنه فعله
regret	I regret to say that you are mistaken. يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضروري أن يفعل شيء ما I regret saying that you are mistaken. يشعر بالأسف لأنه فعل شيء ما
remember	He remembered to lock the door. يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء ما He remembered locking the door. يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما
stop	They stopped to buy some products. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء ما They stopped buying American products. يتوقف عن فعل شيء ما

عبارات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)	عبارات يأتي بعدها (V - ing)
It's time حان الوقت	feel like يشعر برغبة في
used to اعتاد أن	look forward to يتطلع إلى
It's difficult من الصعب أن	(be) used to معتاد على
It's nice من اللطيف أن	Would (Do) you mind ..? هل تمانع في ..؟
The first ... أول ...	
The next ... التالي ...	
The last ... الأخير ...	

Unit 9 Courage and Survival

Notes

١- كثير من الصفات - التي تصف المشاعر - يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)

happy - stupid - surprised - fit

Ex. The scientists were surprised to find out that whales had legs.

SB 6

٢- لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد (the first / second / last / next)

Ex. Their country would be the first to launch a satellite.

SB 64

Check your understanding ✓

A Rewrite using the words between brackets:

- I enjoy reading a short story before going to bed. (to read)
.....
- My brother refused to help me with my homework. (wouldn't)
.....
- It's too cold today, so I don't want to go out. (will avoid)
.....
- I'd like to play a chess game with you. (playing)
.....
- I don't eat boiled eggs. (avoid)
.....

B Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- When the baby is hungry, he can't stop (cry) loudly.
- They are planning (take) a two-week holiday in July.
- Do you mind (open) the door for me? My hands are full of heavy books.
- She pretended (be) asleep when her mom came to wake her up.
- The child avoided (go) out while his father was at home.

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

- Nader used an empty bottle (collect) water.
- He agreed (come) to the party.

3. At night, he built a shelter ----- (protect) himself.
4. Eating wild fruits was not easy, but he needed ----- (eat) them.
5. I always avoid ----- (make) noise.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. She promised ----- (call) me as soon as she arrived.
7. I really enjoy ----- (cook) new dishes from different countries.
8. They refused ----- (lend) me some money.
9. He suggested ----- (go) to the museum after lunch.
10. The teacher encouraged us ----- (study) harder for the exam.
11. I miss ----- (stay) with my grandparents in the countryside.
12. They agreed ----- (finish) the report by Friday.
13. Please, I want ----- (leave) now, can I?
14. I hope ----- (catch) the school bus.
15. She avoided ----- (tell) me about her plans.
16. She promised ----- (helping) me with my homework after dinner.
17. I really enjoy ----- (ate) breakfast on the balcony every morning.
18. He decided ----- (left) his job and start his own business.
19. They suggested ----- (had) a picnic at the park this weekend.
20. My parents allowed me ----- (went) out with my friends last night.

2 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

Bit by Bit Exercises

1. Why don't we go out for a walk? (She suggested)

2. He wants to play video games. (enjoys)

3. She wants to bike to school. (biking)

4. They finished cleaning the house early. (managed to)

Unit 9 Courage and Survival

5. He suggested going to the park.

(wanted)

6. He avoided driving during the storm.

(refused)

7. Let's watch a film at home tonight.

(Mother suggested)

8. It is not a good idea to touch that wire.

(Avoid)

9. I like reading books in my free time.

(read)

10. Avoid making noise in the library.

(shouldn't)



Speaking

Questions and answers about planning a treasure hunt

• أسئلة وإجابات حول تخطيط لعبة "البحث عن الكنز":

Question

1. What's a treasure hunt?

ما المقصود بالبحث عن الكنز؟

2. Where would the clues be hidden?

أين يتم إخفاء الأدلة؟

3. What kinds of challenges would be included in the game?

ما هي أنواع التحديات التي يتم تضمينها في اللعبة؟

4. What would the final treasure be?

ماذا يمكن أن يكون الكنز النهائي؟

Answer

1. It's a game in which players follow a series of clues to find hidden objects or a final treasure

هي لعبة يتبع فيها اللاعبون سلسلة من الأدلة للعثور على أشياء مخفية أو كنز نهائي

2. They would be hidden in interesting places around the classroom

يتم إخفاؤها في أماكن مثيرة للاهتمام في جميع أنحاء الفصل الدراسي

3. Fun challenges like solving short riddles, answering quiz questions about our lessons.

تحديات ممتعة مثل حل الألغاز القصيرة والإجابة على أسئلة اختبار حول دروسنا

4. It could be a box full of small prizes, but the best treasure is the feeling of success and teamwork.

قد يكون صندوقًا مليئًا بالجوائز الصغيرة، لكن الكنز الأفضل سيكون الشعور بالنجاح والعمل الجماعي.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Ali are talking about a treasure hunt game.

Sara: We're going to have a treasure hunt tomorrow!

Ali : Wow! ① Where will it be?

Sara: In the school garden. We will look for clues to find the treasure.

Ali : ② ?

Sara: The clues will be hidden behind trees and benches.

Ali : I hope there will be a riddle to solve.

Sara: ③ ?

Ali : Because riddles make us think and teach us problem-solving skills!

Sara: Yes, riddles teach us teamwork, as well.

Ali : ④

Sara: I think the treasure will be a box of sweets.

Ali : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teamwork - clue - treasure - legend - riddle

We had a treasure hunt at school today. Each ① led us to a new place. We had to solve a ② to find the next one. It was a game of ③ and problem-solving. Everyone worked together and felt a lot of excitement when we finally found the ④!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If something is, this means it's out of sight or not easily seen.

- a. ridden b. hidden c. written d. driven

2. If someone shows sudden fear, he/she is described as

- a. tricked b. panicked c. hacked d. picked

3. She panicked when she saw the rat. "Panicked" is opposite in meaning to

- a. scared b. terrified c. frightened d. composed

4. After the accident, she was grateful to be alive. The antonym of "alive" is

- a. existing b. living c. dead d. active

5. A/An is a piece of historical object from the past.

- a. artifact b. century c. clue d. pirate

Unit 9 Courage and Survival

6. We couldn't solve the mystery because there wasn't a single to follow.
a. clue b. map c. joke d. rule
7. In the harsh desert, finding water is essential for
a. departure b. arrival c. survival d. approval
8. Carrying the heavy backpack required more than the climber expected.
a. height b. strength c. length d. depth
9. They became when the fire alarm suddenly went off during their exam.
a. confident b. relaxed c. cheerful d. panicked
10. The project was finished on time because the staff showed excellent
a. teamwork b. homework c. artwork d. paperwork

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I miss (stay) with my grandparents in the countryside.
2. They agreed (finish) the report by Friday.
3. Please, I want (leave) now, can I?
4. I hope (catch) the school bus.
5. She avoided (tell) me about her plans.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A folk tale that teaches a lesson"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. Who was the hero in the story?
- 2- What is the tale about?
- 3-What lesson does the tale teach us?



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

tribe (n.)	قبيلة	loyalty (n.)	وفاء
strategy (n.)	استراتيجية	loyal (adj.)	وفيّ
rival (adj. / n.)	خصم / عدو	wisdom (n.)	حكمة

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

folk tale (n.)	حكاية شعبية	fighter (n.)	مقاتل
folk legend (n.)	أسطورة شعبية	values (n.)	القيم
folk hero (n.)	بطل شعبي	generations (n.)	أجيال
performance (n.)	أداء / عرض	faithful (adj.)	مخلص
enemies (n.)	الأعداء	supportive (adj.)	داعم
bravery (n.)	الشجاعة	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز
battle (n.)	معركة	compete (v. d)	يتنافس / يتنافس
leader (n.)	قائد	inspire (v. d)	يلهم
leadership (n.)	قيادة	unite (v. d)	يوحد
the weak (n.)	الضعفاء	include (v. d)	يشمل
storytellers (n.)	رواة	defeat (v. ed / n.)	يهزم / هزيمة
hardship (n.)	عقبة / صعوبة	defend (v. ed)	يدافع عن



Definitions

tribe (n.)	قبيلة	group of families living together with shared traditions ⁽¹⁾
rival (adj.)	خصم	a person or group that competes with ⁽²⁾ another.
loyal (adj.)	وفي	being faithful ⁽³⁾ and supportive ⁽⁴⁾ to others.
strategy (n.)	استراتيجية	clever plan to win a battle
wisdom (n.)	حكمة	great intelligence ⁽⁵⁾ and good judgment ⁽⁶⁾ .

١. تقاليد مشتركة
٢. يتنافس مع
٣. مخلص
٤. داعم
٥. ذكاء
٦. حكم

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) born into	يُولَدُ في أسرة	belong to	ينتمي إلى/ يخص
(be) known for	معروف بـ	defend (sb. / sth.)	يدافع عن (شخص / شيء)
famous for	مشهور بـ	compete with	يتنافس مع
face enemies	يواجه الأعداء	win a battle	يفوز بمعركة
remind (sb) of	يُذكِّر شخصاً بـ	during times of hardship	في أوقات الشدة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
rival (adj.)	خصم	enemy		supportive	داعم
hardship (n.)	صعوبة	difficulty / trouble		comfort	يسر
loyal (adj.)	وفي	faithful		unfaithful	خائن
compete (v. d)	يتنافس	contest / challenge		give up	يستسلم
unite (v. d)	يوحد	join		divide	يفصل
defend (v. ed)	يدافع عن	protect		attack / harm	يهاجم
strategy (n.)	استراتيجية	plan		—	—

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ance	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	performance
-ry	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	bravery
-er	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	leader
-ship	تحول الإسم إلى إسم بمعنى آخر	leadership
-ty	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	loyalty
-dom	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	freedom

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lead	يقود	led	led
fight	يقاتل	fought	fought



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 include / contain

• include (v.) يتضمن

• يستخدم الفعل "include" ليشير إلى أن المفعول به عبارة عن جزء من قائمة أو أعضاء أو أجزاء يتضمنها الفاعل:

Ex. The team **includes** players from five foreign countries. (NOT: contains).

• contain (v.) يحتوي على / يحوي

• يستخدم الفعل "contain" ليشير إلى فكرة الاحتواء المادي والسعة، فالفاعل هو وعاء يحمل المفعول به داخله:

Ex. The room **contained** old furniture.

2 special / private

special (adj.) خاص / متميز / استثنائي

• تستخدم الصفة "special" لوصف شيء متميز أو استثنائي أو أكثر أهمية من المعتاد:

Ex. This is a **special** edition of the book. = unique

Ex. Today is a **special** occasion-our anniversary. = important

Ex. She has a **special** talent for music. = exceptional

private (adj.) خاص من حيث الملكية / سري

• تستخدم الصفة "private" لوصف شيء على أنه ملكية شخصية أو على أنه سري وليس عام:

Ex. That is **private** information. = confidential / secret

Ex. This is my **private** office. = owned by me

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The box is so full that it cannot any more books.

- a. involve b. invite c. contain d. include

2. The tour package free lunch and tickets.

- a. includes b. contains c. stores d. holds

3. Please do not read my diary; it is

- a. special b. private c. lonely d. alone

4. Today is a/an day because it is my birthday.

- a. ordinary b. general c. private d. special

Reading

SB Page (44)

SB Page (44)

The Legend of Abu Zayd al-Hilali

Abu Zayd al-Hilali is one of the most famous Arab **folk heroes**⁽¹⁾. His story has been told in **poems**⁽²⁾, songs, and **performances**⁽³⁾ for **centuries**⁽⁴⁾. **Born into**⁽⁵⁾ the Hilali tribe, Abu Zayd **was known**⁽⁶⁾ for his **strength**⁽⁷⁾, **wisdom**⁽⁸⁾, and **courage**⁽⁹⁾.

When his **tribe**⁽¹⁰⁾ faced **enemies**⁽¹¹⁾, Abu Zayd **led**⁽¹²⁾ them with **bravery**⁽¹³⁾. He **fought**⁽¹⁴⁾ to **defend**⁽¹⁵⁾ his people and used clever strategies to defeat stronger armies. His adventures **included**⁽¹⁶⁾ long journeys across deserts, **battles**⁽¹⁷⁾ against **rival**⁽¹⁸⁾ tribes, and **wise**⁽¹⁹⁾ leadership during times of **hardship**⁽²⁰⁾.



What makes Abu Zayd's legend **special**⁽²¹⁾ is not only his strength, but also his **ability**⁽²²⁾ to **unite**⁽²³⁾ people. He encouraged **loyalty**⁽²⁴⁾, protected the weak, and **inspired**⁽²⁵⁾ others to act **bravely**⁽²⁶⁾.

Even today, storytellers **known as**⁽²⁷⁾ "al- Hakawati" continue telling his adventures in cafes and **cultural festivals**⁽²⁸⁾. The **folk tale**⁽²⁹⁾ of Abu Zayd teaches us that a hero is not only a **fighter**⁽³⁰⁾ but also a **leader**⁽³¹⁾ who gives hope.

Folk legends⁽³²⁾ like this **remind**⁽³³⁾ us of **values**⁽³⁴⁾ such as courage, loyalty, and wisdom. They show how one person's actions can inspire **generations**⁽³⁵⁾.

١. أبطال شعبيين
٢. القصائد
٣. العروض
٤. قرون
٥. وُلِدَ في
٦. عُرفَ بـ
٧. القوة
٨. الحكمة
٩. الشجاعة
١٠. قبيلة
١١. الأعداء
١٢. قاد
١٣. شجاعة
١٤. قاتل
١٥. يدافع عن
١٦. تضمن
١٧. معارك
١٨. خصوم
١٩. حكيم
٢٠. شدة
٢١. مُميز
٢٢. قدرة
٢٣. يوحد
٢٤. وفاء
٢٥. ألهم
٢٦. بشجاعة
٢٧. عُرفَ كـ
٢٨. مهرجانات ثقافية
٢٩. حكاية شعبية
٣٠. مقاتل
٣١. قائد
٣٢. أساطير شعبية
٣٣. يذكر
٣٤. القيم
٣٥. أجيال

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Abu Zayd al-Hilali remembered as a hero?
2. How did he protect and lead his people?
3. What values does his story teach us?

1. Because he showed great strength, courage, and wisdom, and he united and protected his people.
2. He led his tribe bravely in battles, used clever strategies against stronger armies, and guided them wisely during hard times.
3. His story teaches values such as courage, loyalty, wisdom, and leadership that inspires and gives hope to others.

Answers:

Exercises on lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A _____ is a group of families living together with shared traditions.
a. jungle b. tribe c. legend d. taste
- A _____ is a person or group that competes with another.
a. strength b. century c. pirate d. rival
- To be faithful and supportive to others is to be _____ to them.
a. loyal b. rival c. special d. private
- A _____ is a clever plan to win a battle.
a. leadership b. wisdom c. strategy d. hardship
- The word " _____ " means great intelligence and good judgment.
a. kingdom b. freedom c. boredom d. wisdom

Synonyms and antonyms

- We made a strategy to win the game. "Strategy" is a synonym for _____.
a. plan b. battle c. competition d. courage
- The rival teams played hard to win the match. "Rival" is an antonym for _____.
a. enemy b. opposed c. supportive d. hidden
- We faced great hardship during the war. The synonym of "hardship" is _____.
a. comfort b. difficulty c. ease d. leadership
- The dog was very loyal to its owner. "Loyal" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. devoted b. careful c. unhelpful d. unfaithful
- Many runners competed in the race. "Competed" can be replaced with _____.
a. surrendered b. gave up c. contested d. looked for

Prefixes and suffixes

- To form a noun from the verb "perform", we add the _____ "ance".
a. suffix b. prefix c. synonym d. antonym
- To get the noun from the adjective "brave", we add the suffix "_____".
a. ed b. er c. al d. ry
- To get the verb from the noun "leader" we remove the suffix "_____".
a. le b. er c. ad d. ld

14. To get the adjective from the noun "loyalty", we remove the suffix "_____".
a. ty b. lo c. al d. ya
15. To get the noun from the adjective "free", we add the suffix "_____".
a. ion b. dom c. ness d. ship

Guess the meaning

16. He showed great _____ when he saved the cat from the river.
a. bakery b. delivery c. slavery d. bravery
17. The history book tells the story of a famous, long _____ between two armies.
a. cattle b. battle c. bottle d. apple
18. A good _____ helps his team and makes smart decisions.
a. leader b. reader c. feeder d. maker
19. The brave _____ saved the village from danger.
a. biter b. lighter c. fighter d. writer
20. My family teaches me good _____, like being honest and helping others.
a. valleys b. values c. castles d. vehicles
21. Many students _____ in the school race every year.
a. repeat b. delete c. complete d. compete
22. Our team _____ the other team and won the game.
a. deleted b. defeated c. repeated d. heated
23. The king _____ the tribes so they could live in peace.
a. united b. invited c. divided d. excited
24. The castle was built in 1549 to _____ the island against enemies.
a. send b. spend c. defend d. extend
25. She was born _____ a very wealthy family.
a. into b. onto c. with d. about
26. That city is Known _____ its beautiful parks.
a. as b. to c. in d. for
27. This man reminds me _____ my grandfather.
a. to b. of c. into d. for
28. This green shirt belongs _____ my brother.
a. to b. for c. on d. at
29. I want to compete _____ you to see who is faster at running.
a. for b. about c. with d. into



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

goal (n.)	هدف	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
journey (n.)	رحلة	travel (v. led)	يسافر
sailing (n.)	الإبحار	enjoy (v. ed)	يستمتع بـ
bravery (n.)	الشجاعة	discover (v. ed)	يكتشف
powerful (adj.)	قوي	inspire (v. d)	يلهم

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary

qualities (n.)	صفات	introduction (n.)	مقدمة
patience (n.)	الصبر	message / lesson (n.)	مغزى / درس مستفاد
dangers (n.)	أخطار	historian (n.)	عالم في التاريخ
rainforest (n.)	غابة مطيرة	knowledge (n.)	المعرفة
wild animals (n.)	حيوانات برية	curiosity (n.)	الفضول / حب الاستطلاع
heavy rain (n.)	أمطار غزيرة	attack (n. / v. ed)	هجوم / يهاجم
traditions (n.)	تقاليد	storm (n.)	عاصفة
nature (n.)	الطبيعة	conclusion (n.)	خاتمة
podcast (n.)	بث لبرنامج عبر الانترنت	describe (v. d)	يصف
host (n. / v. ed)	مضيف / يستضيف	avoid (v. ed)	يتفادى / يتجنب
adventure (n.)	مغامرة	cross (v. ed)	يعبر
cultures (n.)	ثقافات	protect (v. ed)	يحمي
deserts (n.)	صحاري	respect (v. ed)	يحترمه
traditions (n.)	تقاليد	continue (v. d)	يستمر
compass (n.)	بوصلة	survive (v. d)	يبقى على قيد الحياة / ينجو

Expressions & Prepositions

face many dangers	يواجه أخطارا عديدة	learn about	يتعلم عن
build a shelter	يبنى مأوى	bring back	يسترجع / يستعيد
stay safe	يبقى آمنا	talk to	يتحدث إلى
to survive, I would	لكي أنجو، سوف	I would like to	أحب أن
If I were a / an وظيفة, I would			لو كنت (وظيفة)، سوف (أفعل كذا)
What qualities make a good + وظيفة			ماهي الصفات التي تصنع (وظيفة) جيد؟



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
bravery (n.)	شجاعة	courage		fear	خوف / جبن
powerful (adj.)	قوي	strong		weak	ضعيف
dangerous (adj.)	خطير	unsafe		safe	آمن
inspire (v. d)	يلهم	encourage / motivate		discourage	يثبط
wild (adj.)	بري / متوحش	untamed		tame / domestic	مستأنس
heavy (adj.)	غزير / ثقيل	strong		light / mild	خفيف / معتدل
curiosity (n.)	الفضول	interest		disinterest	عدم اهتمام

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	dangerous
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	powerful
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	traveler

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
see	يرى	saw	seen
leave	يغادر	left	left
become	يصبح / يصير	became	become

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 try + to-infinitive / try + v-ing:

• try + v-ing: يجرب أن

- يُستخدم الفعل (try) متبوعاً بفعل مضاف إليه (ing) ليشير إلى القيام بشيء ما كتحجيرة أو اختبار لمعرفة النتيجة:

Ex. Try adding some sugar to make it sweeter.

Ex. Try pressing the red button; it might start the machine.

• try + to-infinitive: يحاول أن

- يُستخدم الفعل (try) متبوعاً بـ (to-inf.) ليشير إلى بذل جهد لإنجاز أمر غالباً ما يكون صعباً، وقد يفشل. لاحظ أنه

يمكن استخدام فعل مضاف إليه (ing) أيضاً في هذا السياق - الشكليات صديحين:

Ex. He tried to lift / lifting the heavy box, but it was too heavy.

Ex. I tried to call / calling you, but the line was busy.

2 stop + to-infinitive / stop + v-ing:

• **stop + to-infinitive:** يوقف فعل شيء لكي يقوم بشيء آخر

- يُستخدم الفعل (stop) متبوعاً بـ (to-inf.) لإشير إلى مقاطعة نشاط للقيام بنشاط آخر. الفعل الذي يلي "to" هو غرض أو سبب التوقف:

Ex. She **stopped to buy** some water.

Ex. We **stopped to take** a photo.

• **stop + v-ing:** يتوقف أو يتخلى عن فعل شيء

- يُستخدم الفعل (stop) متبوعاً بـ (v-ing) لإشير إلى إيقاف أو إنهاء نشاط. فالفاعل يُنهي النشاط الذي يصفه الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (ing):

Ex. My father **stopped smoking** last year.

Ex. She **stopped talking** when the teacher came in.

3 as + صفة + as:

- يستخدم هذا التعبير لمقارنة شخصين أو شيئين أو موقفين متساويين (أو غير متساويين) في درجة الصفة:

Ex. Ali is **as tall as** Omar.

Ex. My bag is **as heavy as** yours.

- وعند نفي التساوي في الصفة، نستخدم التعبير "not as / not so + adjective + as":

Ex. This exam is **not as / not so easy as** the last one.

Ex. My house is **not as / not so big as** yours.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. On her way to school, she stopped (**buying**) a pencil.
2. Amjad isn't as (**faster**) as Hany.
3. It didn't stop (**rained**) all night.
4. This building is (**tallest**) as that. They are the same.
5. Her injury didn't stop (**to bleed**) until the ambulance arrived.
6. My bike isn't (**like**) new as yours.

Reading

SB Page (46)

SB Page (46)

استمع إلى النص



If I were an Explorer

Introduction Hello everyone. If I were an explorer⁽¹⁾, I would travel to the Amazon rainforest⁽²⁾.

Body

- I would like to discover⁽³⁾ new plants and animals that people have never seen before.
- I would face⁽⁴⁾ many dangers⁽⁵⁾, such as wild animals⁽⁶⁾, heavy rain⁽⁷⁾, and getting lost.
- To survive⁽⁸⁾, I would use a compass⁽⁹⁾ to find my way and build a shelter to stay safe at night.
- I would also try to talk to local people and learn about their traditions.

Conclusion⁽¹⁰⁾

Being an explorer would teach me courage and patience⁽¹¹⁾. I would bring back⁽¹²⁾ stories to inspire⁽¹³⁾ others to respect nature and protect the rainforest.

١. مستكشف
٢. غابات الأمازون
٣. يكتشف
٤. يواجه
٥. أخطار
٦. حيوانات برية
٧. أمطار غزيرة
٨. لكي أنجو
٩. بوصلة
١٠. خاتمة
١١. الصبر
١٢. يستعيد
١٣. يلهم

Writing Task

SB Page 47:

Complete the following presentation with your own words.

(1) Introduction

Hello everyone. If I were an explorer, I would travel to the Amazon rainforest.

(2) Body

1. I would like to discover new animals and plants.
2. I would face dangers such as wild animals and heavy rain.
3. To survive, I would use a map, clean water, and a strong tent.
4. I would also try to protect nature and help local people.

(3) Conclusion

1. Being an explorer would teach me courage and respect for nature.
2. I would bring back photos and stories to share with people.

Check on the parts of an exploration plan

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When you design an exploration plan, you should start with
 a. what dangers you will face b. where you want to travel
 c. what you will eat d. who you will call
- In the body of an exploration plan, explain what you want to
 a. forget b. sell c. paint d. discover
- To stay safe during a journey, an explorer should plan how to
 a. survive b. dance c. sleep early d. travel home
- In an exploration plan, the explorer should also talk about the they might face.
 a. friends b. foods c. dangers d. lessons
- At the end of an exploration plan, say what you will from the trip.
 a. eat b. bring back c. wear d. leave behind

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

- He showed great bravery when he caught the thief. "Bravery" means
 a. courage b. cowardice c. fear d. harm
- The lion is a very powerful animal. "Powerful" is an antonym for
 a. strong b. mighty c. weak d. clever
- It's dangerous to swim during a storm. "Dangerous" is an antonym for
 a. risky b. safe c. unsafe d. beautiful
- Teachers inspire their students to work hard. "Inspire" is a synonym for
 a. discourage b. dishearten c. discover d. motivate
- We saw wild animals in the forest. "Wild" is close in meaning to
 a. tame b. domestic c. fierce d. kind

Prefixes and suffixes

- To get the adjective from the noun "danger", we add the suffix
 a. less b. ous c. ness d. ion

7. To get the noun from the word "powerful", we remove the suffix

- a. ful b. pow c. er d. wer

8. To get the noun from the verb "travel", we add the suffix

- a. ed b. or c. er d. al

Guess the meaning

9. My main is to learn to swim by the end of this summer.

- a. hole b. bowl c. pole d. goal

10. The family's long car to Mersa Matrouh took 6 hours.

- a. money b. journey c. turkey d. alley

11. We went on a small boat last summer.

- a. sailing b. walking c. driving d. flying

12. The storm was very and broke many trees.

- a. colorful b. cheerful c. powerful d. playful

13. It is to swim in the river when the water is high.

- a. generous b. glorious c. spacious d. dangerous

14. The hiker a small cave behind the hill.

- a. recovered b. covered c. discovered d. delivered

15. The teacher's kind words me to study harder.

- a. inspired b. admired c. retired d. desired

16. Learning a new skill needs time and

- a. distance b. violence c. silence d. patience

17. The tourists saw many animals on their safari trip.

- a. mild b. wild c. tiled d. piled

18. The Amazon is a very big and wet

- a. rainforest b. ocean c. galaxy d. desert

19. The game was stopped because of the rain.

- a. sunny b. funny c. heavy d. navy

20. Every country has its own customs and

- a. additions b. traditions c. physicians d. conditions

21. She listens to a about funny stories while she drives to work.

- a. broadcast b. forecast c. contract d. podcast

22. Paris the second modern Olympics in 1900.

- a. hosted b. posted c. tasted d. boasted

23. The family went off to Africa, looking for
 a. capture b. adventure c. picture d. structure
24. I love learning about different from around the world.
 a. lectures b. pictures c. sculptures d. cultures
25. Camels are animals that are used to living in
 a. alerts b. desserts c. deserts d. efforts
26. A helps explorers find their way.
 a. campus b. compass c. chorus d. fitness
27. The story teaches us an important about kindness.
 a. lesson b. mission c. passage d. dressing
28. Explorers often back stories and photos from their trips.
 a. go b. give c. bring d. come
29. The farmer a shelter to protect himself from the rain.
 a. sold b. held c. folded d. built

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Sara is talking to Ali about his next exploration trip.

Sara : Where did you go in your last exploration trip?

Ali : I traveled across the desert.

Sara : That sounds exciting. ①

Ali : I discovered new desert animals and plants.

Sara : That's amazing! ②

Ali : The weather was very hot.

Sara : What did you take with you to stay safe?

Ali : ③

Sara : What lessons did these trips teach you?

Ali : I think ④

Sara : I wish you good luck in your next exploration trips.

Ali : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The firefighter showed great courage during the rescue. "Courage" means
a. bravery b. cowardice c. fear d. death
2. A/An is a person who travels to discover new places.
a. inventor b. discoverer c. creator d. explorer
3. At school, we about different animals and where they live.
a. turn b. learn c. burn d. earn
4. Firefighters many dangers when they try to save people from fires.
a. face b. chase c. race d. catch
5. With little food or water, the man had to find a way to in the desert.
a. arrive b. dive c. survive d. achieve
6. Mother birds do their best to their babies from snakes.
a. collect b. select c. detect d. protect
7. Every country has its own customs and for weddings.
a. traditions b. positions c. editions d. conditions
8. The child looked at the strange insect with great
a. priority b. curiosity c. authority d. majority
9. My trip to the forest was a/an for me. I was very happy and excited.
a. pressure b. treasure c. measure d. adventure
10. Honesty and kindness are good in a friend.
a. policies b. melodies c. qualities d. holidays

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She agreed (review) the report before the meeting.
2. He suggested (go) to the countryside for the weekend.
3. We managed (finish) all the work before the deadline.
4. She kept (ask) the same question again and again.
5. My parents encouraged me (learn) a second language.

4

Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A special day you spent with your friends."

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins or other markings on the paper.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. When was it?
2. Where did you go?
3. What did you do?
4. How did you feel?

Review on Unit 9

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

clue (n.)	قرينة / دليل	loyalty (n.)	وفاء
riddle (n.)	لُغز	loyal (adj.)	وفى
explorer (n.)	مُستكشف	wisdom (n.)	حكمة
artifacts (n.)	قِطَع أثرية	goal (n.)	هدف
shelter (n. / v. ed)	ماوى / ملجأ - يَحْتَمي	journey (n.)	رحلة
torch (n.)	كشاف كهربائي	sailing (n.)	الإبحار
survival (n.)	البقاء / النجاة	bravery (n.)	الشجاعة
sour (adj.)	حامض الطعم	powerful (adj.)	قوي
panicked (adj.)	مذعور	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
hidden (adj.)	مخفي	travel (v. led)	يسافر
tribe (n.)	قبيلة	enjoy (v. ed)	يستمتع بـ
strategy (n.)	استراتيجية	discover (v. ed)	يكتشف
rival (adj. / n.)	خصم / عدو	inspire (v. d)	يلهم
hardship (n.)	شِدَّة / صعوبة		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Verbs + to + inf. / Verbs + v-ing

A- Verbs + to + inf.

• بعض الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.) فقط مثل:

need	يحتاج	decide	يقرر	expect	يتوقع	choose	يختار
arrange	يرتب	promise	يعد	hope	يأمل	offer	يعرض
ask	يسأل / يطلب	want	يريد	refuse	يرفض	agree	يوافق
learn	يتعلم	aim	يهدف لـ	plan	يخطط	encourage	يشجع

Ex. Salah **offered to help** us with the difficult problem.

B- Verbs + V-ing

• بعض أفعال يتبعها (V - ing) مثل:

enjoy يستمتع بـ	prevent يمنع	dislike لا يحب	mind يمانع
avoid يتجنب	suggest يقترح	practise يمارس	recommend يوصي بـ
finish ينهى	go يذهب	keep يحافظ على	

Ex. The doctor **recommended taking** 3 days rest to get better.

C- Verbs + to + inf. / V - ing

• هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها: (to + inf.) أو (V - ing) دون تغيير في المعنى، مثل:

start يبدأ	prefer يفضل	love يحب
hate يكره	like يحب	

Ex. They **started building** a new school in our town.

Ex. They **started to build** a new school in our town.

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (V + ing) مع وجود تغيير في المعنى ومن هذه الأفعال:

Verb	Examples
forget	I forgot to call my friend. ينسى أن يفعل شيء ما I forgot calling my friend. فعل شيء ثم نسي أنه فعله
regret	I regret to say that you are mistaken. يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضروري أن يفعل شيء ما I regret saying that you are mistaken. يشعر بالأسف لأنه فعل شيء ما
remember	He remembered to lock the door. يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء ما He remembered locking the door. يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما
stop	They stopped to buy some products. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء ما They stopped buying American products. يتوقف عن فعل شيء ما

عبارات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)	عبارات يأتي بعدها (V - ing)
It's time حان الوقت	feel like يشعر برغبة في
used to اعتاد أن	look forward to يتطلع إلى
It's difficult من الصعب أن	(be) used to معتاد على
It's nice من اللطيف أن	Would (Do) you mind ..? هل تمانع في ..؟
The first ... أول ...	
The next ... التالي ...	
The last ... الأخير ...	

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية و رسائل البريد الإلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Long ago, there was a poor farmer who lived near a river. One day, a giant snake came and scared everyone in the village. The farmer was brave and decided to face the challenge. He made a big trap using sticks and stones. When the snake came at night, it fell into the trap and could not get out. The farmer called his friends, and together they helped remove the snake from the village. Everyone thanked him for his courage. From that day, people learned that even an ordinary hero can do great things with teamwork and bravery.

Lessons 5 & 6

Last Saturday was one of the best days I've ever had. It was my friend Omar's birthday, and we all met at the park to celebrate. The weather was sunny, and everyone was smiling. We played football, took funny photos, and had a big picnic with sandwiches, juice, and cake. After lunch, we told jokes and shared stories from school. I gave Omar a small gift, and he was so happy. We spent the whole afternoon laughing and enjoying every moment together. I felt really lucky to have such kind friends. That day taught me how special true friendship is.

Al-Azhar Test

Exploration trips are exciting journeys to discover new places. People travel to mountains, forests, or deserts to learn about nature and different cultures. These trips often teach teamwork and courage. Explorers must be patient and ready to face dangers like bad weather or wild animals. They also collect information and take photos. Exploration trips help people learn and grow through adventure.

Test on Unit 9

Last weekend, I went on an adventure with my friends to the beach. It was a sunny and happy day. We played football on the sand, built big sandcastles, and swam in the sea. The water was cool, and the waves were not too high. We also collected shells and took many funny pictures together. At noon, we ate sandwiches and drank juice under a big umbrella. Everyone was laughing and having fun. I felt free and relaxed because I was with my best friends. That day was full of fun, friendship, and joy. It was one of the best adventures in my life.

Al Azhar Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking a passerby for help

Tourist : Can you help me, please?

Passerby : ① ?

Tourist : How can I get to the nearest metro station?

Passerby : ②

Tourist : Do I need to take a taxi?

Passerby : ③ It's very near from here.

Tourist : OK. Thank you very much.

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- A is a question or puzzle with a hidden answer.
a. shelter b. candle c. riddle d. strength
- The milk tasted sour. I didn't drink it. "Sour" is close in meaning to
a. acidic b. sweet c. fresh d. delicious
- My teacher advised me my lessons regularly.
a. revised b. revising c. revise d. to revise
- Young children often enjoy around the house.
a. to help b. helping c. help d. helped

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

challenge - desert - explorers - patient - mystery

Exploration in the desert can be very hard. The weather in the ① is often hot and dry, and ② must be strong and ③ Finding water and food is not easy, but every traveler learns an important lesson - with patience and courage, you can face any ④ and reach your goal.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She enjoyed (help) with the cooking.
- She stopped (close) the window when it got cold.
- He wants (buy) a new phone.
- She suggested (stay) at home.

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Last summer, Lina and her friends went on a camping trip in the mountains. The weather was cool and fresh, and the view was beautiful. They built a small fire, cooked food, and told funny stories at night. The next morning, they went hiking and saw a clear blue lake. Lina felt happy and relaxed. She learned that spending time in nature helps people forget stress and enjoy simple things in life.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What activities did Lina and her friends do on their camping trip?

2. What lesson did Lina learn from her time in nature?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The weather during the trip was

a. hot and dry

b. cool and fresh

c. rainy and stormy

d. cold and windy

4. Lina felt after spending time in nature.

a. bored

b. sad

c. relaxed

d. angry

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Exploration trips"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- To form an adjective from the noun "danger", we add the suffix
a. ive b. ion c. -ing d. ous
- King Mina united the north and the south. The antonym of "united" is
a. connected b. divided c. joined d. guarded
- The teacher's job checking students' daily homework.
a. includes b. contains c. stores d. holds
- We saw many animals on our trip in the forest.
a. mild b. wild c. tiled d. piled

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

strategy - hidden - travelers - discovery - rainforest

The journey through the old forest was full of mystery and ① Every step taught the ② new wisdom about nature and patience. Using a smart ③, they followed the stars to find their way. At last, they reached a ④ cave filled with beautiful stones and shining water.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Last Friday, our school organized a clean-up day in the neighborhood. All the students and teachers worked together to make the streets and park look beautiful again. We wore gloves, picked up trash, and planted small trees. At first, the work was a bit hard, but everyone helped each other with smiles. By the end of the day, the park looked clean and green. I felt proud because we made a difference. The teachers said this activity was not only about cleaning-it was about learning responsibility, teamwork, and care for the environment. That day taught me that even small actions can help our world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What was the main activity the students did?
a. Played games b. Painted the school
c. Visited a park d. Cleaned the neighborhood
- What did the students learn from the activity?
a. How to work alone b. Responsibility and teamwork
c. How to plant big trees d. How to build houses
- At the end of the day, the writer felt
a. happy b. proud c. angry d. afraid

B. Answer the following questions

4. Who took part in the clean-up day?

5. What did the students do during the activity?

6. Why was the clean-up day important?

Story**4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Through the observation windows, the crew saw _____ glowing with color

a. fish b. coral reefs c. shipwrecks d. sharks

2. The crew moved forward into deeper mysteries, carrying them far from _____

a. land b. war c. safety d. their home

3. Conseil was able to name each creature _____

a. excitement b. accurately c. curiosity d. confusion

4. Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by _____

a. the waves b. storms c. the earth d. the mountains

B. Answer the following questions

5. What was the purpose of the diving voyages with Captain Nemo?

6. What did the crew do in the underwater forest?

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

1. Why don't we stay home?

(She suggested)

2. He wants to go to the cinema on weekends.

(enjoys)

3. She wants to bike to school.

(biking)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The nurse encouraged the patient _____ (take) his medicine on time.

2. My father promised _____ (buy) me a new mobile on my birthday.

3. I didn't enjoy _____ (walk) in the park. It was too crowded with people.

Lina and Omar are planning a picnic.

Lina : Hi, Omar! Let's have a picnic this weekend.

Omar : That sounds fun! ① _____?

Lina : Let's go to the park near the river.

Omar : Good idea! ② _____

Lina : We can take sandwiches, juice, and fruit.

Omar : Great! ③ _____ ?

Lina : We can play football and take photos.

Omar : 4

Lina : Yes! I can't wait for Saturday.

Omar : 5

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"An adventure I liked"

[illegible]

Review (3)

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

culture (n.)	ثقافة	Western countries (n.)	الدول الغربية
traditions (n.)	تقاليد	Day of the Dead (n.)	يوم الموتى
clothing (n.)	الملبس	passed away (v.)	توفي
festivals (n.)	مهرجانات	shake hands (v.)	يسلم باليد
greeting (n.)	التحية	include (v. d)	يشمل
unique (adj.)	فريد	bow (v. ed)	ينحني
feel connected (v.)	يشعر بالاتّباط	celebrate (v. d)	يحتفل بـ

Listening



SB Page (53)



SB Page (53)

استمع إلى النص



Every **culture**⁽¹⁾ has its own **traditions**⁽²⁾ that make it **unique**⁽³⁾. These traditions can **include**⁽⁴⁾ food, **clothing**⁽⁵⁾, **festivals**⁽⁶⁾, and ways of **greeting**⁽⁷⁾. For example, in Japan, people **bow**⁽⁸⁾ to show respect, while in many **Western countries**⁽⁹⁾, people **shake hands**⁽¹⁰⁾. In Mexico, families **celebrate**⁽¹¹⁾ the **Day of the Dead**⁽¹²⁾ to remember loved ones who have **passed away**⁽¹³⁾. Traditions help people **feel connected**⁽¹⁴⁾ to their history and community. Learning about other cultures teaches us respect and helps us understand the world better.

١. ثقافة
٢. تقاليد
٣. فريد من نوعه
٤. يشمل
٥. الملابس
٦. مهرجانات
٧. التحية
٨. ينحني
٩. الدول الغربية
١٠. يسلم باليد
١١. يحتفل بـ
١٢. يوم الموتى
١٣. توفي
١٤. يشعر بالاتّباط

General Test on Units 7-9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The hotel staff were praised for their excellent _____ toward all the guests.
a. honesty b. hospitality c. creativity d. activity
- The treasure was _____ in a cave where no one could find it.
a. open b. visible c. known d. hidden
- To get the noun from the verb "admire", we add the suffix "_____".
a. ion b. al c. ation d. sion
- The two opponents played with great skill. "Opponents" means _____.
a. friends b. rivals c. colleagues d. winners

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

harmony - patience - customize - champion - reflect

In a quiet small country, a young boy dreamed of becoming a weightlifting champion. Every morning, he trained hard with ① _____. In the evenings, he liked to sit by the river and ② _____ on his day. He believed that true strength came from living in ③ _____ with others. One day, a famous coach saw him and admired his skills. Soon, the boy became a real ④ _____, loved by everyone in the country.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah was born in a small village in Egypt, in 1992. From a young age, he showed great interest in football. Salah spent hours practicing with a ball in the streets of his village.

By the time he joined El Mokawloon, he had already trained for many years with great dedication and patience. His hard work finally paid off when he signed with FC Basel in Switzerland—it was the start of his international journey.

Salah later played for Chelsea, Roma, and Liverpool, where he achieved incredible success. He scored record-breaking goals, won the Champions League, and was named one of the best footballers in the world.

Beyond football, Salah became a role model for millions. Egyptians call him "the humble star," because he never forgot where he came from.

Mohamed Salah's story teaches us that success comes from hard work, faith, and kindness. He had faced many challenges, but he never gave up—and that's why he remains a true Egyptian hero.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Before Salah joined FC Basel, he had played for
 a. Rome b. Chelsea c. El Mokawloon d. Liverpool
- Salah started his international journey as a footballer when he joined
 a. Liverpool b. FC Basel c. Chelsea d. El Mokawloon
- The text teaches us about
 a. luck and fame b. strength and money
 c. hard work and kindness d. poverty and diseases

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Where was Mohamed Salah born?

.....

5. How did Salah spend most of his free time?

.....

6. What record did Salah break at Liverpool?

.....

The Story**4 A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The story was written by
 a. Jules Verne b. Mark Twain
 c. Charles Dickens d. Robert Louse Stevenson
- Captain is the mysterious leader of the submarine.
 a. John b. Ahab c. Smith d. Nemo
- The submarine in the story is called the
 a. Seagull b. Nautilus c. Dolphin d. Ocean
- Ned Land was angry because he valued above all.
 a. the sea b. freedom c. the treasure d. knowledge

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Who is the main character in the story?

.....

6. What kind of animals do the crew see under the sea?

.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using words in brackets:

1. Nabil isn't using the mobile phone any more. (used to)

2. His favorite hobby is to write poetry. (enjoy)

3. The man who stole the money had brown hair. (whose)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ----- (Did I Use) you to watch cartoons when you were young?
2. The city ----- (when) we visited last summer is very old.
3. always avoid ----- (make) noise.

7 Finish the following dialog:

Ayman and Baher are talking about their favorite sports

Ayman : What's your favorite sport?

Baher : ① ----- . It's the most popular sport in Egypt.

Ayman : Do you like swimming?

Baher : ② ----- .

Ayman : ③ ----- ?

Baher : I really like Lebron James. He's the best basket player.

Ayman : Do you prefer team sports or individual sports?

Baher : ④ ----- . I enjoy working with others.

Ayman : ⑤ ----- ?

Baher : I usually play twice a week to stay healthy.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How you celebrate your birthday"

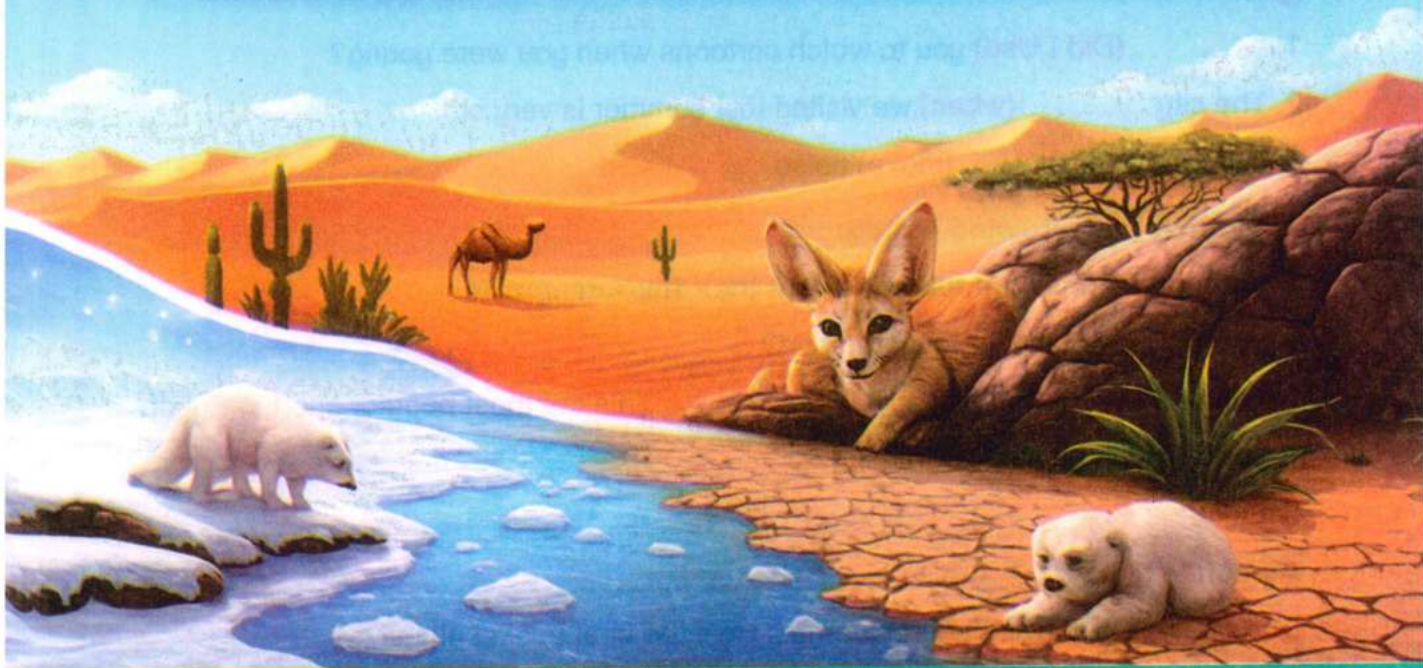
English

Unit

10

Animal

Adaptations



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Identify the main ideas and specific details in informational texts about desert and Arctic animals.

Listening:

- Recognize the gist of an interview with a wildlife expert.

Speaking:

- Participate in a role-play as a wildlife expert.
- Present information on animal adaptations using reported speech.

Language:

- Transform direct questions into reported speech.

Writing:

- Write a fact file about animals.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

harsh (adj.)	قاسٍ	migration (n.)	هجرة
adaptation (n.)	التكيف	disturbing (adj.)	مزعج
conservation (n.)	الحفاظ على / ترشيد	flexible (adj.)	مرن / سهل التكيف
predator (n.)	حيوان مفترس	remarkable (adj.)	ملحوظ / بارز
fascinated (adj.)	مفتون		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

master (n.)	أستاذ / بارع	migration patterns (n.)	أنماط الهجرة
freezing cold (n.)	البرد القارس	feeding habits (n.)	عادات التغذية
conditions (n.)	ظروف / أحوال	tracking devices (n.)	أجهزة تتبع
creatures (n.)	مخلوقات / كائنات	habitat (n.)	موطن
environment (n.)	بيئة	behavior (n.)	سلوك
prey (n.)	الفريسة	extreme (adj.)	شديد / قاسٍ / متطرف
thick fur (n.)	فراء سميك	tough (adj.)	قاسٍ
hearing (n.)	حاسة السمع	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز
insect (n.)	حشرة	scarce (adj.)	شحيح / نادر
shells (n.)	أصداف	current (adj.)	حالي / جاري
temperature (n.)	درجة الحرارة	challenging (adj.)	صعب
hump (n.)	بُسر	amazing (adj.)	مذهل
fat (n.)	الدهون	incredible (adj.)	رائع
eyelashes (n.)	رموش العين	create (v. d)	يخلق / يصنع
sand storms (n.)	عواصف رملية	locate (v. d)	يحدد موقع
wildlife (n.)	الحياة البرية	store (v. d)	يخزن
expert (n.)	خبير	observe (v. d)	يراقب / يرصد
field (n.)	مجال	disturb (v. ed)	يزعج

Unit 10 Animal Adaptations



Definitions

adaptations (n.)	التكيفات	changes that help living things ⁽¹⁾ survive in their environment
harsh (adj.)	قاس	rough or severe ⁽²⁾ (like very hot, cold, or tough conditions)
conservation (n.)	حفظ	protecting nature and natural resources ⁽³⁾
predators (n.)	حيوانات مفترسة	animals that hunt and eat other animals
fascinated (adj.)	مفتون	very interested in
migration (n.)	الهجرة	the movement ⁽⁴⁾ from one place to another.
disturbing (adj.)	مزعج	annoying ⁽⁵⁾ or interrupting
flexible (adj.)	مرن	able to change easily
remarkable (adj.)	بارز	amazing or extraordinary ⁽⁶⁾

١. الكائنات
٢. حاد
٣. الموارد
- الطبيعية
٤. التنقل
٥. مزعج
٦. خارق للعادة

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) adapted to + n./v. ing	متكيف أو متأقلم مع	focus on	يركز على
slow down + n.	يبطئ من	collect data	يجمع البيانات



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
harsh (adj.)	قاس	rough / severe		pleasant / mild	معتدل
fascinated (adj.)	مفتون	impressed		bored / indifferent	غير مهتم
predator (n.)	حيوان مفترس	hunter / attacker		prey / victim	فريسة
disturbing (adj.)	مزعج	annoying		comforting	مُطْمَئِن
flexible (adj.)	مرن	adaptable / adjustable		inflexible	غير مرن
conservation (n.)	حفظ	preservation		destruction	تدمير
extreme (adj.)	شديد	severe		mild	معتدل
thick (n.)	سميك	dense / heavy		thin / light	خفيف
adaptations (n.)	تكيفات	modifications / changes		—	—

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	adaptation
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	adapted
-ure	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	creature
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	challenging
in-	تحول الصفة إلى عكسها	incredible
-al	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	survival

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
sink	يغرق	sank	sunk



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 prevent + شخص + (from) + v. ing: يمنع شخصاً من

• يُستخدم الفعل (prevent) متبوعاً بمفعول به، ثم حرف الجر (from) ويمكن الاستغناء عنه، ثم (v. ing):

Ex. The camel's wide feet prevent it from sinking into sand.

Ex. Her injury prevented her competing last year.

• لاحظ أيضاً أن الفعل (prevent) يمكن أن يأتي متبوعاً باسم:

Ex. Seatbelts in cars often prevent serious injuries.

2 during + اسم

• تأتي كلمة (during) دائماً متبوعة باسم، وليس (v. ing). أما في وجود جملة كاملة أو (v. ing)، نستخدم قبله (while) وليس (during):

Ex. During the film, my mother fell asleep. (NOT: While the film)

Ex. While watching the film, my mother fell asleep. (NOT: During watching....)

(NOT: During I was waiting....)

3 lose / miss

• **lose (v. lost)** يفقد

• يُستخدم الفعل (**lose**) ليشير إلى عدم العثور على شيء أو أنه لم يعد موجوداً معك أو عندما تفشل في الفوز به:

Ex. I **lost** my phone yesterday. (NOT: I missed my phone.)

Ex. Our team **lost** the match.

Ex. She **lost** her way in the forest.

• **miss (v. ed)** يفتقد / يفوته موعد أو وسيلة مواصلات أو اجتماع

• يُستخدم الفعل (**miss**) ليشير إلى افتقاد شيء أو شخص والشعور بالحزن لعدم وجوده، أو عندما يفوتك موعد أو وسيلة مواصلات أو اجتماع... إلخ:

Ex. I **missed** the bus because I woke up late.

Ex. He **misses** his sister, who travelled abroad a month ago.

4 adapt to + noun: يتكيف أو يتأقلم مع

• عندما يستخدم التعبير (**adapt to**) بمعنى (يتكيف أو يتأقلم مع)، يليه اسم، وليس فعل في المصدر:

Ex. The child can't **adapt to** the long walk to school every day.

Ex. Polar bears are **adapted to** harsh winters.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The teacher prevented the students (**to talk**) during the exam.
2. The rain prevented us from (**to go**) to the park yesterday.
3. I met my best friend the (**while**) school trip.
4. Please, stay quiet (**during**) the teacher is explaining the lesson.
5. I can't adapt to (**live**) without having an internet connection.

Reading

SB Page (57)

SB Page (57)

استمع إلى النصوص

Masters⁽¹⁾ of Adaptation⁽²⁾

Life in the desert is **extremely**⁽³⁾ **challenging**⁽⁴⁾. Too much heat during the day and **freezing cold**⁽⁵⁾ at night create **harsh conditions**⁽⁶⁾ that would kill most animals. However, some amazing creatures have developed **incredible**⁽⁷⁾ adaptations to survive in these tough environments.

The fennec fox is perfectly **adapted to**⁽⁸⁾ desert life. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear **prey**⁽⁹⁾ moving underground. This small fox has **thick**⁽¹⁰⁾ fur on its feet to protect against hot sand and excellent **hearing**⁽¹¹⁾ to locate insects and small animals. During the hot day, it stays cool in underground holes.

Desert tortoises⁽¹²⁾ are masters of **water conservation**⁽¹³⁾. They can **store**⁽¹⁴⁾ water in their bodies for months and get water from the plants they eat. Their hard **shells**⁽¹⁵⁾ protect them from **predators**⁽¹⁶⁾ and **extreme temperatures**⁽¹⁷⁾. When food becomes **scarce**⁽¹⁸⁾, they can **slow down**⁽¹⁹⁾ their use of energy and survive without eating.

Camels are famous for their **survival skills**⁽²⁰⁾. They can drink huge amounts of water quickly and store it. Their humps contain fat which provides energy during long journeys. Their wide feet prevent them from sinking into sand, and their long **eyelashes**⁽²¹⁾ protect their eyes from sandstorms.



١. أساتذة
٢. التكيف
٣. للغاية
٤. صعب
٥. البرد القارس
٦. ظروف قاسية
٧. رائع
٨. متأقلم على
٩. فريسة
١٠. سميك
١١. سمع
١٢. السلاحف
١٣. الصحراوية
١٤. يخبئ
١٥. قواقع
١٦. حيوانات مفترسة
١٧. درجات الحرارة
١٨. شحيح
١٩. يبطئ من
٢٠. مهارات البقاء
٢١. رموش العين

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What makes desert life difficult for animals?
2. How do fennec foxes stay cool during the day?
3. What helps desert tortoises survive without food?
4. How can camels' eyelashes help them in the desert?

1. The desert has very hot days and very cold nights, which makes life hard for animals.
2. Fennec foxes stay cool by hiding in underground holes during the day.
3. Desert tortoises can slow down their energy use and live on stored water.
4. Camels' long eyelashes protect their eyes from sand and sandstorms.

Answers:



Audio Script

SB Page (60)

Recently, I interviewed Dr. Maha Ezzat, a researcher⁽¹⁾ who studies animal behavior⁽²⁾ in extreme environments. I began by asking what had made her interested in this field. She explained that she had always been fascinated⁽³⁾ by the ways animals solve survival problems. She added that when she was studying biology⁽⁴⁾, she had learned that animals are incredible problem-solvers and that they often develop solutions⁽⁵⁾ that humans are still trying to understand.

Next, I asked if she had ever researched Arctic animals⁽⁶⁾. Dr. Maha told me that her current⁽⁷⁾ research was about how Arctic animals were adapting to climate change⁽⁸⁾. She mentioned that some species⁽⁹⁾ were changing their migration patterns⁽¹⁰⁾ and feeding habits⁽¹¹⁾ much faster than scientists had expected. For example, she said that some seals were moving to new areas where the ice lasted⁽¹²⁾ longer.

Then, I asked how she and her team collected their data⁽¹³⁾. She explained that they used several methods, including attaching small tracking devices⁽¹⁴⁾ to animals to follow their movements. She

also said that they used hidden cameras to observe⁽¹⁵⁾ natural behavior without disturbing⁽¹⁶⁾ the animals.

Finally, I asked what the most surprising thing she had discovered was. Dr. Maha replied that animals were much more flexible⁽¹⁷⁾ than people had thought. She said they could change their behavior in just one generation when they needed to survive.

١. باحث
٢. سلوك
٣. منبهر
٤. علم الأحياء
٥. حلول
٦. حيوانات القطب الشمالي
٧. الحالي
٨. التغير المناخي
٩. سلالات
١٠. أنماط الهجرة
١١. عادات التغذية
١٢. استمر / دام
١٣. بيانات
١٤. أجهزة تتبع
١٥. يراقب / يرصد
١٦. يزعج
١٧. من

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ means protecting nature and natural resources.

- a. Conversation b. Conservation c. Civilization d. Observation

2. If something is _____, it's rough or severe.

- a. soft b. cool c. tasty d. harsh

3. If something is _____, it means it's amazing or extraordinary.

- a. remarkable b. comfortable c. acceptable d. available

4. _____ are animals that hunt and eat other animals.

- a. Projectors b. Contractors c. Predators d. Competitors

5. To be _____ by something is to be very interested in.

- a. fascinated b. located c. separated d. generated

Synonyms and antonyms

6. Animals develop incredible adaptations to survive. "Adaptations" means _____

- a. organizations b. modifications c. generations d. presentations

7. The desert has a harsh climate. "Harsh" is an antonym for _____

- a. rough b. severe c. kind d. pleasant

8. The child was fascinated by his new toy. "Fascinated" is a synonym for _____

- a. impressed b. adapted c. depressed d. arrested

9. Lions are strong predators. "Predators" is close in meaning to _____

- a. victims b. explorers c. hunters d. investors

10. The news was very disturbing. The antonym of "disturbing" is _____

- a. upsetting b. alarming c. depressing d. comforting

Prefixes and Suffixes

11. To get the noun from the verb "adapt", we add the _____ "ation"

- a. suffix b. prefix c. synonym d. antonym

12. To get the noun from the verb "survive", we add the suffix "_____".

- a. tion b. ful c. al d. able

13. To change the verb "challenge" into an adjective, we add the suffix "_____".

- a. ed b. ing c. or d. ive

14. To change the verb "create" into a noun, we add the suffix "_____".

- a. ure b. sion c. al d. ied

15. To get the opposite of the adjective "credible", we add the _____ "in".

- a. suffix b. synonym c. antonym d. prefix

Guess the meaning

16. The desert climate is incredibly _____, with hot days and freezing nights.

- a. scarce b. harsh c. efficient d. flexible

17. Water _____ is important to ensure enough supply for everyone.
a. conservation b. observation c. conversation d. reservation
18. The wolf is a skilled _____ that relies on its speed to catch its prey.
a. connector b. director c. predator d. detector
19. Birds begin their seasonal _____ in spring.
a. vacation b. migration c. narration d. relation
20. To succeed, you need to be _____ and ready to change strategies quickly.
a. visible b. terrible c. possible d. flexible
21. Our company offers excellent working _____ that make it a good place.
a. additions b. traditions c. conditions d. ambitions
22. The rabbit is a common _____ for the fox living in the forest.
a. prey b. day c. stay d. play
23. The fog was so _____ that drivers could hardly see the road ahead.
a. quick b. slick c. chic d. thick
24. This plant needs plenty of _____ in the soil to grow properly.
a. pressure b. moisture c. treasure d. pleasure
25. A camel's long _____ protect its eyes from blowing sand and dust.
a. splashes b. flashes c. eyelashes d. dashes
26. The camel is adapted _____ living in the desert.
a. to b. on c. with d. at
27. Drivers must _____ down speed near schools.
a. show b. blow c. slow d. grow
28. You should focus _____ your goals if you want to succeed.
a. in b. on c. at d. for
29. You can go to the public library to _____ data for your project.
a. detect b. connect c. correct d. collect
30. Please, leave your _____ address and phone number to the secretary.
a. current b. past c. former d. previous



Language

قواعد لغوية

Direct and Indirect Questions

الجمل الاستفهامية في المباشر وغير المباشر

1 Direct questions: الاستئلة في الكلام المباشر

• الأسئلة المباشرة هي نَص ما يقوله شخص عند سؤاله عن شيء ما، ويوضع كلامه بين علامتي اقتباس.

Ex. He asked, "Where is the library?"

Ex. She asked, "Do you like coffee?"

2 Indirect / Reported questions: الاستئلة المنقولة أو غير المباشرة

• وهو شكل السؤال عند نقله لشخص ثالث أو عند تحويله إلى غير المباشر.

Ex. He asked **where the library was**.

Ex. She asked **if/ whether I liked coffee**.

- ولتحويل سؤال من الشكل المباشر إلى الشكل غير المباشر أو المنقول، تتبع الخطوات التالية:

١. نبدأ بأحد أفعال القول التي تحل على الاستفهام، مثل:

asked / wondered / inquired / wanted to know

- لاحظ أن الفعل (**asked**) يمكن أن يأتي بعده مفعول به أو لا يأتي، أما باقي الأفعال السابقة فلا يأتي بعدها مفعول به مطلقاً.

٢. نحذف علامات الاقتباس.

٣. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام، نستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام.

٤. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة، نستخدم (**if / whether**).

٥. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ ب (**do / does / did**)، يتم حذفها.

٦. يتم تغيير زمن الفعل بتحويله إلى الشكل الماضي منه إذا كان فعل القول ماضي. (أما إذا كان فعل القول مضارع، لا يتغير زمن الفعل)

٧. يتم تحويل الضمائر وظروف الزمان والمكان حسب المعنى. (كما سبق شرحه بالوحدة السادسة)

٨. نحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة بدلاً منها.

Direct Questions	Indirect / Reported Questions
"What time does the train leave ?"	She asked what time the train left .
" Do you like ice cream?"	He asked if/whether I liked ice cream.
"Where are you going ?"	She asks where I am going .

Check your understanding ✓

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words between brackets:

1. She wanted to know (so) Ahmed was absent that day.
2. The teacher asked us (what) we had finished the quiz or not.
3. He asks his sister if she (like) her new phone.
4. Mother wanted to know (where) I was upset.

B Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He asked, "Do you speak English?" (He asked me)
.....
2. The teacher asked me if I had a red pen. ("Do.....?")
.....
3. The doctor asked me If I had taken my medicine on time. (Did.....?)
.....
4. The officer said to the boy, "Do you have a driving license?" (if)
.....

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. She asks her friend where she (live).
2. Basma wondered if I (am) coming to the festival.
3. Hatem wanted to know if Hisham (can) help him with the project.
4. I asked him when the report (be) done.
5. He asked me what I (think) of his presentation.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. He asked me where I (go) the previous weekend.
7. The teacher asked us (since) Ahmed was absent that day.
8. She asked (which) the movie had started.
9. My father asked me (what) I had seen his glasses.
10. The manager asked the worker (which) he was late for work.

11. She asked me if I (go) to the party that evening.
12. Ahmed asked Hana if she (finds) a new job.
13. The teacher asked him what the answer (be).
14. They (told) me if I had gone to the cinema the weekend before.
15. She asked her dad (so) she could use his laptop.
16. They wondered (what) I had done my homework the night before or not.
17. I asked the teacher if I (can) use a dictionary during the exam.
18. The teacher asked us (why) we had understood the lesson.
19. I wondered (what) the tourist came from.
20. The manager asked him (which) he had arrived in the office that day?

2 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

SB Exercises

1. "How do Arctic foxes survive in their habitats?" (The student asked...)
2. "Do penguins migrate south?" (She wanted to know...)
3. "How do camels store water?" (He asked...)
4. "Can polar bears swim long distances?" (They wondered...)
5. "Why do some animals hibernate?" (The teacher asked...)

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. "What time does the meeting start?" (He asked...)
7. "Do you have a car?" (She asked me...)
8. "Are you enjoying the party?" (I asked her...)
9. "Have you done your homework." (My father asked me...)
10. Why did you leave the party early?" (They wondered...)
11. "Do you speak French?" (The tourist asked...)
12. "Have you visited your grandmother today?" (Father asked me...)

13. "Where did you put the keys?" (She asked him...)
14. "Can you help me carry this box?" (My brother asked)
15. "Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum?" (The tourist asked)

Speaking

Ask and answer about "How animals adapt to survive in their environments."

• اسأل وأجب على الأسئلة عن "كيف تتكيف الحيوانات من أجل البقاء في بيئاتها":

Question

1. How do animals survive in harsh environments?

كيف تعيش الحيوانات في البيئات القاسية؟

2. How do camels survive in the hot desert?

كيف تعيش الإبل في الصحراء الحارة؟

3. How do polar bears survive the extreme cold?

كيف تنجو الدببة القطبية من البرد القارس؟

4. How do fish survive under water?

كيف تعيش الأسماك تحت الماء؟

5. What do birds do when the weather is extremely cold?

ماذا تفعل الطيور عندما يكون الطقس شديد البرودة؟

6. What about frogs? What do they do?

ماذا عن الضفادع؟ ماذا تفعل

7. What do other animals do to survive their extreme environments?

ماذا تفعل الحيوانات الأخرى للبقاء على قيد الحياة في بيئاتها القاسية؟

Answer

1. They make a lot of adaptations to survive. تقوم بعمل تكيفات كثيرة للبقاء.

2. Camels store fat in their humps to get energy and can go for days without water.

- تقوم الإبل بتخزين الدهون في سنامها للحصول على الطاقة، ويمكنها البقاء لأيام دون ماء.

3. They have very thick fur to keep warm in very cold weather.

- لديها فراء كثيف جدًا للتدفئة في الطقس البارد جدًا.

4. Fish use their gills to breathe under water.

- تستخدم الأسماك خياشيمها للتنفس تحت الماء.

5. Birds migrate to warmer places for food and warmth.

- تهاجر الطيور إلى أماكن أكثر دفئًا بحثًا عن الطعام والدفء.

6. Frogs can jump quickly and hide in water or grass.

- تستطيع الضفادع القفز بسرعة والاختباء في الماء أو العشب.

7. Some animals change colour to hide from predators or to catch their prey easily.

- تغير بعض الحيوانات ألوانها للاختباء من الحيوانات المفترسة أو لاصطياد فرائسها بسهولة.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

A teacher and a student are talking about animals' adaptations

Teacher : Today we'll talk about how animals adapt to their environments.

Student : Excuse me sir. ① _____?

Teacher : Adapt means to change in order to survive.

Student : That's interesting! ② _____?

Teacher : A camel stores fat in its hump to get energy.

Student : Some animals hide in holes to escape extreme temperatures.

Teacher : ③ _____.

Student : What about birds, sir? What do they do?

Teacher : ④ _____.

Student : What time of the year do birds migrate?

Teacher : ⑤ _____.

Student : Thank you very much, sir. It's a wonderful lesson.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

disturbing - survive - remarkable - adaptation - fascinated

Every spring, I watch birds flying north. Their migration is a ① _____ journey! I'm ② _____ by how they travel so far. But last week, I saw a bird with a broken wing. It was ③ _____ to see it struggling. Birds are flexible enough to find new ways to ④ _____. This makes me love nature even more.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If something is _____, it means it's annoying or interrupting.
a. existing b. disturbing c. returning d. discussing
- To be _____ is to be able to change easily.
a. flexible b. possible c. durable d. affordable
- _____ are the changes that help living things survive in their environment.
a. Relaxations b. Installations c. Adaptations d. Applications
- To handle the _____ pressures of the deep sea, divers wear special suits.
a. dream b. extreme c. stream d. cream
- Please _____ how I solve this math problem to learn.
a. observe b. decide c. disturb d. last

Unit 10 Animal Adaptations

6. The forest is the natural _____ of wild animals.
a. habitat b. format c. climate d. limit
7. The driver used GPS to _____ the nearest gas station.
a. narrate b. relate c. locate d. rotate
8. A camel's hump and flat feet are _____ for desert life.
a. invitations b. adaptations c. relations d. situations
9. If you have a problem with your laptop, try to ask a/an _____.
a. student b. nomad c. groom d. expert
10. The children used old boxes to _____ a fantastic castle.
a. buy b. create c. dig d. admire

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The teacher wanted to know if we _____ (finish) the project the day before.
2. The teacher asked her why she _____ (not bring) her books.
3. My mom _____ (told) me if I had seen Ali at the mall.
4. The boss asked the secretary if she _____ (send) the email.
5. The doctor asked me what was wrong with _____ (I).

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How animals survive in their extreme environments"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. How do camels survive in the hot desert?
2. Why does the fennec fox have large ears?
3. How do polar bears stay warm in the Arctic?
4. What helps fish survive in the deep sea?



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

strength (n.)	قُوَّة	thick (adj.)	سميك
warmth (n.)	دِفْء	hide (v. hid - hidden)	يخفي/ يختفي
camouflage (n. / v. d)	تمويه/ تخفي - يخفي	demonstrate (v. d)	يعرض/ يوضح
miles (n.)	أميال		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

survival (n.)	البقاء	the Arctic (n.)	القطب الشمالي
wilds (n.)	بَراري	arctic / Arctic (adj.)	شديد البرودة/ قطبي شمالي
paws (n.)	مخالب	icy (adj.)	جليدي/ بارد جدا
snowshoes (n.)	أحذية الثلج	polar (adj.)	قطبي (شمالي أو جنوبي)
hunter (n.)	صيَّاد	perfect (adj.)	تام/ مثالي
loss (n.)	فقدان	seasonal (adj.)	موسمي
vegetation (n.)	نباتات	freezing (adj.)	شديد البرودة
male (n.)	ذُكْر/ مُذَكَّر	gather (v. ed)	يتجمع
emperor penguins (n.)	البطريق القطبي	absorb (v. ed)	يمتص
hatching (n.)	فقس البيض	provide (v. d)	يوفر/ يتيح
total darkness (n.)	ظلام دامس	drop (v. ped)	ينخفض/ يُسْقَط/ يُسْقِط
feathers (n.)	ريش	reduce (v. d)	يقلل من/ ينخفض



Definitions

thick (adj.)	سميك	having a large distance ⁽¹⁾ from one surface to the opposite surface ⁽²⁾ .	١. مسافة ٢. السطح المقابل ٣. يلائم ٤. الأشياء المحيطة ٥. قياس ٦. إثبات ٧. دليل
camouflage (n.)	تمويه	when the color of an animal matches ⁽³⁾ the things around ⁽⁴⁾ to make it difficult to see.	
mile (n.)	ميل	a unit for measuring ⁽⁵⁾ distances.	
demonstrate (v. d)	يوضح	to show something clearly by giving proof ⁽⁶⁾ or evidence ⁽⁷⁾ .	
warmth (n.)	دِفْء	the state or quality of being warm, rather than hot or cold.	

Expressions & Prepositions

provide camouflage against	يوفر التمويه ضد	run a marathon	يجري في سباق
turn + color	يتحول إلى اللون....	miles away	على بُعد أميال
mix with	يمتزج مع	close to	على مقربة من
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	takes a lot of strength	يتطلب الكثير من القوة
		solve a problem	يحل مشكلة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
camouflage (n.)	تمويه	disguise / hiding		showing	الظهور
demonstrate (v.)	يوضح	explain / show		hide / conceal	يخفي
thick (adj.)	سميك	fat / heavy		thin / light	خفيف
strength (n.)	قوة	power / muscle		weakness	ضعف
Arctic (adj.)	قطبي بارد جدا	icy / freezing		very hot	شديد الحرارة
seasonal (adj.)	موسمي	temporary		permanent	دائم
absorb (v. ed)	يمتص	take in		release	ينبعث منه
survival (n.)	البقاء	staying alive		death / end	موت
gather (v.)	يتجمع	collect / meet		spread	يتفرق

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
im-	تأتي بعكس الصفة	impossible
-al	تأتي بالصفة من الاسم	seasonal
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	icy
-ar	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	polar
-th	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	warmth

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
smell	يشم/ يصدر رائحة	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
stand	يقف	stood	stood



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 arctic / Arctic / polar (adj.)

arctic (adj.) شديد البرودة

• تُستخدم الصفة (arctic) لوصف شيء أو جو (قُطبي) شديد البرودة:

Ex. The weather at Christmas was arctic.

Arctic / arctic (adj.)

قُطبي شمالي / يعيش في القطب الشمالي

• تُستخدم الصفة (Arctic) (لوصف شيء) ينتمي لـ أو يعيش في القطب الشمالي، ويمكن استخدام (arctic) أيضا في هذا السياق:

Ex. The Arctic fox has white fur in winter.

Ex. I wonder how arctic animals survive in the extreme cold.

• لاحظ أن كلمة (The Arctic) هي إسم بمعنى (القطب الشمالي كمكان):

Ex. The Arctic is one of Earth's most extreme environments.

polar (adj.) قُطبي شمالي أو جنوبي

• تُستخدم الصفة (polar) لوصف شيء يخص أو ينتمي لـ أو يعيش في أحد القطبين دون تحديد:

Ex. Polar bears live in the North Pole.

2 hunter / fisherman (n.) صياد

• رغم أن الكلمتين تستخدمان بنفس المعنى، (صياد)، إلا أنهما مختلفتين في الاستخدام. فنستخدم كلمة (hunter) عند الإشارة إلى الصياد البري الذي يطارد الحيوانات ويصطادها، بينما نستخدم كلمة (fisherman) عند الإشارة لصياد السمك:

Ex. The fisherman cast his net at dawn.

Ex. A hunter uses a bow and arrows.

3 turn + صفة تدل على اللون أو الحالة

• يمكن استخدام الفعل (turn) متبوعا بصفة تدل على لون أو حالة سلبية، ويكون معناه في هذا السياق (يتحول إلى):

Ex. The sky turned pink at sunset.

Ex. The milk turned sour in the heat.

4 allow + مفعول به + to -inf.

• يستخدم الفعل (allow) متبوعا بمفعول به ثم فعل في المصدر مسبوqa بـ (to)،

ومعناه (يسمح لـ.. أن / يتيح لـ.. أن):

Ex. My father didn't allow me to drive his car.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The _____ winds made the temperature drop to -30°C .
a. organic b. arctic c. artistic d. phonic
- Polar bears live in the _____ region where ice covers the sea most of the year.
a. Trick b. Atlantic c. Stick d. Arctic
- The _____ bear can swim long distances in cold water to find food.
a. polar b. solar c. molar d. collar
- The leaves on trees _____ yellow when autumn comes.
a. learn b. burn c. turn d. earn
- The teacher didn't _____ students to leave early.
a. swallow b. follow c. borrow d. allow

Reading

SB Page (63)

SB Page (63)

Surviving the Frozen North

The Arctic⁽¹⁾ is one of Earth's most extreme⁽²⁾ environments. With temperatures⁽³⁾ dropping⁽⁴⁾ to -40°C and months of total darkness⁽⁵⁾. However, many remarkable animals can survive in these icy wilds. Polar bears⁽⁶⁾ are the best at surviving in the Arctic. Their thick⁽⁷⁾, white fur provides excellent warmth⁽⁸⁾ and perfect camouflage⁽⁹⁾ against snow. Under their fur, black skin absorbs⁽¹⁰⁾ heat from the sun. Large paws⁽¹¹⁾ work like snowshoes, to walk on thin ice. These powerful hunters⁽¹²⁾ can smell seals from miles away⁽¹³⁾.

Arctic foxes demonstrate⁽¹⁴⁾ amazing seasonal⁽¹⁵⁾ adaptations. In winter, their fur turns⁽¹⁶⁾ completely white and becomes much thicker for warmth. During summer, it changes to brown or gray to mix with⁽¹⁷⁾ rocks and vegetation⁽¹⁸⁾.

Male emperor penguins⁽¹⁹⁾ stand on on ice for months, protecting their eggs before hatching⁽²⁰⁾ in freezing winds. They gather to take turns⁽²¹⁾ moving to the warm center. Their thick feathers⁽²²⁾ create natural warmth for them.

استمع إلى النص



١. القطب الشمالي
٢. شديد / قاس
٣. درجات الحرارة
٤. تنخفض
٥. ظلام دامس
٦. الدببة القطبية
٧. سميك
٨. دفئ
٩. تمويه / تخفي
١٠. يمتص
١١. مخالب
١٢. صيادون
١٣. على بُعد أميال
١٤. يُظهر
١٥. موسمي
١٦. يتحول إلى
١٧. يمتزج بـ
١٨. النباتات
١٩. ذكور البجع القطبي
٢٠. الفقس
٢١. يتناوب الأدوار
٢٢. ريش سميك

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

Answer the following questions:

1. Why do polar bears have black skin under their white fur?
2. How does the Arctic fox stay warm in winter?
3. What do emperor penguins stand on ice for months?

- Answers:
1. Because the black skin helps absorb heat from the sun and keeps them warm.
 2. Its fur becomes thicker and white, which keeps it warm and helps it hide in the snow.
 3. They stand on ice for months to protect their eggs before hatching.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ occurs when the color of an animal matches the things around.
a. Colleague c. Camouflage e. Companion d. Champion
2. A _____ is a unit for measuring distances.
a. mile b. kilogram c. dollar d. liter
3. To _____ something is to show it clearly by giving proof or evidence.
a. understand b. disappear c. demonstrate d. recycle
4. _____ is the quality of being physically strong.
a. Length b. Strength c. Health d. Warmth
5. _____ is the state or quality of being warm, rather than hot or cold.
a. Warmth b. Weakness c. Adaptation d. Migration

Synonyms and antonyms

6. The ice on the lake was very thick. "Thick" is closest in meaning to _____.
a. warm b. light c. dense d. cold
7. Wheat is a seasonal crop. The opposite of "seasonal" is _____.
a. permanent b. temporary c. periodic d. remarkable
8. Water is important for our survival. "Survival" is an antonym for _____.
a. existence b. continuation c. death d. economy

9. The children gathered in the garden to play a game. "Gathered" means
- a. slept b. met c. hid d. ran

Prefixes and suffixes

10. To get the opposite of the adjective "possible, we add the prefix ".....".
- a. in b. ir c. un d. im
11. To get the adjective from the noun "season", we add the suffix ".....".
- a. al b. on c. or d. ed
12. To get the adjective from the noun "ice", we add the suffix ".....".
- a. ed b. y c. on d. th
13. We add the "....." "ar" to the noun "pole" to get the adjective from it.
- a. prefix b. antonym c. synonym d. suffix
14. We add the "....." "th" to the adjective "warm" to get the noun from it.
- a. suffix b. antonym c. synonym d. prefix

Guess the meaning

15. The soldier's uniform allowed him to in the forest.
- a. lose b. hide c. explain d. decide
16. The school is five from my house.
- a. countries b. environments c. temperatures d. miles
17. The teacher will how to solve the problem.
- a. demonstrate b. survive c. drop d. concentrate
18. Running a marathon takes a lot of
- a. bravery b. fear c. strength d. weakness
19. The forest is so that little sunlight gets through.
- a. funny b. light c. rainy d. thick
20. The temperature can quickly at night in the mountains.
- a. chop b. stop c. drop d. hop
21. The soldier used leaves and branches as a natural to hide from the enemy.
- a. massage b. camouflage c. storage d. knowledge
22. Polar bears live in the cold regions of the world.
- a. Artistic b. Arctic c. Automatic d. Atlantic

23. It is _____ outside, so you need to wear a very thick coat.
 a. freezing b. pleasing c. teasing d. breathing
24. They explored most of the _____ of the Amazon jungle during their trip.
 a. guides b. fields c. wilds d. crops
25. The total _____ of the package was recorded as 15 kilograms.
 a. height b. weight c. fight d. light
26. To walk on the deep snow, you'll need a pair of _____.
 a. eyelashes b. raincoats c. notebooks d. snowshoes
27. The amount of green _____ is very limited in the desert climate.
 a. education b. donation c. vegetation d. celebration
28. Apples are a _____ fruit; they only grow in the autumn.
 a. seasonal b. reasonable c. regional d. personal
29. The scientist tried to _____ the problem by using new methods.
 a. save b. serve c. make d. solve
30. The frog can _____ green to hide in the grass.
 a. burn b. turn c. learn d. earn
31. The chameleon changed its skin to mix _____ the leaves of the plant.
 a. with b. to c. in d. for
32. The teacher asked the students to _____ turns answering the questions.
 a. bake b. make c. take d. shake
33. Running a marathon _____ a lot of strength and patience.
 a. takes b. makes c. gets d. has

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wonderful - drop - vegetation - survival - camouflage

In the Arctic wilds, temperatures can ① _____ to freezing levels, making ② _____ very hard. Animals like the polar bears have ③ _____ ways to stay alive. Their thick fur gives warmth and ④ _____ in the snow. Life in these icy lands is tough, but nature always finds a way to survive.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

habitat (n.)	موطن	conservation (n.)	حماية
size (n.)	حجم	features (n.)	خصائص
diet (n.)	نظام غذائي	hibernation (n.)	البيات الشتوي
status (n.)	حالة		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

migration (n.)	الهجرة	climate (n.)	المناخ
fat (n.)	الدهون	boots (n.)	أحذية برقبة طويلة
thick fur (n.)	فراء سميك	hearing (n.)	حاسة السمع
exhibit (n. / v. ed)	مُعرَض / يُعرَض	rocky cliffs (n.)	منحدرات صخرية
hair (n.)	شعر	adaptations (n.)	التكيفات
seal (n.)	الفقمة (حيوان بحري)	endangered (adj.)	معرض للخطر أو الانقراض
season (n.)	موسم	keen (adj.)	حاد / قوي
nature (n.)	الطبيعة	hollow (adj.)	أجوف
feet (n.) / foot	أقدام / قدم	extra (adj.)	إضافي / زائد
survivor (n.)	ناجٍ / باق	fluffy (adj.)	رقيق
snow leopards (n.)	نمور الثلج	plus (prep.)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
mountain goats (n.)	الماعز الجبلي	detect (v. ed)	يكشف / يكتشف
physical description (n.)	الوصف الجسدي	reflect (v. ed)	يعكس
dark spots (n.)	بقع داكنة	balance (v. d)	يوازن / يتوازن

Expressions & Prepositions

Showing surprise	التعبير عن الدهشة	Explaining adaptations	شرح أساليب التأقلم
Really?	حقاً؟	It helps them...	تساعدهم أن ...
That's amazing! / incredible!	هذا مذهل / رائع	This allows them to...	يتيح لهم أن ..
I had no idea!	لم أكن أعرف	The reason is...	السبب هو أن ...
Wow, I didn't know that!	يا إلهي! لم أعرف ذلك	That's because...	هذا لأن / بسبب
That's so cool!	هذا رائع	It's like...	هذا مثل
That makes sense	هذا منطقي	Exactly!	بالضبط!
Asking for explanation	طلب التفسير	sense of smell	حاسة الشم
Why do they...?	لماذا ؟	seven times stronger	أقوى بسبع مرات

How do they...?	كيف؟	(be) covered in	مُغطًى بـ
I wonder why...	أنا أتساءل لماذا...؟	as low as	يصل انخفاضه إلى
What's the purpose of...?	ما الغرض من...؟	dive that far	يغوص إلى هذا الحد
at heights up to	على ارتفاعات تصل إلى		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
hibernation (n.)	سبات	sleep		activity	نشاط
exhibit (n.)	معرض	display / show		hiding / covering	إخفاء
survivor (n.)	ناجٍ	escapee		victim	ضحية
keen (adj.)	قوي	sharp		weak	ضعيف
hollow (adj.)	أجوف	empty / vacant		full / packed	ممتلئ
extra (adj.)	إضافي	spare / additional		main / essential	أساسي
detect (v.)	يكشف	find / notice		overlook / ignore	يتجاهل
store (v.)	يخزن	keep / save		use / spend	ينفق

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-or	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	surviv <u>or</u>
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	fluff <u>y</u>

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
grow	ينمو / يزداد	grew	grown
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
dive	يغوص	dived / dove	dived

Reading

SB Page (67)

SB Page (67)

استمع إلى النص



Amazing Adaptations of Polar Bears

Hadeer : Look at this polar bear **exhibit**⁽¹⁾! It's amazing how big they are.

Mona : Yeah, and did you know their fur isn't **actually**⁽²⁾ white? Each hair is **hollow**⁽³⁾ and **reflects**⁽⁴⁾ light.

Hadeer : Really? **That's so cool**⁽⁵⁾! I wonder why they **adapted**⁽⁶⁾ that way.

Mona : Well, it helps them hide in snow and ice when they're hunting **seals**⁽⁷⁾. **Plus**⁽⁸⁾, the hollow hairs keep air for **extra**⁽⁹⁾ warmth.

Hadeer : **That makes sense**⁽¹⁰⁾. What about their paws? They look **huge**⁽¹¹⁾.

Mona : Those big paws help them walk on thin ice without **falling**⁽¹²⁾ through. It's like wearing snowshoes.

Hadeer : **Nature**⁽¹³⁾ is incredible! I read that they can **smell** **seals**⁽¹⁴⁾ from really **far away**⁽¹⁵⁾ too.

Mona : Exactly! Their **sense of smell**⁽¹⁶⁾ is about seven times stronger than a dog's. They can **detect**⁽¹⁷⁾ seals under three feet of snow.

Hadeer : **I had no idea**⁽¹⁸⁾ polar bears were such amazing **survivors**⁽¹⁹⁾.

١. معرض
٢. في الواقع
٣. أجوف
٤. يعكس
٥. هذا رائع
٦. تأقلم
٧. الفخمة
٨. علاوة على ذلك
٩. إضافي
١٠. هذا منطقي
١١. ضخم
١٢. السقوط
١٣. الطبيعة
١٤. يشم رائحة الفخمة
١٥. بعيد
١٦. حاسة الشم
١٧. يكتشف
١٨. لم أعلم أن
١٩. الناجون

Reading Skill

Answer the following questions:

مهارات القراءة

1. Why isn't the polar bear's fur actually white?
2. How do polar bears use their fur to stay warm?
3. Why are polar bears' paws so big?
4. How strong is a polar bear's sense of smell?

1. Because each hair is hollow and reflects light.
2. The hollow hairs keep air inside for extra warmth.
3. Their big paws help them walk on thin ice without falling.
4. It's about seven times stronger than a dog's, so they can smell seals under snow.

Answers:



SB Page (68)

Mona : Look at this Arctic fox **exhibit**! It's amazing how small and **fluffy**⁽¹⁾ it is.

Hadeer : Yeah, did you know that its fur changes color with the **seasons**⁽²⁾? In winter, it turns white to blend in with the snow.

Mona : **Really**? That's so cool! What happens in summer?

Hadeer : In summer, its fur turns brown or gray, so it can hide **among**⁽³⁾ the rocks and plants.

Mona : **Wow**! What about its paws? They look **covered** **in**⁽⁴⁾ fur.

Hadeer : The thick fur on their paws works like **warm boots**⁽⁵⁾. It helps them walk on snow and ice without freezing.

Mona : **Nature**⁽⁶⁾ is incredible! I read that Arctic foxes can survive in temperatures as low as -50°C .

Hadeer : **Exactly**! Their **keen hearing**⁽⁷⁾ also helps them find small animals under the snow.

١. رقيق
٢. مواسم
٣. بين
٤. مغطى بـ
٥. أخذية دافئة
٦. الطبيعة
٧. حاسة السمع الحادة



Writing a fact file

كتابة ملف الحقائق

A Fact file is a short report that gives important information about a topic—like an animal, a place, a person, or a machine—in a clear and organized way.

ملف الحقائق هو تقرير قصير يقدم معلومات مهمة حول موضوع ما - مثل حيوان أو مكان أو شخص أو آلة - بطريقة واضحة ومنظمة. ولكتابة ملف حقائق، اتبع الخطوات التالية:

• Start with a title.

ابدأ بعنوان

• Use sections: - physical description, habitat, ...

قسمه إلى أقسام: - وصف جسدي، موطن، إلخ.

• Write short notes

اكتب ملحوظات قصيرة

• include interesting facts

ضمّن حقائق شيقة

• keep the language simple

استخدم لغة بسيطة

• add a picture

أضف صورة



A model fact file

The snow leopard SB Page 69

Physical Description: (size, color, features)

• Snow leopards are large cats with thick, gray fur covered in **dark spots**⁽¹⁾.

• They have long **tails**⁽²⁾ and powerful legs.

١. بقع داكنة
٢. ذيول

Unit 10 Animal Adaptations

Habitat: (place, climate)

- They live in **mountain regions**⁽³⁾ of Central Asia, **at heights up to**⁽⁴⁾ 18.000 feet.

Adaptations: (For temperature, food, protection)

- Their wide paws work like snowshoes.
- Thick fur keeps them warm.
- Long tails help them **balance**⁽⁵⁾ on rocky cliffs.

Diet:

- They hunt wild sheep, goats, and smaller animals.

Conservation Status⁽⁶⁾:

- **Endangered**⁽⁷⁾ - only about 4,000 left in the wild.

٣. مناطق جبلية
٤. على ارتفاعات تصل إلى
٥. يتوازن
٦. حالة الحفظ
٧. مهدد بالانقراض



Writing Task

A fact file about the Arctic wolf SB Page 70

A fact file planning sheet about the Arctic wolf:

Animal	The Arctic wolf
Physical Description	Size: About 1.5 meters long. Weight: weighs around 35 to 45 kilograms. Color: White or creamy white. Special Features: • Thick fur that keeps it warm in freezing weather. • Short ears and nose to reduce heat loss. • Strong legs for walking and running on snow.
Habitat	Where it lives: In the Arctic regions of North America and Greenland. Climate: Very cold, snowy, and windy.
Adaptations	For climate: Thick fur to stay warm and survive freezing temperatures For finding food: Travels to hunt For protection: Lives and hunts in groups to stay safe from larger predators Diet: Mostly meat Interesting facts: • Arctic wolves can live in places where no trees grow. • They can go for many days without food. • Their white fur helps them blend in with the snow for hunting and safety.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

- Bears go into hibernation during the winter. "Hibernation" is a synonym for
a. activity b. awareness c. alertness d. sleep
- The museum has an exhibit about space. The word "exhibit" here means
a. display b. hiding c. coverage d. burying
- She was the only survivor of the crash. The opposite of "survivor" is
a. escapee b. trainer c. victim d. explorer
- She has a keen interest in learning languages. "Keen" is an antonym for
a. strong b. weak c. sharp d. rich
- The bird made its nest inside a hollow tree. The word "hollow" means
a. empty b. full c. packed d. crowded

Prefixes and suffixes

- To get a noun from the verb "survive", we add the suffix ".....".
a. er b. ed c. or d. in
- To get an adjective from the noun "fluff", we add the suffix ".....".
a. al b. y c. or d. er

Guess the meaning

- In winter, the polar bear enters a deep state of to conserve its energy.
a. hibernation b. generation c. civilization d. organization
- The destruction of forests threatens the many animals' natural
a. acrobat b. habit c. habitat d. hobby
- The blue whale is the largest animal in the world in
a. prize b. size c. rise d. puzzle
- The polar bear's thick fur and fat are great for cold weather.
a. decorations b. imaginations c. creations d. adaptations
- A newly born baby's mainly consists of its mother's natural milk.
a. exhibit b. seal c. diet d. boot
- The of the endangered species improved after protection.
a. status b. device c. mattress d. practice
- projects help protect forests and wild animals.
a. Decoration b. Conservation c. Celebration d. Conversation

15. A giraffe's long neck and legs are special _____ that help it reach tall trees.
a. creatures b. features c. pleasures d. measures
16. The zoo guide gave a short _____ of each animal before the tour.
a. description b. prescription c. restriction d. subscription
17. The yearly bird _____ to warmer countries happens every winter.
a. conversation b. information c. migration d. observation
18. The whale has a thick layer of _____ under the skin to keep it warm in cold water.
a. rat b. fat c. hat d. cat
19. The fennec fox's _____ keeps it warm during the snowy winter months.
a. giant paw b. big hump c. heavy cloth d. thick fur
20. The museum's new _____ shows old dinosaur bones.
a. exhibit b. puppet c. habitat d. limit
21. Each _____ on a polar bear's fur helps reflect sunlight.
a. fat b. hump c. hair d. paw
22. The zookeeper is giving a fish to the large grey _____ in the pool.
a. goat b. bear c. camel d. seal
23. Summer is my favorite _____ because the weather is warm and sunny.
a. reason b. season c. treason d. lesson
24. I love to walk in the forest and enjoy the beauty of _____.
a. feature b. future c. nature d. culture
25. The fox's furry _____ protect it from the cold snow.
a. seat b. heat c. meat d. feet
26. After the earthquake, a young girl was the only _____ of her family.
a. survivor b. driver c. diver d. observer
27. That _____ sense. Most desert animals rest during the hot day.
a. does b. gets c. makes d. builds
28. Polar bears live at heights _____ 2,000 meters in the Arctic.
a. from to b. up to c. up with d. on to
29. Polar bears' paws are wide. It's _____ wearing snowshoes.
a. like b. because c. so d. although
30. That's _____.! You made this castle from ice?
a. interested b. growing c. amazed d. amazing
31. Camels walk easily on soft sand. - That's _____ they have wide feet.
a. although b. because c. however d. so

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Ben and Ali are talking about camels

Ben : I wonder how camels live in the extreme desert.

Ali : They have several amazing adaptations.

Ben : How do they live so long without food?

Ali : ①

Ben : ②?

Ali : They have wide feet that stop them from sinking into sand.

Ben : ③?

Ali : Their long eyelashes protect their eyes from sand.

Ben : Ali: Wow, I didn't know that!

Ali : They are also very important for desert people.

Ben : Why are they important for desert people?

Ali : ④

Ben : What do people call them?

Ali : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bear sleeps in a tree trunk.

- a. shallow b. hollow c. yellow d. fellow

2. I brought a/an jacket in case it gets cold.

- a. light b. thin c. deep b. extra

3. The rabbit looks so and soft! Let me touch its fur.

- a. fluffy b. icy c. noisy d. scary

4. The fox has white fur., it sleeps during cold winter months.

- a. Minus b. Extra c. Plus d. Addition

5. Dogs can smells from far away.

- a. protect b. detect c. collect d. reflect

6. The clear water of the lake the bright light of the sun.

- a. reflected b. affected c. directed d. selected

7. Tight rope walkers must their bodies carefully, or they fall down.

- a. challenge b. manage c. balance d. enhance

Unit 10 Animal Adaptations

8. Eagles have very eyesight for catching prey.
a. mean b. seen c. weak d. keen
9. Pandas are because they lose their homes.
a. admired b. endangered c. enlarged d. engaged
10. The fox's sharp helps it find prey.
a. hearing b. eating c. speaking d. touching

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

hibernation - boots - endangered - physical - climate

The snow leopard has a unique ① description, with gray fur and dark spots that blend with rocky cliffs. It lives in a cold mountain ②, where its thick fur and strong paws act like warm ③ Its sharp hearing helps it hunt prey. Conservation efforts protect this ④ animal.

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Mountain goats."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. Describe the physical features of mountain goats.
2. What's the natural habitat of mountain goats?
3. What adaptations do mountain goats make to survive?
4. What are some interesting facts about mountain goats?

Review on Unit 10

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

adaptation (n.)	التكيف	status (n.)	حالة
conservation (n.)	الحفاظ على / ترشيد	conservation (n.)	حماية
predator (n.)	حيوان مفترس	features (n.)	خصائص
migration (n.)	هجرة	hibernation (n.)	البيات الشتوي
strength (n.)	قوة	harsh (adj.)	قاسي
warmth (n.)	دفء	fascinated (adj.)	مفتون
camouflage (n. / v. d)	تمويه / تخفي - يخفي	disturbing (adj.)	مزعج
miles (n.)	أميال	flexible (adj.)	مرن / سهل التكيف
habitat (n.)	موطن	remarkable (adj.)	ملحوظ / بارز
size (n.)	حجم	thick (adj.)	سميك
adaptations (n.)	تكيفات	hide (v. hid - hidden)	يخفي / يختفي
diet (n.)	نظام غذائي	demonstrate (v. d)	يعرض / يوضح



Language

قواعد لغوية

Direct and Indirect Questions

الجملة الاستفهامية في المباشر وغير المباشر

1 Direct questions: الأسئلة في الكلام المباشر

• الأسئلة المباشرة هي نَص ما يقوله شخص عند سؤاله عن شيء ما، ويوضع كلامه بين علامتي اقتباس.

Ex. He asked, "What is the time?"

Ex. She asked, "Did you see the accident?"

2 Indirect / Reported questions: الأسئلة المنقولة أو غير المباشرة

• وهو شكل السؤال عند نقله لشخص ثالث أو عند تحويله إلى غير المباشر.

Ex. He asked **what the time was**.

Ex. She asked **if/ whether I saw/ had seen the accident**.

- ولتحويل سؤال من الشكل المباشر إلى الشكل غير المباشر أو المنقول، نتبع الخطوات التالية:

١. نبدأ بأحد أفعال القول التي تدل على الاستفهام، مثل:

asked / wondered / inquired / wanted to know

- لاحظ أن الفعل (**asked**) يمكن أن يأتي بعده مفعول به أو لا يأتي، أما باقي الأفعال السابقة فلا يأتي بعدها مفعول به مطلقاً.

٢. نحذف علامات الاقتباس.

٣. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام، نستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام.

٤. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة، نستخدم (**if / whether**).

٥. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ ب (**do / does / did**)، يتم حذفها.

٦. يتم تغيير زمن الفعل بتحويله إلى الشكل الماضي منه إذا كان فعل القول ماضي. (أما إذا كان فعل القول مضارع، لا يتغير زمن الفعل)

٧. يتم تحويل الضمائر وظروف الزمان والمكان حسب المعنى. (كما سبق شرحه بالوحدة السادسة)

٨. نحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة بدلاً منها.

Direct Questions	Indirect / Reported Questions
"What time does the train leave ?"	She asked what time the train left .
" Do you like ice cream?"	He asked if/whether I liked ice cream.
"Where are you going ?"	She asks where I am going .

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Animals have developed amazing ways to survive in extreme environments. In the hot desert, camels store fat in their humps and can live for days without water. The fennec fox has large ears to lose heat and thick fur on its feet to walk on hot sand. In the Arctic, polar bears have thick fur and fat to stay warm in the freezing cold. Fish in the deep sea can live under great pressure and darkness by using special lights to find food. Each animal's adaptation helps it live where other animals cannot. These changes are truly remarkable examples of nature's power and creativity.

Lessons 5 & 6

Mountain goats are strong animals with thick white fur that keeps them warm in cold climates. They have short black horns and strong legs that help them climb steep, rocky cliffs. They live high in the mountains where few animals can survive. Fur protects them from freezing winds, and their strong legs help them balance and leap across rocks. Mountain goats eat grass and small plants found on rocky cliffs. They can climb cliffs and live safely where predators cannot reach them.

Al-Azhar Test

Snow leopards live high in the cold mountains of Asia. They have thick fur to keep them warm. Their long tails help them balance on rocky cliffs. Snow leopards are quiet and move carefully when hunting. They eat animals like goats and sheep. Sadly, they are endangered animals.

Test on Unit 10

Camels are large desert animals with long legs, a long neck, and one or two humps on their backs. Their thick eyelashes protect them from sand and wind. Camels live in hot desert. They are perfectly adapted to dry, harsh climates. Camels store fat in their humps, which gives them energy when food is scarce. They can survive without water for many days and can drink large amounts quickly. Camels eat dry grass, leaves, and desert plants. Camels are called the "ships of the desert" because they carry people and goods across the desert.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Hadeer are talking about penguins

Mona : Look at those penguins! They're walking together on the ice.

Hadeer : Yes, they always stay close to keep warm in the cold.

Mona : ①

Hadeer : They use their wings to swim fast and catch fish.

Mona : How do they survive the extreme cold in the Arctic?

Hadeer : ②

Mona : Don't they migrate to warmer places in winter?

Hadeer : No, ③

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. If something is, it has a large distance from one surface to the opposite surface.

- a. boring b. thick c. heavy d. light

2. Dark colors more sunlight than light ones.

- a. observe b. produce c. disturb d. absorb

3. The teacher asked the students they had finished the homework.

- a. to b. if c. that d. who

4. I wanted to know the train to Tanta arrived or not.

- a. where b. when c. whether d. what

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

protect - survive - migration - hibernation - predators

Many animals have special adaptations to ① Some use camouflage to hide from ②, while others go into ③ during cold winters to save energy. Birds often take long ④ journeys to warmer places where food is easier to find.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The officer asked the young girl where she (want) to go.

2. My mother asked me (if) I had been.

3. The tourist wanted to know how he (can) go to the pyramids.

4. The teacher asked (I) why I was late.

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

The Arctic fox is a small animal that lives in very cold places. It has thick white fur in winter, which provides warmth and camouflage in the snow. When summer comes, its fur changes to brown or gray to match the rocks and plants. The Arctic fox eats small animals, birds, and sometimes fish. It can survive in freezing weather because of its warm fur and strong sense of smell. These adaptations help it find food and stay safe from larger animals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How does the Arctic fox's fur help it survive?

2. What does the Arctic fox eat?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The Arctic fox changes its fur color to -----.

a. look more beautiful

b. keep its body dry

c. blend with its surroundings

d. attract other foxes

4. The Arctic fox's strong sense of smell helps it -----.

a. find food

b. build a home

c. run faster

d. stay warm

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"Snow leopards"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Test on Unit 10**1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Thick blankets help _____ heat inside the body during cold nights.
a. absorb b. trap c. endanger d. detect
2. The children _____ around the fire to stay warm.
a. exhibited b. protected c. reflected d. gathered
3. The teacher will demonstrate the experiment. "Demonstrate" means _____.
a. explain b. confuse c. infect d. refuse
4. To get the opposite of the adjective "possible", we add the prefix "_____".
a. ir b. in c. un d. im

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:**climbers - adaptations - thick - adapted - cliffs**

Mountain goats live high on rocky mountains. They have ① _____ white fur to keep them warm in cold weather. Their strong hooves help them climb steep ② _____ safely. They eat grass and small plants. Mountain goats are good ③ _____ and rarely fall. They are well ④ _____ to their harsh habitats.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Scientists are discovering remarkable facts about animal adaptations. In harsh, icy environments, creatures like polar bears use incredible strategies for survival. They have thick fur and a layer of fat that provide camouflage and warmth, which helps them survive. The Arctic is a challenging place where many animals show amazing bravery and a high level of courage.

For example, a bear's sense of smell is seven times stronger than a human's, which is a key adaptation for finding prey. They need to move efficiently across vast, icy areas. These physical descriptions are important because they show how evolution helps animals face extreme dangers. Understanding these unique features is a major achievement in conservation efforts.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is a key adaptation that helps polar bears survive in the extreme cold?
a. Running very fast b. Having a keen sense of hearing
c. Having thick fur and a layer of fat d. Eating only plants
2. According to the text, what allows a bear to find prey easily?
a. Its incredible speed b. Its strong sense of smell
c. Its ability to swim long distances d. Its sharp claws

3. What kind of environment do polar bears live in?
- a. hot and humid b. fine and relaxing
- c. harsh and icy d. clean and healthy

B. Answer the following questions

4. Why is understanding animal adaptations important?
-
5. What adaptation is mentioned that helps bears find food?
-
6. Why is the Arctic considered a challenging place for many animals?
-

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. To Captain Nemo, the ocean was a -----.
- a. battlefield b. treasure c. paradise d. dream
2. Captain Nemo showed not only calm courage but also ----- to human life.
- a. kindness b. mercy c. indifference d. fear
3. When warships appeared, Nemo ----- them.
- a. instructed b. attacked c. ignored d. followed
4. Captain Nemo sent the warships to the ----- of the ocean.
- a. surfaces b. tops c. shores d. depths

B. Answer the following questions

5. What was the main risk faced by Captain Nemo and his crew?
-
6. What did the submarine do to escape the danger?
-

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

1. "What time will the film start?" (My brother asked)
-
2. "Where is the nearest post office?" (She asked)
-
3. "Do you like apples?" (He wanted to know...)
-

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ----- (told) me if I knew the way to the bank.
2. She asked me ----- (when) I had eaten for dinner the night before.
3. The nurse asked me ----- (what) I had a stomachache.

7 Finish the following dialogue:

Ali and Mona are talking about snow leopards

Ali : Look at this snow leopard! It's so beautiful.

Mona : Yes, it lives high in the cold mountains.

Ali : ① ----- ?

Mona : It eats goats and other small animals to survive.

Ali : ② ----- ?

Mona : It stays warm because it has very thick fur.

Ali : ③ ----- ?

Mona : That's right! Their long tails also help them balance.

Ali : ④ ----- ?

Mona : Yes, they are strong and fast.

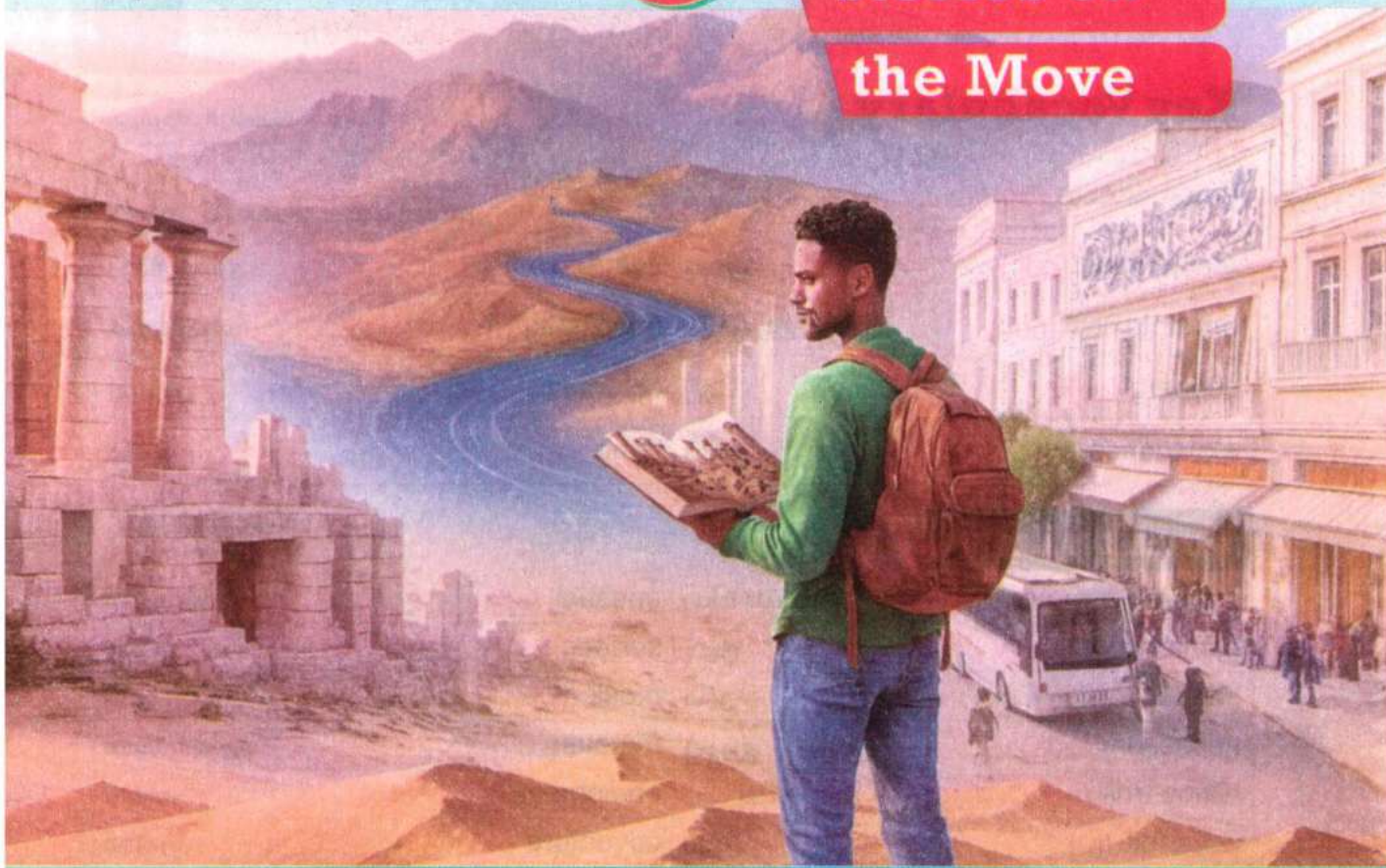
Ali : ⑤ ----- ?

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Camels"

Stories on the Move



Objectives of the Unit

Listening:

- correctly identify specific facts (e.g., activity, location, feeling) mentioned in a short travel narrative audio.

Speaking:

- share a personal travel experience for 2 minutes.
- describe the setting, a turning point/challenge, and the final outcome.
- use appropriate past narrative tenses.

Reading:

- identify the main idea in a narrative text.

- correctly identify the main challenge, the turning point in the story, and the final realization of the narrator in two narrative texts.

Writing:

- write a cohesive travel narrative that describes a personal tip.
- use varied past tenses (simple, continuous, perfect) to sequence events logical.

Language:

- correctly use the appropriate past tense (Simple, Continuous, or Perfect) to establish a clear timeline.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

unforgettable (adj.)	لا ينسى	snorkeling (n.)	الغطس باستخدام امبوب التنفس
challenging (adj.)	صعب	safari (n.)	رحلة سفاري
breathhtaking (adj.)	خلاب / رائع	hospitality (n.)	كرم الضيافة
slippery (adj.)	زلق	columns (n.)	أعمدة
experience (n.)	تجربة	tomb (n.)	مقبرة

المفردات الإضافية

Vocabulary



camping trip (n.)	رحلة للتخييم	unusual (adj.)	غير معتاد
comfortable (adj.)	مريح	surface (n.)	سطح
shelter (n.)	ماوى	mask (n.)	قناع
necessary (adj.)	ضروري	Fayoum	مدينة الفيوم
hiking trail (n.)	درب للتنزه	equipment (n.)	معدات
waterfall (n.)	شلال	adventure (n.)	مغامرة
golden (adj.)	ذهبي	remote (adj.)	بعيد
desert hills (n.)	تلال صحراوية	scenery (n.)	مناظر طبيعية
crystal-clear (adj.)	واضح جدا	absolutely	كلياً / تماماً
dark clouds (n.)	سحب قاتمة	amazing (adj.)	مدهش
storm (n.)	عاصفة	lake (n.)	بحيرة
adventure (n.)	مغامرة	rare (adj.)	نادر
peace (n.)	السلام	wet (adj.)	مبلل / رطب
mix (n.)	خلط	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
Valley of the Kings (n.)	وادي الملوك	extra (adj.)	إضافي
painting (n.)	لوحة / رسم	warm (adj.)	دافئ
Philae Temple (n.)	معبد فيلة في أسوان	blanket (n.)	بطانية
Wadi EI-Rayan	وادي الريان	unexpected (adj.)	غير متوقع
temple (n.)	معبد	ordinary (adj.)	عادي

lifelong friends (n.)	أصدقاء مدى الحياة	gather (v.) (ed)	يجمع / يتجمع
dead (adj.)	ميت	pass (v.) (ed)	يمر
buried (adj.)	مدفون	stop (v.) (ped)	يتوقف
guest (n.)	ضيف	delay (v.) (ed)	يتأخر
stone (n.)	حجر	ignore (v.) (d)	يتجاهل
structure (n.)	بنية / بناء	explore (v.) (d)	يستكشف
book (v.) (ed)	يحجز	turn (v.) (ed)	يتحول
pack (v.) (ed)	يعبئ		



Definitions

unforgettable (adj.)	لا ينسى	impossible to forget	١. مؤثر ٢. قدرات ٣. ناعم ٤. سطح ٥. معاملة ٦. بنايات
brehtaking (adj.)	رائع	very beautiful, impressive ⁽¹⁾ or surprising	
challenging (adj.)	صعب	difficult in a way that tests your abilities ⁽²⁾ and skills	
slippery (adj.)	زلق	smooth ⁽³⁾ and hard to stand on because you might slide	
snorkeling (n.)	الغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	swimming near the surface ⁽⁴⁾ of the sea using a mask to see underwater	
safari (n.)	رحلة سفاري	a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature	
hospitality (n.)	كرم الضيافة	warm and friendly treatment ⁽⁵⁾ of guests	
columns (n.)	أعمدة	large stone structures ⁽⁶⁾ in temples or buildings	
tombs (n.)	مقابر	places where the dead are buried, often underground	

Expressions & Prepositions

in the same situation	في نفس الموقف	such conditions.	في مثل هذه الظروف
decided to	قرر أن	lightweight jacket	معطف خفيف
along the path	بامتداد الممر	within minutes	في خلال دقائق
overhead	فوق الرؤوس	go hiking	يذهب للمشي
felt completely disconnected from	شعري أنني منفصل كلياً عن	go camping	يذهب للتخييم
pouring down	تهطل	turn into	يتحول إلى
weren't prepared for	لم نكن مستعدين لـ	take a challenging trail	يتخذ مسار صعب



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
unforgettable	لا ينسى	memorable		forgettable	يمكن نسيانه
brehtaking	رأف / راف	amazing		unexciting	فر شفق
challenging	صعب	difficult		simple	بسط
local	محل	regional		global	عالم
comfort	راحة	relief		discomfort	عدم الراحة
prepared	مجهز	ready		unprepared	فر مجهز

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	unforgettable/ comfortable
-un	opposite تعطي العكس	unexpected
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم أو صفة	challenging
-ment	تعطي الاسم	equipment/ treatment
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	preparation
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	connection

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
become	يصبح	became	become
take	ياخذ	took	taken
meet	يقابل	met	met
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
spend	يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent
make	يصنع	made	made



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 path / bath

- **path (n)** ممر / طريق

Ex. Follow the **path** along the river to the bridge.

- **bath (n)** حمام

Ex. I'll have a **bath** and go to bed.

2 plan / plane

- **plan (n) (v)** خطة / يخطط

Ex. Do you have any **plans** for the weekend?

Ex. He is **planning** to move to the New Capital next year.

- **plane (n)** طائرة

Ex. It's much quicker to go by **plane**.

3 trip / journey / travel / voyage / flight

- **trip** رحلة

- حدث كامل و التأكيد يكون على الوجهة أو الغرض من الرحلة

Ex. We are going on a **trip** to Paris next month.

Ex. I had a business **trip** to China last month.

- **Journey** رحلة

- السفر من مكان لمكان و التأكيد يكون على المدة أو المسافة

Ex. The **journey** across the desert took forty days.

- **travel** السفر بوجه عام

Ex. **Travel** is expensive.

- **voyage** رحلة بحرية

Ex. The **voyage** across the Atlantic was tiring.

- **flight** رحلة جوية

Ex. There are five **flights** to Saudi Arabia from Cairo International Airport every day.

4 scenery / equipment

- **Scenery** المناظر الطبيعية

- اسم لا يعد ويعامل معاملة المفرد

Ex. The **scenery** was beautiful and the people were really friendly.

- **equipment** المعدات

- اسم لا يعد ويعامل معاملة المفرد

Ex. All our **equipment** has been carefully tested.

5 While + (V + ing)

- While + (V + ing)

- يمكن اختصار جملة (While) إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد

Ex. While we were waiting for the storm to pass, we met another family.

Ex. While waiting for the storm to pass, we met another family.

6 experience / experiment

- experience (n) خبرة (اسم لا يعد)

Ex. She had some experience in fashion design.

- experience (n) تجربة حياتية (اسم يعد)

Ex. Failing an exam was a new experience for me.

- experience (v) يجرب

Ex. Children need to experience things for themselves.

- experiment (n) تجربة معملية (اسم يعد)

Ex. He did some experiments with bats.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- All the camping equipment _____ in the garage.
a. is b. are c. have been d. were
- All _____ from Sharm el Sheikh Airport have been cancelled due to fog.
a. travels b. voyages c. flights d. trips
- There are _____ to turn the site of the factory into a park.
a. planes b. plants c. plans d. planets
- How often do you take a _____ ?
a. bath b. pass c. path d. post
- I think most animal _____ are cruel and unnecessary.
a. experience b. experiences c. experiments d. experienced
- While _____ to school, thieves broke in and stole her handbag.
a. going b. was going
c. she was going d. went

Reading

SB Page (73-74)

استمع إلى النصوص



Last summer, my family **planned**⁽¹⁾ a simple camping **trip**⁽²⁾ to Wadi EI-Rayan in Fayoum, Egypt. We had booked a comfortable place and packed all the necessary equipment.

However, our journey turned into an unforgettable **adventure**⁽³⁾ that we still talk about today.



On the second day, we decided to take a **challenging hiking trail**⁽⁴⁾ to see a **remote waterfall**⁽⁵⁾. The **breathtaking scenery**⁽⁶⁾ along the path was absolutely amazing - golden desert hills, **crystal-clear lakes**⁽⁷⁾, and **rare plants**⁽⁸⁾ and birds everywhere. We felt completely disconnected from the busy city life we had left behind.

Suddenly, dark clouds **gathered**⁽⁹⁾ overhead, and heavy rain started **pouring down**⁽¹⁰⁾. We had ignored the weather and weren't prepared for such **conditions**⁽¹¹⁾. Our lightweight jackets became very wet within minutes. The path became **slippery**⁽¹²⁾ and dangerous, so we took **shelter**⁽¹³⁾ under some large rocks.

While waiting for the **storm**⁽¹⁴⁾ to pass, we met another family who had been caught in the same situation. They shared their **extra**⁽¹⁵⁾ food and warm blankets with us. We spent hours talking, laughing, and sharing travel stories. When the rain finally stopped, we had made new **lifelong friends**⁽¹⁶⁾. That unexpected **delay**⁽¹⁷⁾ turned our **ordinary**⁽¹⁸⁾ camping trip into an **unusual experience**⁽¹⁹⁾.

١. خططت

٢. رحلة

٣. مغامرة

٤. مساراً صعباً

للمشي

٥. شلال بعيد

٦. مناظر طبيعية

خلاصة

٧. بحيرات شديدة

النقاء

٨. نباتات نادرة

٩. تجمعت

١٠. تهطل

١١. ظروف

١٢. زلق

١٣. ماوى

١٤. عاصفة

١٥. إضافي

١٦. أصدقاء مدى

الحياة

١٧. تأخير

١٨. عادي

١٩. تجربة غير عادية

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What is the main idea of the text?
2. According to the text, When did the journey turn into an unforgettable adventure?
3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.

trip into an unusual and friendly experience.
3. The storm brought them together with another family, and this unexpected event turned their ordinary started.
2. The journey turned into an unforgettable adventure on the second day, when a heavy rainstorm.
1. A simple family camping trip became a special and memorable adventure because of a sudden storm.

Answers:



Listening



SB Page (76)



Audio Script SB Page (76)

Story 1 – Adventure in Dahab

Last winter, Sophie, a **tourist**⁽¹⁾ from France, visited Dahab on the Red Sea. She had **dreamed**⁽²⁾ of visiting Egypt before she finally made the **trip**⁽³⁾. Before arriving in Dahab, she had read about its **beauty**⁽⁴⁾ and the **hospitality**⁽⁵⁾ of its people. She loved the relaxing **atmosphere**⁽⁶⁾ of the small town and spent her mornings walking along the **seaside**⁽⁷⁾. After **exploring**⁽⁸⁾ the beaches, she went **snorkeling**⁽⁹⁾ at the Blue Hole, where she saw colorful fish and **coral reefs**⁽¹⁰⁾. On another day, she joined a desert safari and enjoyed **Bedouin**⁽¹¹⁾ tea under the stars. After the trip, Sophie said that Dahab had been the **perfect mix**⁽¹²⁾ of adventure⁽¹³⁾ and **peace**⁽¹⁴⁾, and she hoped to return soon.

Story 2 – Exploring Luxor and Aswan

John, an American traveler, spent a week exploring **southern Egypt**⁽¹⁵⁾. He had long wanted to visit the country before he finally made the trip. Before arriving in Luxor, he had read about its **ancient**⁽¹⁶⁾ temples and **tombs**⁽¹⁷⁾. In Luxor, he visited the Valley of the **Kings**⁽¹⁸⁾ and walked inside tombs that had been **decorated**⁽¹⁹⁾ with colorful **paintings**⁽²⁰⁾, thousands of years earlier. He also admired the great Karnak Temple with its tall **columns**⁽²¹⁾. After John had visited Luxor, he sailed on a felucca boat along the Nile River to Aswan. There, he enjoyed the calm waters and visited the famous **Philae Temple**⁽²²⁾, which had been moved to a new island to protect it from flooding. After the trip, John said that southern Egypt had been even more **amazing**⁽²³⁾ than he had imagined, and he **hoped**⁽²⁴⁾ to return one day.

١. سائح
٢. حلمت
٣. رحلة
٤. جمال
٥. كرم الضيافة
٦. المناخ العام
٧. جانب البحر
٨. تستكشف
٩. الغطس
١٠. الشعاب
١١. الممرجانية
١٢. البدوي
١٣. المزيج المثالي
١٤. المغامرة
١٥. الهدوء
١٦. جنوبي مصر
١٧. قديم
١٨. مقابر
١٩. وادي الملوك
٢٠. مزخرفة
٢١. لوحات
٢٢. أعمدة
٢٣. معبد فيله
٢٤. مدهش
٢٥. تمنى

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ are places where the dead are buried, often underground.
a. Columns b. Tombs c. Hospitals d. Post offices
2. _____ are large stone structures in temples or buildings.
a. Tombs b. bombs c. Maps d. Columns
3. Warm and friendly treatment of guests is called _____.
a. hospitality b. illness c. safari d. illness
4. Swimming near the surface of the sea using a mask to see underwater is called _____.
a. snorkeling b. safari c. waterfall d. breathtaking
5. When something is _____, it is difficult in a way that tests your abilities and skills.
a. hospitality b. breathtaking c. challenging d. slippery
6. A _____ is a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature.
a. voyage b. tomb c. safari d. flight
7. When something is _____, it is smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide.
a. unforgettable b. breathtaking c. challenging d. slippery

Synonyms and antonyms

8. There are some breathtaking views of the ocean. "Breathtaking" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. powerful b. unexciting c. stressed d. strong
9. Our visit to Morocco is an unforgettable experience. "Unforgettable" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. boring b. favourite c. memorable d. strong
10. Teaching young children is a challenging job. "Challenging" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. difficult b. simple c. stressed d. strong
11. I put an advert in the local newspaper. "Local" can be replaced by _____.
a. easy b. international c. regional d. strong

Prefixes and suffixes

12. The suffix " _____ " gives the adjective of the word "comfort".
a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ion

13. Light rain is expected tomorrow. To get the opposite from the adjective "expected", we add the prefix" -----".
 a. dis- b. im- c. un- d. ir-

Guess the meaning

14. Before our trip, we had to ----- our bags with all the necessary equipment.
 a. ignore b. stop c. pack d. turn
15. We managed to ----- a comfortable cabin for our weekend in Fayoum.
 a. explore b. book c. delay d. gather
16. The ----- in Wadi El-Rayan, with its golden desert hills and blue lakes, is absolutely amazing.
 a. surface b. scenery c. guest d. stone
17. It is ----- to bring plenty of water when hiking in the remote desert hills.
 a. unexpected b. necessary c. ordinary d. comfortable
18. The ancient ----- were carved from stone and buried deep underground.
 a. hospitals b. shelters c. post offices d. tombs
19. We followed a narrow ----- that led us to a hidden waterfall.
 a. hiking trail b. lifeline c. surface d. blanket
20. The water in the lake was so ----- that we could see the bottom.
 a. golden b. crystal-clear c. wet d. dark
21. We saw ----- gathering on the horizon, a sign of a possible storm.
 a. dark clouds b. desert hills c. lifelines d. masks
22. The ----- grew so strong that we had to stop our hike and seek shelter.
 a. waterfall b. storm c. guest d. delay
23. As the sun set, the sky ----- into a beautiful shade of orange.
 a. ignored b. packed c. delayed d. turned
24. The archaeologists discovered a ----- stone mask in Saqqara.
 a. comfortable b. rare c. wet d. dead
25. You should never ----- the advice of your guide.
 a. ignore b. explore c. book d. pass
26. The sudden, ----- storm caught all the campers by surprise.
 a. ordinary b. unexpected c. necessary d. golden
27. We decided to ----- the remote temple to see the ancient columns.
 a. delay b. stop c. explore d. pack
28. Despite the -----, the group of lifelong friends continued their adventure.
 a. scenery b. delay c. shelter d. surface
29. There was a large ----- of his father on the wall.
 a. surface b. scenery c. painting d. stone
30. He always used to tell us about his ----- at sea.
 a. adventures b. tombs c. paintings d. stones



Language

قواعد لغوية

Past tenses أزمنة الماضي

- **Past tenses** are the set of tenses used to tell stories.

- الماضي هو مجموعة الأزمنة المستخدمة لسرد القصص.

They include: وهي تشمل

Past Simple: الماضي البسيط

- Used for the main events of a story in chronological order.

يتم استخدامه للأحداث الرئيسية للقصة حسب الترتيب الزمني.

Ex. He **got up**, **opened** the door and **left**.

Past Perfect:

- Used to go back even further in time, describing an event that happened before the main events of the story. It provides background information.

- يُستخدم للرجوع إلى زمن أبعد، لوصف حدث وقع قبل الأحداث الرئيسية للقصة. وهو يُقدم معلومات أساسية.

Ex. He **searched** in his bag, but **realized** he **had forgotten** his wallet.

Notes

The key is that the **past perfect**, helps to show the order of events when you are not telling the story in strict chronological order. It creates a clear timeline for the reader or listener.

السبب هو أن الماضي التام يساعد على إظهار تسلسل الأحداث عند عدم سرد القصة بترتيب زمني صارم. فهو ينشئ خطاً زمنياً واضحاً للقارئ أو المستمع.

1. The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

Affirmative في الجمل المثبتة

فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع)

Ex. I **played** a football game after school yesterday.

Ex. We **went** to the theatre last Thursday.

Negative في النفي

فعل في المصدر + didn't + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع)

Ex. I didn't go out last night because of the bad weather.

فعل في التصريف الثاني + never + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع)

Ex. I never took money from my uncle.

Interrogative في الاستفهام

.....? فعل في المصدر + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع) + did + (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Where did you find this valuable book?

Passive في المبني للمجهول

object + was / were + p.p.

Ex. My purse was stolen on the bus last night.

Ex. The plants were watered an hour ago...

Usage الاستخدام

استخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي

Ex. We had an interesting lecture about education yesterday.

للتعبير عن أحداث متتابعة في الماضي

Ex. I reached the station on time and took the train to Aswan.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث كانت متكررة في الماضي

Ex. When I was on holiday, I went to the beach every morning.

Used to

للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة في الماضي لم نعد نقوم بها الآن نستخدم used to + inf.

Ex. My father used to smoke. (but now he doesn't smoke).

= My father no longer smokes.

= My father doesn't smoke any longer/ anymore.

نستخدم used to أيضاً للحديث عن أوضاع أو حالات كانت موجودة في الماضي وتغيرت

Ex. My brother used to be fat. Now, he is thin.

Negative في النفي

1. **didn't use to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex. It **didn't use to be** so cold in winter as it is nowadays.

2. **never used to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex. He **never used to stay** up late.

Notes

يمكن استخدام **did + inf** للدلالة على التأكيد:

Ex. I **did visit** (= visited) him. Believe me

2. The past perfect simple زمن الماضي التام البسيط

Form التكوين

Affirmative في الجمل المثبتة

Subject + had + p.p.

Ex. I **had eaten** my breakfast before **leaving** for school.

Negative في النفي

Subject + had not / hadn't + p.p.

Ex. I **hadn't seen** my cousin before he **left** for the airport.

Interrogative في الاستفهام

(Question word) had + sub. + p.p....?

Ex. **Had** you **done** your homework before you went to the club?

Passive في المبني للمجهول

object + had been + p.p.

Ex. All the doors **had been locked** well.

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضي التام في الحالات الآتية:

1- يشير إلى حدث وقع بالماضي في وقت سابق عن وقت وقوع حدث آخر بالماضي .

Ex. **Before she travelled** to China, she **had learnt** Chinese.

٢- يعبر الماضي التام عن اكتمال حدث قبل حدث آخر في الماضي. فهو يركز على الحدث الأول من حدثين وقعا في الماضي.

Ex. The teacher **had explained** the lesson well **before he gave** us a quiz.

٣- يستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتركيز على حدث وقع بالماضي وأدى إلى أو كان له تأثير على حدث وقع بعده بالماضي:

Ex. I **had broken** my leg, so I **couldn't take** part in yesterday's match.

٤- نستخدم الماضي التام لنقل أو لوصف خبراتنا التي مرّت بنا حتى نقطة معينة من الوقت بالماضي:

Ex. It **was** the best film I **had** ever seen.

٥- لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي، يمكن استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية:

Before
By the time
When

+

Past simple
ماض بسيط

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

Ex. **Before / By the time / When** I **went** to bed, I **had watched** a comic film.

After
As soon as
When

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

+

Past simple
ماض بسيط

Ex. **After / As soon as / When** I **had finished** my homework, I **went** to bed.

Past simple
ماضي بسيط (منفي غالباً)

+

till
until

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

Ex. I **didn't leave** for the office until I **had** checked my diary.

٦- يمكن استخدام (v-ing) بعد بعض الروابط الزمنية (When / After / Before) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين.

Before

+

V + ing

⇒

had + p.p.

Ex. **Before the film / watching the film**, I **did / had done** my homework.

After

+

V + ing

⇒

Past Simple

Ex. **After the match / watching the match**, I **went** to bed.

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. When I (get) to the beach, my friends had already left.
2. We had visited Paris before , so we (know) the best places to go.
3. After she (finish) packing, she called a taxi.
4. The tour guide explained that the museum (close) early.
5. We (not expect) the journey to take so long because we had never traveled on such difficult roads before.
6. The GPS (stop) working an hour earlier, and we began to worry that we were lost .
7. Fortunately, we saw lights in the distance and realized we (find) our destination at last .
8. By the time we reached the mountain village, it (get) completely dark.

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. After they (book) the hotel, they bought their plane tickets.
10. The film had already started when we (arrive) at the cinema.
11. She was late because she (miss) the bus.
12. By the time we (get) to the campsite, they had already set up the tent.
13. He had never seen such a beautiful waterfall before he (visit) Wadi El-Rayan.
14. We realized that we (lose) our map.
15. After the sun (set), the sky turned a golden color.
16. They were tired because they (hike) all day.
17. The teacher (be) angry because the students had not done their homework.
18. I had never eaten Mexican food before I (go) to that restaurant.

19. By the time the rescue team (arrive), the storm had passed.
20. Mona arrived at school late because she (miss) the bus.

2 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. First, she packed her bag. Then she left the house. (After)
.....
2. The children went to bed after they had brushed their teeth. (Before)
.....
3. First, we bought the tickets. Then we went into the stadium. (As soon as)
.....
4. I didn't sleep until I had finished my homework. (After)
.....
5. First, the children opened their presents. Then they played with the toys. (until)
.....
6. First, she had packed her bag. Then, she left the house. (After)
.....
7. We bought a new flat in Cairo. We went to live there. (As soon as)
.....
8. I went to sleep . I finished my homework first. (before)
.....
9. The children went to the park after they had had their lunch. (until)
.....
10. The plane landed. Then, the passengers got off safely. (After)
.....

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Amal is asking **Ahmed** about his holiday

Amal : Hi Ahmed! How was your holiday?

Ahmed : It was great, but ①

Amal : Why was it difficult?

Ahmed : The mountains were huge and covered in green trees

Amal : ② ! So, what was the challenge?

Ahmed : ③ I stopped and thought, "I can't do this. I wanted to go back."

Amal : ④ ?

Ahmed : I felt tired but I decided to be brave. So, ⑤

Amal : That sounds interesting.

Ahmed : Yes. I finally reached the top. And the view was amazing! I felt so proud and happy that I didn't give up.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Seeing the sunset over the pyramids was an experience.
a. wet b. ordinary c. unforgettable d. slippery
- The view from the top of the mountain was ; it made us stop and stare.
a. dead b. breathtaking c. necessary d. extra
- The hiking trail was quite, but we reached the end successfully.
a. crystal-clear b. amazing c. rare d. challenging
- Be careful! The wet rocks near the waterfall are very
a. slippery b. golden c. remote d. dark
- We spent the afternoon to see the colourful fish and coral reefs.
a. safari b. snorkeling c. shelter d. columns
- On our in Kenya, we saw lions, elephants, and giraffes.
a. safari b. hospitality c. mask d. blanket

Unit 11 Stories on the Move

7. The local people showed us great and invited us for dinner.
a. tombs b. surface c. columns d. hospitality
8. The ancient temple was supported by thick, decorative stone
a. tombs b. columns c. lakes d. trails
9. We visited the Valley of the Kings to see the royal of the pharaohs.
a. masks b. columns c. tombs d. shelters
10. We quickly ran to find when the heavy rain started.
a. shelter b. scenery c. surface d. stone

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

challenging - unforgettable - together - breathtaking - unexpected

Last summer, my family and I went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was ①, with tall green trees and birds singing everywhere. Setting up the tent was a bit ②, but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something ③ happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to steal fruit from our basket. I jumped to scare it away, but I slipped and fell, which made everyone laugh. The monkey ran off with an apple, and I felt very embarrassed. It was an ④ day that we still talk about and laugh at together.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She (not go) to the party because she had forgotten about it.
2. After he had finished his work, he (go) to bed.
3. We couldn't get in because someone (lock) the door.
4. He (tell) me that he had seen that movie before.
5. The children (never be) on a plane before their trip to Cairo.



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

solo (adj.)	فردى	landmarks (n.)	معالم
determined (adj.)	مصمم/عازم	memorable (adj.)	لا ينسى
struggle (v.) (d)	يكافح	southward (adj.)	جنوبي

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

journey (n.)	رحلة	kindness (n.)	الطيبة
lifetime (adj.)	مدى الحياة	the Cairo Tower (n.)	برج القاهرة
motorcycle (n.)	دراجة نارية	stretch (v.) (ed)	يتمدد
exhausting (adj.)	متعب	attractions (n.)	أدوات جذب
friendly (adj.)	ودود	valley (n.)	وادي
excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	mountains (n.)	جبال
confidence (n.)	ثقة	sunset (n.)	غروب
gradually (adv.)	تدريجياً	cliffs (n.)	منحدرات
crowded (adj.)	مزدحم	brilliant (adj.)	ممتاز
field (n.)	حقل	view (n.)	منظر
endless (adj.)	لا نهاية لها	journal (n.)	مذكرات
governorate (n.)	محافظة	sights (n.)	المشاهد السياحية
special (adj.)	خاص	images (n.)	صور
historic (adj.)	تاريخي	personal (adj.)	شخصي
across (adv.)	عبر	incredible (adj.)	لا يصدق
crazy (adj.)	مجنون	sandstone (n.)	حجر رملي
absolutely (adv.)	تماماً	sandstorm (n.)	عاصفة رملية
loneliness (n.)	الوحدة	discover (v.) (ed)	يكتشف

Unit 11 Stories on the Move

prove (v.) (d)	يثبت	try (v.) (tried)	يحاول
capture (v.) (d)	يلتقط (صورة)	face (v.) (d)	يواجه
realize (v.) (d)	يدرك	suggest (v.) (ed)	يقترح



Definitions

solo (adj.)	فردى	alone, without anyone helping you	١. قرار محدد ٢. يمنع ٣. مسافة ٤. يستحق
determined (adj.)	مصمم/عازم	having made a definite decision ⁽¹⁾ to do something and not letting anyone prevent ⁽²⁾ you	
struggle (v.)	يكافح	try very hard to do something when it is difficult	
landmark (n.)	معلم	something, such as a large building, that you can see clearly from a distance ⁽³⁾ and that will help you to know where you are	
memorable (adj.)	لا ينسى	worth ⁽⁴⁾ remembering or easy to remember	
southward (adj.)	جنوبي	towards the south	

Expressions & Prepositions

set off	ينطلق	wrote down	سجلت
got lost	يضل الطريق (يتوه)	at that moment	في تلك اللحظة
street food places	أماكن بيع الطعام في الشارع	forever	إلى الأبد
on both sides	على كلا الجانبين	flat tires	إطارات فارغة
close to	بالقرب من	struggle with	يعاني أو يكافح مع
in front of	أمام	prove (sth.) wrong/right	يثبت خطأ/ صحة شيء
on time	في الموعد المحدد	face a problem	يواجه مشكلة
along the Nile Valley	بامتداد النيل		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
solo	فردى	alone		accompanied	مصحوباً
wrong	خطأ	false		right	صح
exhausting	متعب	tiring		refreshing	منعش
excellent	ممتاز	outstanding		terrible	سوء جداً
crowded	مزدحم	busy		empty	فارغ
endless	لا نهاية لها	limitless		temporary	مؤقت
amazing	مدهش	surprising		boring	ممل
wonderful	رائع	fantastic		awful	مروع
incredible	لا يصدق	unbelievable		believable	يمكن تصديقه

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	loneli <u>ness</u>
-ce	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	confidenc <u>ce</u>
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	gradual <u>ly</u>
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	wonder <u>ful</u>
-less	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى العكس	end <u>less</u>
-ing	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	exhausti <u>ng</u>

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
set off	set off	set off
sit	sat	sat
get lost	got lost	got lost
give	gave	given
write down	wrote down	written down
ride	rode	ridden
know	knew	known
think	thought	thought



1 alone / lonely / solo

• alone بمفرده (ليس معه أحد)

Ex. She lives **alone** in a small apartment.

• lonely وحيد (الشعور بالوحدة)

Ex. The party was crowded, but he felt **lonely**.

• solo منفرد / فردي

Ex. Omar wants to take a **solo** sailing trip around the world.

2 street / road

• street شارع داخل المدينة

Ex. The children were playing in the **street**.

• road طريق يربط مدينتين أو قريتين

Ex. The **road** from Tanta to Alexandria is very busy.

3 desert / dessert

• desert (n.) صحراء

Ex. This area of the country is mostly **desert**.

• dessert (n.) تحلية

Ex. I had fruit salad for **dessert**.

• desert (v.) (ed) يهجر يترك

Ex. The birds have **deserted** their nest.

4 sight / view

• sight (n.) البصر

Ex. He lost his **sight** six years ago.

• sight (n.) مشهد (عرضي)

Ex. I don't like the **sight** of rubbish in the streets.

• sights (n.) المشاهد (الأماكن السياحية)

Ex. We saw all the important **sights** on our first day in Chicago.

• view وجهة نظر

Ex. In my **view**, spring is the best season.

• view منظر طبيعي

Ex. We'd like a room with a **view** of the sea.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What would you like to have for?
a. desert b. dessert c. deserts d. deserted
- The last person left the office, and I was finally
a. lonely b. alone c. loan d. loneliness
- Toka felt very when she first arrived in New York.
a. lonely b. alone c. loan d. loneliness
- Be careful, there's ice on the
a. alley b. road c. street d. lane
- The plane crash-landed in the
a. desert b. dessert c. deserts d. deserted



Reading



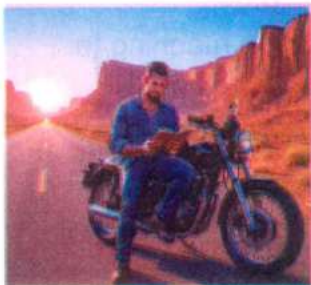
SB Page (79)

استمع إلى النصوص



Three months ago, I **set off**⁽¹⁾ the journey of a lifetime - a solo motorcycle **ride**⁽²⁾ across Egypt from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was **crazy**⁽³⁾ to try such a long **trip**⁽⁴⁾ alone, but I was **determined**⁽⁵⁾ to prove them **wrong**⁽⁶⁾.

The first week was absolutely **exhausting**⁽⁷⁾. I faced many problems, got lost several times, and **struggled with**⁽⁸⁾ loneliness. In small towns along the Nile Valley, friendly people helped me



fix⁽⁹⁾ my bike, and suggested excellent street food places. Their kindness **helped** **me**⁽¹⁰⁾ not to **give up**⁽¹¹⁾. As I continued **southward**⁽¹²⁾, the landscape **changed**⁽¹³⁾, **green fields**⁽¹⁴⁾, then **endless**⁽¹⁵⁾ desert **stretched**⁽¹⁶⁾ on both sides of the road.

١. انطلقت
٢. جولة فردية
٣. بالدراجة النارية
٤. مجنون
٥. رحلة
٦. مصمم
٧. أثبت إنهم مخطئين
٨. متعب
٩. عانيت من
١٠. يصلح
١١. ساعدتني
١٢. اتوقف/استسلم
١٣. في اتجاه الجنوب
١٤. تغير
١٥. الحقول الخضراء
١٦. لا تنتهي
١٧. تمددت

Each **governorate**⁽¹⁷⁾ offered special **attractions**⁽¹⁸⁾ - from **historic landmarks**⁽¹⁹⁾ in Minya to amazing temples near Qena. I wrote down everything in my travel **journal**⁽²⁰⁾, **including**⁽²¹⁾ both the wonderful **sights**⁽²²⁾ and my personal **images**⁽²³⁾.

The most memorable **moment**⁽²⁴⁾ happened near Luxor. While riding through a desert valley close to the mountains, I **saw**⁽²⁵⁾ an incredible sunset that painted the sandstone **cliffs**⁽²⁶⁾ in brilliant colors. In the end, I realized this journey had changed me forever. I had discovered **inner strength**⁽²⁷⁾ I never knew I really had..

١٧. محافظة
١٨. أدوات جذب
١٩. مناظر تاريخية
٢٠. مذكرات السفر
٢١. مشتملا على
٢٢. مشاهد سياحية
٢٣. صور شخصية
٢٤. لحظة لا تنسى
٢٥. شاهدها
٢٦. منحدرات
- الصخور الرملية
٢٧. القوة الداخلية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. To means to try very hard to do something when it is difficult.
a. realize b. set off c. struggle d. capture
2. A means something, such as a large building, that you can see clearly from a distance and that will help you to know where you are.
a. landmark b. valley c. journal d. sandstorm
3. means to be alone, without anyone helping you.
a. Special b. Solo c. Endless d. Brilliant
4. means having made a definite decision to do something and not letting anyone prevent you.
a. Special b. Solo c. Endless d. Determined

Synonyms and Antonyms

5. I think we went the wrong way. The opposite of the word "wrong" is
a. busy b. shy c. right d. rich
6. Driving for nine hours was exhausting . Exhausting is similar in meaning to
a. endless b. tiring c. refreshing d. relaxing
7. Computer programs will let you play solo. Solo can be replaced by
a. busy b. terrible c. alone d. accompanied
8. The train was really crowded. The antonym of the word "crowded" is
a. busy b. shy c. right d. empty

9. We had a wonderful time in Spain. Wonderful is similar in meaning to
 a. endless b. tiring c. fantastic d. relaxing
10. The possibilities for the use of plastics seems endless. The antonym of "endless" is
 a. brilliant b. temporary c. limitless d. empty

Prefixes and suffixes

11. To change the word "lonely" into a noun we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ly b. -ness c. -ful d. -ence
12. To change the word "wonder" into an adjective we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ful b. -ly c. -ence d. -ive
13. To change the word "exhaust" into an adjective we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ful b. -ly c. -ing d. -ive
14. To get the adverb from the word "gradual", we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ful b. -ly c. -ing d. -ive

Guess the meaning

15. She played music in front of the class.
 a. short b. solo c. special d. small
16. He was to finish his project on time .
 a. determined b. excellent c. memorable d. lonely
17. The boy to carry the heavy box.
 a. faced b. reminded c. struggled d. fixed
18. The travelers moved toward the mountains.
 a. lifetime b. southward c. special d. memorable
19. Visiting Luxor is the most visit in my life.
 a. lifetime b. southward c. special d. memorable
20. We visited famous, like the Cairo Tower.
 a. adventures b. landmarks c. cliffs d. mountains
21. Our school is to the new monorail station.
 a. far b. remote c. close d. away
22. She wanted to take a trip to discover more about herself.
 a. friendly b. solo c. wrong d. exhausting
23. The climbers had to many problems, including bad weather.
 a. fix b. help c. face d. ride
24. We saw many famous like the Eiffel Tower and the Colosseum.
 a. landmarks b. kindness c. problems d. loneliness

25. The view from the mountain was excellent.
a. southward b. absolutely c. alone d. crazy
26. My grandfather's watch will me of him every time I look at it.
a. prove b. restore c. remind d. try
27. He was to learn how to swim, so he practiced every day.
a. determined b. memorable c. friendly d. exhausting
28. The children will to build the tallest sandcastle on the beach.
a. ride b. try c. help d. fix
29. It was a experience that I will never forget.
a. solo b. crazy c. memorable d. wrong
30. They began the long across the vast desert.
a. journey b. time c. voyage d. kindness

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

action - connection - quit - feedback - determination

Mohamed felt frustrated. His science project had failed, and he wanted to ①
His teacher noticed and gave him honest ② "Failure is just a step," she said.
Mohamed decided to take ③ He researched, and tried again. By the end of
the week, his project worked! He learned the value of ④

3 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your last Business trip to China"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1- Why do you go to China?

2- What do you import from China?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- I go to China to import goods.

- I import.....



استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

absolutely (adv.)	تماما	trip (n.)	رحلة
incredible (adj.)	مدهش / لا يصدق	part (n.)	جزء
suddenly (adv.)	فجأة	exciting (adj.)	مثير
Great Sphinx (n.)	ابو الهول العظيم	guide (v.) (d)	يرشد
monuments (n.)	آثار	explain (v.) (ed)	يشرح
breathtaking (adj.)	خلاب	totally (adv.)	كلياً
believe (v.) (d)	يصدق/يعتقد	photo (n.)	صورة
cool (adj.)	رائع	culture (n.)	ثقافة
ancient (adj.)	قديم جداً	jealous (adj.)	غيور
treasures (n.)	كنوز	unforgettable (adj.)	لا ينسى
the whole (adj.)	كل	a few (adj.)	قليل
the pharaohs (n.)	الفراعنة	shots (n.)	لقطات
sunset (n.)	غروب	feel (v.)	يشعر
surprised (adj.)	مدهش	coral reefs (n.)	الشعاب المرجانية
beach (n.)	شاطئ	desert safari (n.)	رحلة سفاري في الصحراء
share (v.) (d)	يشارك	expected (adj.)	متوقع
forget (v.)	ينسى	the Egyptian Museum (n.)	المتحف المصري
experience (n.)	تجربة حياتية		

Expressions & Prepositions

That sounds amazing!	هذا يبدو مدهشاً	dreamed of	حلم بـ
What else	ماذا أيضاً	took a boat ride	أخذ جولة بالقارب
That's such a cool experience	هذه تجربة رائعة	different from	مختلف عن
		No way!	مستحيل
how proud Egyptians are	كم يفخر المصريون	ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
powerful	قوي	strong		weak	ضعيف
beautiful	جميل	cool		ugly	قبيح
cool	رائع	interesting		boring	ممل
ancient	قديم	old		modern	حديث

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	powerful
-al	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	natural
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	absolutely
-able	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	forgettable
-ing	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	exciting

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
hear	heard	heard
feel	felt	felt
see	saw	seen
build	built	built
get	got	got
forget	forgot	forgotten



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 explore / discover / invent

• **explore** يستكشف (مكان/احتمالات)

Ex. A lot of countries **explored** space years ago.

• **invent** يخترع (شيء لم يكن له وجود من قبل)

Ex. The internet was **invented** in the last century.

• **discover**

يكتشف (شيء كان موجودا من قبل ولكنه كان مجهولا)

Ex. Christopher Columbus **discovered** America.

2) amazed / amazing

• **amazed** مندهش / مذهول

Ex. I'm **amazed** that he survived the accident.

• **amazing** مذهش / مدهل

Ex. Modern technology is **amazing**, isn't it?

3) a few / few / a little / little

• **a few** قليل ويكفي

– نستخدم (**a few**) قبل اسم جمع بمعنى (قليل ويكفي):

Ex. I have **a few** friends. I have five friends and I am satisfied with the number.

• **few** قليل ولا يكفي

– نستخدم (**few**) قبل اسم جمع بمعنى (قليل ولا يكفي):

Ex. Ali has **few** friends. He has two friends. He is not satisfied with the number.

• **a little** قليل ويكفي

– نستخدم (**a little**) قبل اسم مفرد لا يُعد بمعنى (قليل ويكفي):

Ex. We have got **a little** money – let's spend it on a party!

• **little** قليل ولا يكفي

– نستخدم (**little**) قبل اسم مفرد لا يُعد بمعنى (قليل ولا يكفي):

Ex. There is **little** money left- we can't buy anything!

– نستخدم (**little**) بمعنى صغير:

Ex. My **little** brother is always making noise.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We spent a week _____ the new city.
a. inventing b. exploring c. discovering d. covering
- The body was _____ in a field.
a. discovered b. explored c. invented d. known
- Graham Bell _____ the telephone in 1876.
a. made b. discovered c. invented d. explored
- We were _____ at his rapid recovery.
a. amazed b. natural c. different d. amazing
- He's an _____ player to watch.
a. amazement b. amaze c. amazed d. amazing
- I need _____ things from the store.
a. a few b. little c. any d. much
- She was cutting the cake up into _____ bits.
a. few b. any c. little d. much

Reading

SB Page 83

In pairs, read the following dialog.

استمع إلى النص



Emma: Hey Jake! How was your **trip**⁽¹⁾ to Egypt? I want to hear everything!

Jake: Oh wow, it was absolutely **incredible**⁽²⁾! I had never seen so much history in one place before.

Emma: Really? What was the most **exciting**⁽³⁾ part?

Jake: Well, on the third day, we were **exploring**⁽⁴⁾ the Pyramids when we suddenly saw **the Great Sphinx**⁽⁵⁾ right in front of us. It was **brehtaking**⁽⁶⁾!

Emma: **No way**⁽⁷⁾! Were you amazed?

Jake: Totally! Our guide explained how ancient Egyptians built these **monuments**⁽⁸⁾ thousands of years ago. I couldn't believe they are still standing.

Emma: That **sounds**⁽⁹⁾ amazing! Did you get any photos?

Jake: I tried to, but there were so many **tourists**⁽¹⁰⁾. Still, I managed to capture the pyramids glowing⁽¹¹⁾ in the sunset.

Emma: That's such a cool **experience**⁽¹²⁾! What else did you do?

Jake: We took a **boat ride**⁽¹³⁾ on the Nile and visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. I had never seen so many **ancient treasures**⁽¹⁴⁾ in one place! The whole trip opened my eyes to **how proud**⁽¹⁵⁾ Egyptians are of their **culture**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Emma: I'm so jealous⁽¹⁷⁾! I really need to plan an **adventure**⁽¹⁸⁾ like that.



١. رحلة
٢. لا يصدق
٣. مثير
٤. نستكشف
٥. أبو الهول العظيم
٦. خلابة
٧. مستحيل
٨. آثار
٩. يبدو
١٠. السياح
١١. تتوهج
١٢. تجربة رائعة
١٣. جولة بالقارب
١٤. كنوز قديمة
١٥. كم هم فخوريين
١٦. الثقافة
١٧. غيور
١٨. مغامرة

Read and complete the following dialog.

Aya : Hey Malak! How was your tour to Luxor and Aswan? I want to hear everything.

Malak : It was absolutely unforgettable! I had never seen such amazing temples.

Aya : That sounds amazing! **What was the most exciting part of the tour?**

Malak : The most exciting part was visiting the Valley of the Kings. I was amazed by the ancient tombs.

Aya : No way! How did you feel when you saw them?

Malak : **I was thrilled**. It opened my eyes to how powerful the pharaohs were.

Aya : **Tell me more!**

Malak : Ok : I' ll tell you more. We took a boat trip on the Nile in Aswan. The sunset was breathtaking.

Aya : Wonderful ! **Did you take any pictures?**

Malak : Yes, I took a few. There were so many tourists, but I managed to capture some beautiful shots.

Speaking

Useful Expressions

• تعبيرات مفيدة

Showing Interest:

إبداء الاهتمام

- Really? حقًا؟
- No way ! مستحيل!
- That sounds amazing! هذا يبدو رائعًا!
- Tell me more! أخبرني المزيد!
- What happened next? ماذا حدث بعد ذلك؟
- I want to hear everything! أريد سماع كل شيء!

Describing Experiences:

وصف التجارب

- It was absolutely كان الأمر بالتأكيد
- I had never لم يسبق لي
- The most exciting part was ... الجزء الأكثر إثارة كان...
- We suddenly... فجأة...
- All of a sudden .. فجأة..

Expressing Emotions:

التعبير عن المشاعر

- I was thrilled / terrified /amazed كنت متحمسًا/مرعوبًا/مذهولًا
- It opened my eyes to . لقد فتح ذلك عيني على...
- I' ll never forget when . لن أنسى أبدًا عندما...

Asking Follow-up Questions:

طرح أسئلة متابعة

- What was it like? كيف كان الأمر؟
- How did you feel? كيف شعرت؟
- Did you...? هل...؟
- Were you .. ? هل كنت...؟
- What else did you do? ماذا فعلت أيضًا؟



Writing Tip

Writing a travel Narrative كتابة قصة سفر

- A travel narrative is a short story about a trip or journey.

قصة السفر هي قصة قصيرة عن رحلة أو سفر.

- It includes: وتشمل:

1- Introduction: المقدمة

- say when and where you traveled.

- قل متى وأين سافرت.

2- Setting the scene : إعداد المشهد :

- describe the place (what you saw . heard. felt).

وصف المكان (ما رأيته. سمعته. شعرت به).

3- Main Events: الأحداث الرئيسية

- Write the activities and use past tense verbs.

- اكتب الأنشطة واستخدم الأفعال الماضية.

4- Conclusion: الخاتمة

- Summarize your experience.

- لخص تجربتك.

- Say why the trip was special.

- اذكر سبب تميز الرحلة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonyms and antonyms

1. She has beautiful brown eyes. " Beautiful " is the antonym of.....
a. cool b. ugly c. soft d. boring
2. Big Ramy is a powerful, well-built man. "Powerful" can be replaced by.....
a. easy b. weak c. soft d. strong
3. I think their new song's really cool. " Cool " is similar in meaning to.....
a. boring b. favourite c. interesting d. strong
4. The ancient temple was ruined in the war. Ancient " is opposite in meaning to.....
a. powerful b. unexciting c. modern d. strong

Prefixes and suffixes

5. The suffix " _____ " gives the adjective of the verb "forget".
a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ion
6. The suffix " _____ " gives the adjective of the word "nature".
a. -ful b. -able c. -al d. -y

Guess the meaning

7. We decided to _____ the remote temple to see the ancient columns.
a. delay b. stop c. explore d. pack
8. The view from the mountain top was absolutely _____.
a. jealous b. breathtaking c. shared d. expected
9. The _____ told us many stories about the pharaohs.
a. guide b. beach c. sunset d. culture
10. I can't _____ how incredible those ancient monuments are!
a. feel b. believe c. forget d. shared
11. Seeing the Great Sphinx was the most _____ part of our trip.
a. exciting b. surprised c. shared d. few
12. We took some _____ of amazing photos during the desert safari.
a. part b. culture c. shots d. treasures
13. The museum was filled with _____ from an ancient culture.
a. crops b. monuments c. shots d. tourists
14. This has been an _____ experience that I will never forget.
a. unforgettable b. expected c. cool d. sudden
15. I _____ the story and photos with my friends.
a. explained b. shared c. expected d. surprised
16. The _____ over the pyramids was a totally beautiful sight.
a. beach b. sunset c. safari d. guide
17. When I heard his story, I said, "That _____ amazing!"
a. makes b. takes c. sounds d. asks
18. I have always dreamed _____ visiting the pyramids.
a. of b. for c. at d. to
19. The weather in the desert is different _____ the weather at the beach.
a. for b. of c. at d. from
20. We _____ a boat ride down the Nile River.
a. asked b. dreamed c. took d. made
21. You should _____ advice from a local guide.
a. ask for b. have c. give d. ask about
22. You could see how _____ Egyptians are of their history.
a. pride b. fast c. proud d. tall
23. The guide explained the _____ beauty of the desert.
a. cold b. natural c. different d. amazed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
treasures - amazed - breathtaking - expected - modern

We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. Seeing the ① was a ② experience. The culture was so cool! I saw the gold mask of a king, which was more exciting than I ③ I will never forget this day. It made me feel ④ by the whole ancient civilization.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6
1 Finish the following dialog:

Omar and Sara are talking about festivals:

Omar : What are you reading?

Sara : ①

Omar : Festivals! Have you read about Spring Feast?

Sara : ②

Omar : ③ ?

Sara : People do many things and eat eggs and FESEEKH.

Omar : ④ ?

Sara : Yes, many people celebrate it.

Omar : ⑤ ?

Sara : It comes on the 21st. March.

Omar : It is the same day of Mother's Day.

Sara : Yes, That's right.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
monument - share - believed - pharaohs - paint

Our guide explained the history of the ancient Great Sphinx. It was absolutely incredible to see this ① I was totally surprised by its size. I ② the stories about the ③ I took a few good shots to ④ with my family. This trip was unforgettable.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The view from the mountain was absolutely I had never seen anything so beautiful like this.

a. jealous

b. breathtaking

c. boring

d. surprised

2. We saw the _____ of the ancient kings in the museum.
a. treasures b. culture c. sunset d. beach
3. I can't _____ we are finally in Egypt! It's a dream come true.
a. forget b. believe c. feel d. share
4. The _____ in the desert was the most exciting part of our trip.
a. voyage b. reefs c. safari d. pharaoh
5. Our guide will _____ the history of this old castle to us.
a. pack b. guide c. forget d. explain
6. That magic trick was _____! How did you do it?
a. incredible b. ancient c. a few d. jealous
7. It started to rain _____, so we had to run inside.
a. absolutely b. suddenly c. totally d. unforgettable
8. I will _____ all my pictures with you when I get home.
a. share b. forget c. feel d. guide
9. We saw _____ like statues and old buildings in the city.
a. monuments b. shots c. pharaohs d. coral reefs
10. This vacation has been an amazing _____ for my family.
a. trip b. part c. experience d. culture

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Samira is a clever girl. She is going to be a nurse. She is having classes at a nursing school near her home. She has to study hard. She is already helpful to other nurses because she can feed and wash a sick child. She can also change its clothes.

One day her little brother Ahmed, was sick. He had a bad cold and couldn't go to school. Samira advised him to stay at home or other children would catch his cold. She gave him a glass of orange juice and opened the window wide to let fresh air in. Her mother smiled. "A sick child in the family is good practice for a nurse, isn't it Samira?" she said.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is Samira going to be?

.....

2. How is Samira already helpful to other nurses?

.....

3. Why couldn't Ahmed go to school?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Samira advised Ahmed to _____.
- a. go to school b. go to the park. c. stay at home d. eat ice cream.
5. Samira opened the window to _____.
- a. let fresh air in b. help Ahmed to sleep.
c. clean the room d. catch cold.
6. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to _____.
- a. Samira's father b. Samira's teacher c. Ahmed d. Ahmed's friend.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"You're an experienced traveler. Write about your first solo trip abroad."

Answer the following questions

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- 1- How was your first solo trip?
- 2- How old were you then?
- 3- Where did you go?
- 4- What did you do?

Review on Unit 11

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

unforgettable (adj.)	لا ينسى	treasures (n.)	كنوز
challenging (adj.)	صعب	the whole (adj.)	كل
breathhtaking (adj.)	خلاب / رائع	the pharaohs (n.)	الفراعنة
slippery (adj.)	زلق	sunset (n.)	غروب
experience (n.)	تجربة	surprised (adj.)	مدهش
snorkeling (n.)	الغطس باستخدام امبوب التنفس	beach (n.)	شاطئ
		share (v.) (d)	يشارك
safari (n.)	رحلة سفاري	forget (v.)	ينسى
hospitality (n.)	كرم الضيافة	experience (n.)	تجربة حياتية
columns (n.)	أعمدة	trip (n.)	رحلة
tomb (n.)	مقبرة	part (n.)	جزء
solo (adj.)	فردى	exciting (adj.)	مثير
determined (adj.)	مصمم / عازم	guide (v.) (d)	يرشد
struggle (v.) (d)	يكافح	explain (v.) (ed)	يشرح
landmarks (n.)	معالم	totally (adv.)	كلياً
memorable (adj.)	لا ينسى	photo (n.)	صورة
southward (adj.)	جنوبي	culture (n.)	ثقافة
absolutely (adv.)	تماماً	jealous (adj.)	غيور
incredible (adj.)	مدهش / لا يصدق	unforgettable (adj.)	لا ينسى
suddenly (adv.)	فجأة	a few (adj.)	قليل
Great Sphinx (n.)	ابو الهول العظيم	shots (n.)	لقطات
monuments (n.)	آثار	feel (v.)	يشعر
breathhtaking (adj.)	خلاب	coral reefs (n.)	الشعاب المرجانية
believe (v.) (d)	يصدق / يعتقد	desert safari (n.)	رحلة سفاري في الصحراء
cool (adj.)	رائع	expected (adj.)	متوقع
ancient (adj.)	قديم جداً	the Egyptian Museum (n.)	المتحف المصري



Language

قواعد لغوية

Past tenses أزمنة الماضي

- **Past tenses** are the set of tenses used to tell stories.

- الماضي هو مجموعة الأزمنة المستخدمة لسرد القصص.

They include: وهي تشمل

Past Simple: الماضي البسيط

- Used for the main events of a story in chronological order.

- يتم استخدامه للأحداث الرئيسية للقصة حسب الترتيب الزمني.

Past Perfect:

- Used to go back even further in time, describing an event that happened before the main events of the story. It provides background information.

- يُستخدم للرجوع إلى زمن أبعد، لوصف حدث وقع قبل الأحداث الرئيسية للقصة. وهو يُقدم معلومات أساسية.

Notes

The key is that the past perfect, helps to show the order of events when you are not telling the story in strict chronological order. It creates a clear timeline for the reader or listener.

السبب هو أن الماضي التام يُساعد على إظهار تسلسل الأحداث عند سرد القصة بترتيب زمني صارم. فهو يُنشئ خطاً زمنياً واضحاً للقارئ أو المستمع.

1. The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

Affirmative في الجمل المثبتة

فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع)

Ex. I **met** Ali after school yesterday.

Negative في النفي

فعل في المصدر + didn't + inf. + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع)

Ex. I didn't **finish** my homework last night.

فعل في التصريف الثاني + never + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع)

Ex. I never visited Luxor before .

Interrogative في الاستفهام

.....? فعل في المصدر + فاعل (مفرد أو جمع) + did + (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. When did you meet your best friend?

Passive في المبني للمجهول

object + was / were + p.p.

Ex. The match was played yesterday.

Usage الاستخدام

استخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي
للتعبير عن أحداث متتابعة في الماضي
نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث كانت متكررة في الماضي

Used to

للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة في الماضي لم نعد نقوم بها الآن نستخدم **used to + inf**.
نستخدم **used to** أيضاً للحديث عن أوضاع أو حالات كانت موجودة في الماضي وتغيرت

Notes

يمكن استخدام **did + inf** للدلالة على التأكيد:

Ex. I did visit (= visited) him. Believe me

2. The past perfect simple زمن الماضي التام البسيط

Form التكوين

Affirmative في الجمل المثبتة

Subject + had + p.p.

Ex. Omar had finished his homework before going to bed.

Negative في النفي

Subject + had not / hadn't + p.p.

Ex. Riham hadn't gone home before she finished her work.

Unit 11 Stories on the Move

Interrogative في الاستفهام

(Question word) had + sub. + p.p....?

Ex. Had you done your homework before you went to the club?

Passive في المبني للمجهول

object + had been + p.p.

Ex. All the doors had been locked well.

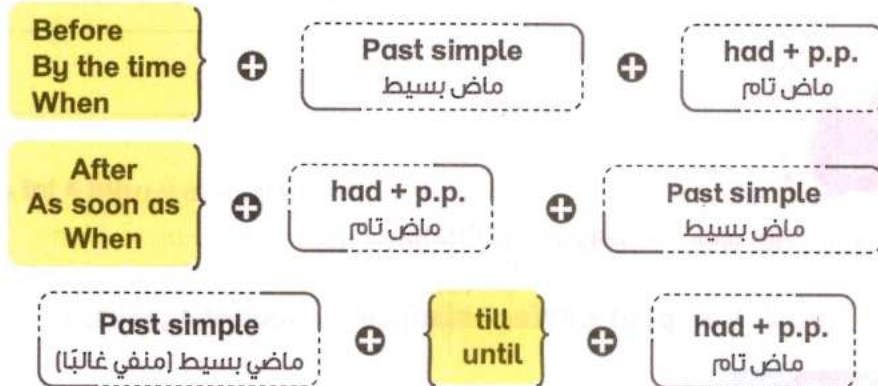
Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضي التام في الحالات الآتية:

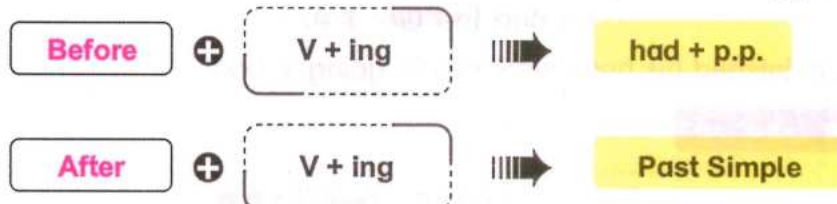
- ١- يشير إلى حدث وقع بالماضي في وقت سابق عن وقت وقوع حدث آخر بالماضي.
- ٢- يعبر الماضي التام عن احتمال حدث قبل حدث آخر في الماضي. فهو يركز على الحدث الأول من حدثين وقعا في الماضي.
- ٣- يستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتركيز على حدث وقع بالماضي وأدى إلى أو كان له تأثير على حدث وقع بعده بالماضي:

٤- نستخدم الماضي التام لنقل أو لوصف خبراتنا التي مرّت بنا حتى نقطة معينة من الوقت بالماضي:

٥- لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي، يمكن استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية:



٦- يمكن استخدام (v-ing) بعد بعض الروابط الزمنية (When / After / Before) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين.



Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات الشائبة ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 3 & 4

My last business trip to China was very busy but interesting. I flew to Shanghai for a big technology conference. The flight was very long. I stayed in a modern hotel in the city center. My main goal was to meet our new partners and learn about their work. We had many meetings, and they were very productive. The food in China was amazing, but some dishes were surprising. I tried to use a few words of Mandarin, which made everyone smile. The city was huge and full of energy, with bright lights at night. I also visited a famous market to buy small gifts for my team. The trip was successful, and I hope to return soon to continue our work together.

Lessons 5 & 6

My first solo trip abroad was both scary and exciting. I was only eighteen and went to London, England. At the airport, I felt very alone and a little nervous. I had to find my own way to the hotel on the bus. The first day, I got lost twice, but friendly people helped me. I visited all the famous places like Big Ben and the Tower Bridge. Eating alone in restaurants felt strange at first. However, I soon met other travelers at my hostel. We explored the city together. That trip taught me to be independent and confident. It was a very important experience for me, and I will never forget it.

Al-Azhar Test

My trip to the Great Egyptian Museum was incredible. I saw the treasures of the pharaohs, which were breathtaking. Our guide explained the history of the ancient monuments. I took a few photos of the Great Sphinx statue. I wanted to share this experience with my family. It was an totally unforgettable day.

Test on Unit 3

Last year, I took an unforgettable trip to Egypt with my family. The whole experience was absolutely incredible and felt like a dream. The most breathtaking moment was seeing the Great Pyramids and the Great Sphinx. I was totally surprised by their massive size. Our guide was excellent; he explained the history of the ancient pharaohs, which made the culture come alive. I took a few shots of the beautiful monuments to share with my friends back home. I know they will be jealous when they see my photos. We also enjoyed a desert safari at sunset, which was so exciting. I will never forget this amazing trip; it is a precious memory I will never forget.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen and Omar are talking about reading.

Mazen : Where are you going, Omar?

Omar : I'm going to the library.

Mazen : ① ?

Omar : Yes, very much. Reading is my favourite hobby.

Mazen : ② ?

Omar : Science and historical books.

Mazen : Do you think reading is a useful hobby?

Omar : ③

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The pyramids were built a long, long time ago. They are very
a. exciting b. cool c. ancient d. unforgettable
- My friends will be when they see my holiday pictures.
a. breathtaking b. jealous c. surprised d. incredible
- I my breakfast before I left for school.
a. am eating b. will eat c. had eaten d. eats
- I out last night because of the bad weather.
a. don't go b. won't go c. haven't gone d. didn't go

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

across - landmarks - adventure - memorable - remind

The final part of the journey was ① and excellent. He had the confidence to ride ② the rest of the country. He saw many famous ③ and tried local foods. Every time he saw a sign southward, it served to ④ him of his goal.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Ali (be) tired because he had been awake all night.
- After they (finish) their work, they went home.

3. Maha _____ (have) her breakfast before she went to school.
4. The first lesson _____ (already start) when we arrived at school.

5 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many experts think that people first played rugby in 1823. At this time, students at Rugby School in England were playing football. Then, a boy called William Webb-Ellis took the ball in his hands and ran towards the opponents. This made a new game. To score in rugby, teams have to run with or kick the ball to one end of the field. The ball is oval, like an egg. You have to be fast and strong to be good at playing rugby. Many players, who can weigh about 100 kilograms, are very big. Today rugby is very popular in many countries. About 100 countries play the sport. However, it is not as popular as football. More than 200 countries play that sport.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. What sort of person do you need to be in order to play rugby well?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. An oval is a _____.

- a. shape

- b. a kind of football

- c. a kind of plastic

- d. a kind of egg

4. Rugby got its name from a

- a. player

- b. a country

- c. a school

- d. an egg

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A journey to the Great Egyptian Museum."

[مُجَاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

Choose the correct answer from a-e only.

1. The first time I saw him, he was _____ a very young man.

2. _____ the fact that he was a very young man, he was very successful.

3. _____ the fact that he was a very young man, he was very successful.

4. _____ the fact that he was a very young man, he was very successful.

5. _____ the fact that he was a very young man, he was very successful.

Test on Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Last weekend our family a boat ride on the Nile.
a. made b. did c. took d. went
- To get the adjective of the word "excite", we add the suffix.....
a. -ful b. -ing c. -al d. -able
- A /An person will often smile and talk easily to strangers
a. unkind b. impolite c. friendly d. rude
- Walking for ten hours with a heavy backpack is
a. excellent b. memorable c. exhausting d. crazy

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

incredible - experience - ancient - exciting - amazed

Snorkeling was the most ① part of our trip. The coral reefs were absolutely beautiful, like ② treasures. I saw the whole ③ world under the sea. It was a totally new ④ for me. I can't believe how cool it was. I took some amazing photos that I shared with my family. It was unforgettable.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Once a train stopped at a small station and a woman opened the window. There was a boy outside and the woman said to him , I don't want to get out of the train as I am old and I can't walk fast. Please , run to the station cafeteria and get me an ice cream and get one for yourself, too. Here is one 10 pounds."

The boy came back before the train moved again. He was eating an ice cream. He ran to the woman's window, gave here 5 pounds and said, "I am awfully sorry madam, there was only one ice cream in the Cafeteria. Here's the rest of your money."

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

- the boy came back a few seconds
a. when the train moved b. before the train moved
c. after the train moved d. the moment the train moved
- The boy bought
a. one ice cream b. two ice creams
c. no ice cream d. a cup of tea

3. The train stopped

- a. at the end of the journey
c. at a small station

- b. at the cafeteria
d. at the next stop

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What did the woman ask the boy to do?

5. Why couldn't the woman go to the Cafeteria?

6. What do you think of the little boy?

Story

4 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. One evening, Nemo guided the submarine through a graveyard of

- a. whales b. sunken ships c. sea monsters d. islands

2. Aronnax realized that Captain Nemo saw himself as part of the world beneath the waves.

- a. living b. mysterious c. dangerous d. dead

3. The main mystery in the chapter revolves around Captain Nemo's hidden

- a. treasure b. past c. ship d. map

4. By the end of the chapter, the companions were determined to find a way

- a. to get rich b. to explore more c. home d. to help Nemo

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him?

6. Why do you think captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty land?

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

- First, she packed her bag. Then she left the house. (**After**)
- The children went to bed after they had brushed their teeth. (**Before**)
- First, we bought the tickets. Then we went into the stadium. (**As soon as**)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara was upset because she (lose) her favorite book.
2. By the time we (get) to the station, the train had already left.
3. I couldn't enter my house because I (forget) my keys.

7 Finish the following dialogue:

Eman is going to the library

Tamer : Where are you going?

Eman : 1

Tamer : 2

Eman : I prefer historical books.

Tamer : 3 v

Eman : I go there three times a week.

Tamer : Have you learnt useful things?

Eman : 4

Tamer : Can I come with you to the library?

Eman : 5

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"An unforgettable Trip you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

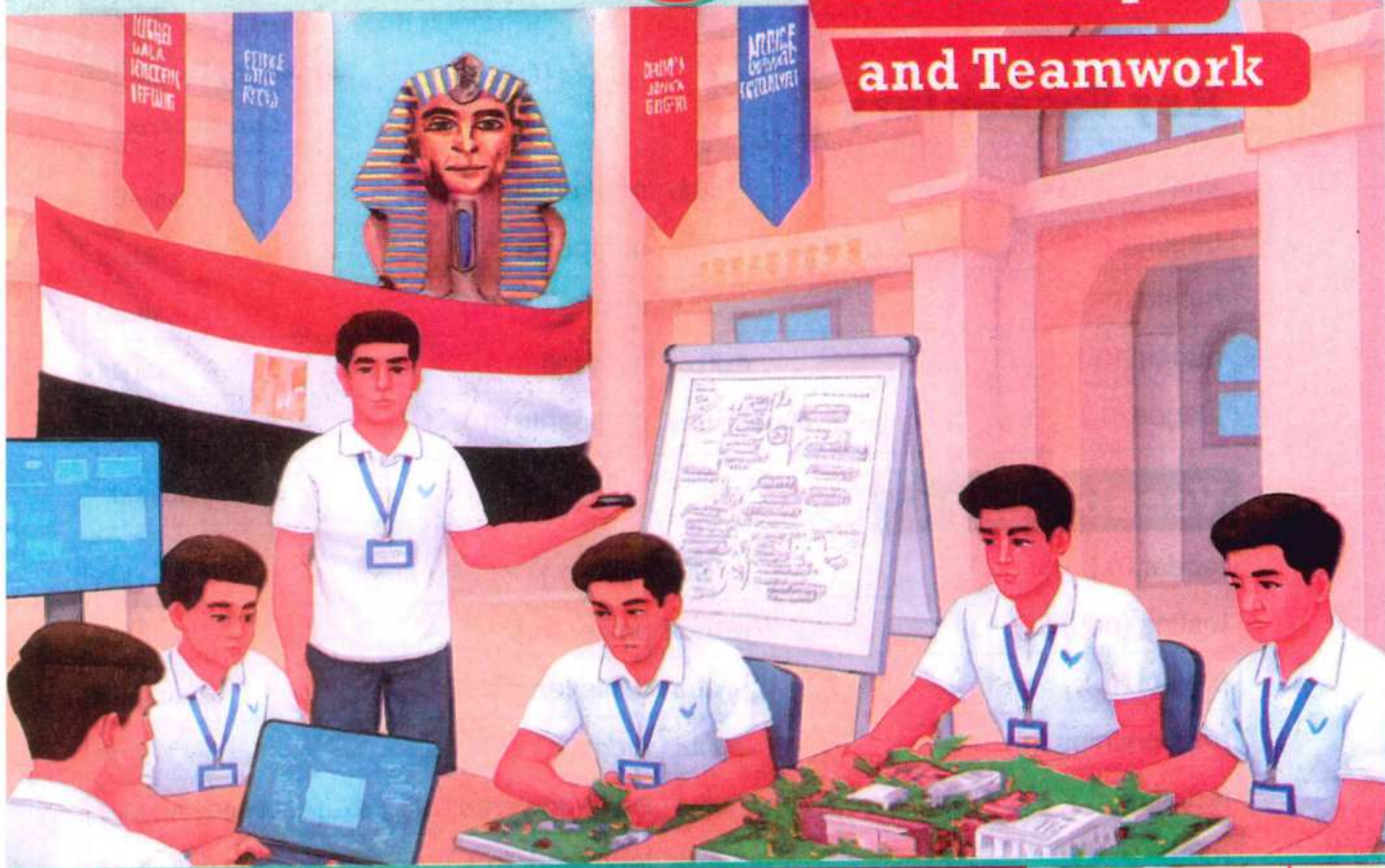
- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- Where did you go?
- 2- What was the most breathtaking moment of the trip?
- 3- What did you do?

- جمل تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة:

- 1- I took an unforgettable trip to
- 2- The most breathtaking moment was
- 3- I took a few shots of the beautiful monuments to share.....- ?

Leadership and Teamwork



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- list the key traits of an effective Egyptian leader
- answer comprehension questions based on the information in the text ,
- identify synonyms for at least four key words related to leadership and teamwork.

Listening:

- identify the gist of stories about leadership and teamwork
- recognize specific details of stories about leadership and teamwork.

Speaking:

- discuss leadership styles in a debate format.
- use at least two well-reasoned arguments to support their viewpoint on what makes an effective leader.

Language:

- accurately transform direct orders and commands into reported speech
- use the structure (told/ ordered/ advised) + [person " + [not] .. to" (verb).

Writing:

- write a short text about your personal leadership goal.



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

emphasize (v.) (d)	يؤكد	marketing (n.)	التسويق
beyond (adv.)	ما وراء	campaign (n.)	حملة
hybrid (adj.)	هجين	inspire (v.) (d)	يلهم
budget (n.)	ميزانية	heritage (n.)	التراث
judges (n.)	حكام / قضاة	prosperity (n.)	الرخاء

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

leader (n.)	قائد	fight (n.)	قتال
lasting (adj.)	مستمر	power (n.)	قوة
project (n.)	مشروع	achievements (n.)	إنجازات
relationships (n.)	علاقات	team (n.)	فريق
temples (n.)	معابد	solar-powered (adj.)	تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
routes (n.)	طرق	teamwork (n.)	العمل الجماعي
cooperation (n.)	تعاون	generate (v.) (d)	يولد
brilliant (adj.)	رائع	pump (n.)	طلمبة / مضخة
wealth (n.)	الثروة	qualities (n.)	خصائص / صفات
glory (n.)	المجد	renewable energy (n.)	الطاقة المتجددة
age (n.)	عصر	mechanics (n.)	الميكانيكا
rule (v. d / n.)	يحكم / حُكم	updates (n.)	تحديثات
civilization (n.)	الحضارة	creativity (n.)	ابتكار
pharaohs (n.)	الفراعنة	customer (n.)	عميل / زبون
peace (n.)	السلام	line (n.)	خط (إنتاج)
trade (n.)	تجارة	pressure (n.)	الضغط
leadership (n.)	قيادة	direction (n.)	اتجاه / توجه

research (n.)	بحث	expand (v.) (ed)	يتوسع
instruct (v.) (ed)	يأمر	construct (v.) (ed)	يشيد
praise (v.) (d)	يمتدح/يثني على	establish (v.) (ed)	يؤسس
increase (v.) (d)	يزيد	mark (v.) (ed)	يميز
shape (v.) (d)	يشكل		



Definitions

heritage (n.)	تراث	the history, traditions ⁽¹⁾ , and culture of a country or family
inspire (v.)	يلهم/يحفز	to make someone feel interested or want to do something good
prosperity (n.)	الرفاهية/الرخاء	a state ⁽²⁾ of being successful and having enough money
emphasize (v.)	يؤكد	show as important
beyond (adv.)	ما وراء	more than; outside of
immense (adj.)	ضخم/هائل	very big or great
hybrid (adj.)	هجين	a mix ⁽³⁾ of two different things
judges (n.)	حكام/قضاة	people who watch or listen and then decide who wins
marketing (n.)	التسويق	the work of telling people about a product ⁽⁴⁾ to help sell it
campaign (n.)	حملة	a plan to share a message ⁽⁵⁾ and reach a goal
budget (n.)	ميزانية	the amount ⁽⁶⁾ of money you can spend

١. تقاليد
٢. حالة
٣. خليط
٤. منتج/سلعة
٥. يشارك رسالة
٦. كمية

Expressions & Prepositions

concentrated on	ركزت على	thanks to	بفضل
rather than	بغض النظر عن	worked on	يعمل على (مشروع)
are still remembered	ما زالت تتذكر	a solar-wind hybrid system	نظام هجين يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية و طاقة الرياح
giving up	التوقف	win first place	يفوز بالمركز الأول
famous for	مشهور بـ	work under pressure	يعمل تحت الضغط
talk about	يتحدث عن	focus on	يركز على
instead of	بدلاً من		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
important (adj.)	هام	significant		unimportant	غير هام
successful (adj.)	ناجح	flourishing		unsuccessful	غير ناجح
distant (adj.)	بعيد	far		near	قريب
brilliant (adj.)	لامع / ذكي	intelligent		stupid	غبى
famous (adj.)	مشهور	known		unknown	غير معروف
increase (v.) (d)	يزيد	rise		decrease	ينقص
praise (v.) (d)	يثني على	compliment		criticize	يلتقد
prosperity (n.)	الرفاهية / الرخاء	welfare		poverty	فقر

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ship	تحول الفعل أو إلى اسم الفاعل إلى اسم عام	leader ^{ship}
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	cooperat ^{ion}
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	success ^{ful}
-ity	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	prosper ^{ity}
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	leader ^{er}

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
leave	يغادر	left	left
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought
lead	يقود	led	led
build	يبني	built	built
show	يوضح	showed	shown



Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 famous (for / as / in)

• famous for مشهور بـ

Ex. Manchester is famous for its football teams.

• famous as مشهور كـ

Ex. Menoufia is famous as the birthplace of several Egyptian presidents.

• famous in مشهور في

- مشهور في (مكان / زمن معين)

Ex. He's famous in Europe, but not in the U.S.

2 golden / gold

• golden (adj) ذهبي

- شكل الذهب

Ex. She has brown eyes and golden hair.

• golden (adj) ذهبي

- ذهبي + فترة زمنية = ناجحة / عظيمة

Ex. The reign of Thutmose III marked a golden age of strength.

• Gold (n) الذهب

Ex. Gold is one of the most expensive metals.

• Gold (adj) ذهبي

- مصنوع من الذهب

Ex. He bought a gold ring for his mother on her birthday.

3 route / road

• route طريق / مسار

- طريق / مسار (بري / جوي / بحري)

Ex. The ship changed its route.

Ex. Is your office on a bus route?

• road طريق (بري)

Ex. Someone was standing in the middle of the road.

4 in the end / at the end

• in the end في النهاية

Ex. "We tried many plans. In the end, we succeeded."

Ex. In the end, everything was okay.

• at the end في نهاية / عند نهاية

Ex. "We went home at the end of the day."

Ex. At the end of the movie, the hero saved his son.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7. The British are famous their love of animals.
a. as b. for c. in d. at
8. He was briefly famous his twenties .
a. as b. for c. in d. at
9. She wore a chain around her neck.
a. material b. plastic c. gold d. metal
10. The motorway is the most direct
a. lane b. route c. street d. road
11. Egypt is famous the Birthplace of Civilization.
a. as b. for c. in d. at
12. The answer is the end of the book.
a. in b. at c. on d. to

Reading

SB Page (89)

SB Page (89)

Great leaders of Ancient Egypt

Egypt has produced some of history's most amazing **leaders**⁽¹⁾ who shaped one of the world's greatest **civilizations**⁽²⁾. They left **heritage**⁽³⁾ that continues to **inspire**⁽⁴⁾ people today.

Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful **female pharaohs**⁽⁵⁾ in Egyptian history.

She **ruled**⁽⁶⁾ Egypt for twenty-two years and brought **peace and prosperity**⁽⁷⁾ to the country.

Hatshepsut **concentrated on**⁽⁸⁾ building projects and trade **relationships**⁽⁹⁾, great **temples**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **important**⁽¹¹⁾ trading **routes**⁽¹²⁾. Her leadership style **emphasized**⁽¹⁴⁾ cooperation rather than **fight**⁽¹⁵⁾.

Pharaoh Thutmose III, was a **brilliant military leader**⁽¹⁶⁾. He **led**⁽¹⁷⁾ **many**⁽¹⁸⁾ successful **campaigns**⁽¹⁹⁾ and brought **immense**⁽²⁰⁾ wealth and power to the country. **Beyond**⁽²¹⁾ his military skills,

استمع إلى النصوص



١. قادة
٢. حضارات
٣. تراث
٤. يلهم
٥. الفراعنة الإناث
٦. حكمت
٧. السلم والرخاء
٨. ركزت على
٩. العلاقات
١٠. معابد
١١. هامة
١٢. طرق
١٣. البعيدة
١٤. أكدت
١٥. القتال
١٦. قائد عسكري ذكي
١٧. قاد
١٨. كثير
١٩. الحملات
٢٠. هائل
٢١. بالإضافة إلى

Thutmose III also built monuments and temples that **celebrated Egypt's glory**⁽²²⁾.
 Ramesses II, known as Ramesses the Great, was famous for his military achievements and great **projects**⁽²³⁾. During his sixty-seven year **rule**⁽²⁴⁾, he built incredible monuments, including the famous Abu Simbel temples.

All these leaders are still remembered as great kings who **showed the power**⁽²⁵⁾ and beauty of ancient Egypt's great civilization.

٢٢. احتفاء بالمجد
 المصري
 ٢٣. مشروعات
 ٢٤. حكم
 ٢٥. أظهرت قوة

Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. How did Queen Hatshepsut make Egypt richer and more peaceful?
2. Why was Thutmose III a great leader?
3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence

1. She concentrated on building projects and established important trade relationships with distant lands, which brought peace and prosperity.
 2. He was a brilliant military leader. He led successful campaigns that brought wealth and power, and also built monuments and temples, marking a golden age of strength and cultural achievements.
 3. Ramesses II, known as Ramesses the Great, is remembered for his military achievements and incredible building projects, such as the Abu Simbel temples, during his long reign.

Answers:



Audio Script SB Page (90)

Two Teamwork Success Stories

Story 1 – School Project Success

Hi, I'm Dina. Our science team from Cairo won the national **competition**⁽¹⁾ with our **renewable energy**⁽²⁾ project. For three months, we worked on a **solar-powered**⁽³⁾ water pump for villages in Upper Egypt. At first, our **design**⁽⁴⁾ wasn't working well under the hot sun. Instead of giving up, Mona, our team leader **encouraged**⁽⁵⁾ us and ordered us to find a better way together. Sandra, who knew about **electricity**⁽⁶⁾ and mechanics, reminded us to do more research. We followed her **advice**⁽⁷⁾, met every day after school, and finally built a solar-wind **hybrid system**⁽⁸⁾. The **judges**⁽⁹⁾ **praised**⁽¹⁰⁾ our creativity and advised us not to stop developing such ideas. In the end, we proudly won **first place**⁽¹¹⁾!

١. مسابقة
٢. الطاقة المتجددة
٣. تدار بالطاقة الشمسية
٤. تصميم
٥. شجعت
٦. الكهرباء
٧. نصيحة
٨. نظام هجين
٩. الحكماء
١٠. مدحوا
١١. المركز الأول

Story 2 – Workplace Challenge

Hi, I'm Hassan. I work in **marketing**⁽¹⁾ in Alexandria. Last year, our company was losing **customers**⁽²⁾, and we had only six weeks to design a **campaign**⁽³⁾ for a new line of Egyptian cotton **products**⁽⁴⁾. We had never worked under such **pressure**⁽⁵⁾. At first, we had too many ideas and no clear direction. Then our **manager**⁽⁶⁾ stepped in. He ordered one group to **focus on**⁽⁷⁾ research, another team to work on the design, and a third team to prepare the **budget**⁽⁸⁾. He also instructed everyone to **share**⁽⁹⁾ updates online every day. By following his plan, we finished two weeks early. The campaign was a **huge success**⁽¹⁰⁾, and **sales**⁽¹¹⁾ increased by 35%!

١. التسويق
٢. العملاء
٣. حملة
٤. منتجات
٥. الضغط
٦. المدير
٧. يركز على
٨. الميزانية
٩. يشارك
١٠. نجاح كبير
١١. المبيعات

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ are people who watch or listen and then decide who wins.
a. Campaigns b. Judges c. Rulers d. Reigns
2. A /An _____ is the amount of money you can spend on a project.
a. trade b. campaign c. budget d. wealth
3. A /An _____ is a plan to share a message and reach a goal.
a. trade b. campaign c. budget d. wealth
4. The _____ is the work of telling people about a product to help sell it.
a. trade b. producing c. budget d. marketing
5. _____ is the history, traditions, and culture of a country or family.
a. Heritage b. Campaign c. Budget d. Judge

Synonyms and antonyms

6. She loved the distant places of Scotland. "Distant" is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. near b. unexciting c. easy d. far
7. She asked some important questions. "Important" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. boring b. significant c. famous d. strong
8. Famous stars attended the party. "Famous" can be replaced by _____.
a. easy b. known c. regional d. unknown

9. I think that's a brilliant idea. "Brilliant" is opposite in meaning to
 a. clever b. stupid c. easy d. bright
10. It was a highly successful campaign. "Successful" can be replaced by
 a. flourishing b. stupid c. failure d. unknown

Prefixes and suffixes

11. The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the word "success".
 a. -ful b. -able c. -ship d. -er
12. To get the noun from the verb "operate", we add the suffix "....."
 a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ion

Guess the meaning

13. Solar and wind power are types of renewable that will not run out.
 a. mechanics b. pressure c. energy d. research
14. The teacher used a red pen to the most important parts of the notes.
 a. hide b. erase c. forget d. emphasize
15. The mountain was tall, and we could see the whole city and the ocean it.
 a. inside b. beyond c. close d. under
16. The king's lasted for fifty peaceful years.
 a. color b. name c. rule d. speed
17. A car uses both gasoline and electricity.
 a. fast b. new c. hybrid d. small
18. We only have a small for the party, so we can't buy expensive decorations.
 a. meal b. budget c. guest d. gift
19. The three listened to the arguments and then made a decision in the court.
 a. runners b. waiters c. judges d. drivers
20. The team created a clever advertisement to sell the new phone.
 a. cooking b. reading c. marketing d. cleaning
21. The politician started a new to talk about her ideas before the election.
 a. campaign b. dinner c. nap d. song
22. A good helps the team work well together and reach their goal.
 a. flower b. leader c. pillow d. chair
23. Exercise can help to your body and make you stronger.
 a. throw b. spill c. shape d. whisper
24. True friendship is a connection that stays strong for many years.
 a. quick b. lasting c. tiny d. loud

Unit 12 Leadership and Teamwork

25. The story of the young athlete will many children to practice sports.
a. bore b. confuse c. inspire d. discourage
26. The new kitten is a, so we decided to name her Lily.
a. male b. female c. car d. tree
27. The teacher the students to open their books to page 10.
a. praised b. researched c. increased d. instructed
28. Our company is designing a campaign for a new of Egyptian cotton products in Upper Egypt.
a. chair b. budget c. line d. tree
29. Wind turbines electricity for the local community.
a. hibernate b. generate c. translate d. educate
30. Feeling a lot of at work can make a person feel very stressed.
a. direction b. pressure c. praise d. customer

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

strength - emphasize - campaign - leader - expectations

The new marketing ① was highly profitable, helping expand the company's empire. The manager, a brilliant female ②, used her ③ to shape a hybrid work model. She chose to ④ cooperation, knowing a strong team could achieve lasting success. This project went beyond expectations, inspiring others with its achievements and generating great wealth.



Language

قواعد لغوية

Reported Orders

- عند تحويل الجملة الأمرية من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر نكتب الآتي:

Reported imperatives, (order, suggestions & advice)

الكلام المنقول في صيغة الأمر (الاقتراحات والنصائح)

Reported imperatives (orders) الكلام المنقول في صيغة الأمر

الجملة الأمرية في الكلام المباشر **Direct imperative**

- تبدأ الجملة الأمرية في الكلام المباشر بـ (مصدر الفعل) في الإثبات، وبـ **Don't / Never + inf** في النفي.

Ex. Open your books.

Ex. Don't shout.

- لتحويل الجملة الأمرية من (مباشر **Direct**) إلى (كلام منقول **Reported**) نتبع الآتي:

① نحول فعل القول (**said / said to**) إلى إحدى أفعال نقل الكلام (**reporting verbs**) الآتية:

أخبر	told	أمر	ordered
أعطى تعليمات	instructed	أمر	commanded
أراد	wanted	طلب	asked
		طلب	requested

② نحذف علامات التنصيص ونستخدم بدلا منها (**to**) إذا كانت الجملة الأمرية مثبتة، أو (**not to**) إذا كانت منفية.

③ تحول الضمائر والأزمنة والظروف كما سبق شرحه.

- وتكون صيغة الجملة الأمرية المحولة لغير المباشر كالتالي:

reporting verb + object + (not) to + inf.

Ex. The teacher said to us, "Open your books." (Direct)

= The teacher **told / asked / ordered us to open** our books. (Reported)

- For Commands Use a reporting verb like "told," "ordered," "asked," "advised," or "commanded."

بالنسبة للأوامر، استخدم فعل تبليغ مثل "أخبر"، "أمر"، "سأل"، "نصح"، أو "أمر".

- The structure is:

[Subject] + [reporting verb] + [person receiving the order] + to + [verb]

Ex. Direct: The teacher **said to me**. "Open **your** book."

- Reported: The teacher **told me to open my** book.

- For negative commands, you simply add "not" before "to."

بالنسبة للأوامر المنفية، يمكنك ببساطة إضافة "**not**" قبل "**to**".

Ex. Direct : The police officer said . "**Don't** move!"

- **Reported:** The police officer ordered him **not to** move.

Rewrite the following direct orders as reported orders:

- اقرأ الأمثلة التالية جيدا

1. The teacher said, "Close your books."
- The teacher told us to close our books.
2. My mother said, "Help your brother with his homework."
- My mother asked me to help my brother with his homework.
3. The coach said to the players, "Run faster!"
- The coach ordered the players to run faster.
4. Our manager said, "Send the report by Monday."
- Our manager told us to send the report by Monday.
5. The doctor said to me, "Take this medicine twice a day."
- The doctor advised me to take that medicine twice a day.

Exercises on Language

1 Rewrite the following direct orders as reported orders:

1. The doctor said to me, "Take these pills twice a day." (advised)

2. My mother said, "Don't forget your lunch box." (told)

3. The sign says, "Please walk on the grass." (tells)

4. The police officer said to the driver, "Stop the car immediately." (ordered)

5. My friend said to her brother, "Help me with this heavy bag." (asked)

6. The boss said to the staff, "Finish the report before noon." (instructed)

7. The librarian said, "Do not make any noise in this section." (told)

8. The coach said to the team, "Run three laps around the field." (told)

9. Sarah said to Tom, "Could you please pass me the salt?" (asked)

10. The tour guide said to the tourists, "Be very careful of the slippery steps." (warned)

11. The teacher said to the class, "Open your books to page fifty-four." (instructed)

12. My father said, "Be home before midnight." (told)

13. The announcement said, "Please fasten your seatbelts." (asked)

14. The officer said to the soldiers, "Fire when you are ready." (ordered)
15. Julia said to her sister, "Wait for me after school." (asked)

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The doctor (said) the patient to stay in bed for three days.
- My mother (said) me not to forget my passport before leaving.
- The sign (said) all visitors to keep off the grass.
- The police chief (said) his officers to patrol the main streets immediately.
- She (suggested) me to study harder if I wanted to pass the exam.
- The coach (warned) the players to practice every day.
- The librarian (suggested) the students to be quiet.
- My father (threatened) me to save some money of my pocket money.
- The boss (said) his assistant to schedule the meeting.
- She (reported) her friend not to touch the hot stove.
- The teacher (begged) the class to bring their books.
- The nurse (said) the patient to stay in bed.
- He (suggested) his wife to take a vacation.
- The security guard (said) the crowd to move back.
- The recipe (warned) the cook to preheat the oven.

Speaking

Ask and answer about "leadership".

سؤال وجواب عن القيادة:

Question

1. Don't you think that real leaders are born with special qualities, like confidence and courage, that cannot be taught?

- ألا تعتقد أن القادة الحقيقيين يولدون بصفات خاصة، مثل الثقة والشجاعة، والتي لا يمكن تعليمها؟

2. How can you describe a leader?

- كيف تصف القائد؟

Answer

- I disagree. Leadership skills, such as communication and decision making, can be learned and improved through practice and experience.

- لا أوافقك الرأي. مهارات القيادة، كالتواصل واتخاذ القرار، يمكن تعلمها وتحسينها من خلال الممارسة والخبرة.

- A leader is a person who guides a group. They help everyone know where to go and what to do.

- القائد هو الشخص الذي يوجه مجموعة، ويساعد الجميع على معرفة أين يتجهون وماذا يفعلون.

3. How does a supportive leader help their team members?

- كيف يُساعد القائد الداعم أعضاء فريقه؟

4. How does a good leader inspire their team to do their best?

كيف يُلهم القائد الجيد فريقه لبذل قصارى جهدهم؟

- A supportive leader helps their team by listening to problems and ideas.

- يُساعد القائد الداعم فريقه من خلال الاستماع إلى المشاكل والأفكار.

- A good leader inspires the team by working hard and having a positive attitude, so the team wants to do the same.

- يُلهم القائد الجيد الفريق بالعمل الجاد والسلوك الإيجابي، فيرغب الفريق في فعل الشيء نفسه.

General Exercises



on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialog:

Basma and Rehab are talking about her new mobile

Basma : Is this mobile new?

Rehab : ①

Basma : Who bought it for you?

Rehab : ②

Basma : ③ ?

Rehab : Because I passed my final exams.

Basma : ④ ?

Rehab : It costs 5000 pounds.

Basma : ⑤ ?

Rehab : Yes, I know it can go on the internet .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the 1960s , French engineers helped to design the world's first passenger plane which could fly faster than the speed of sound. It was called Concorde. It could carry 100 passengers but was noisy and used a lot of fuel. Concorde flew from 1969 until 2003.

Now . French and Japanese engineers are designing a new passengers plane that will be able to fly more than double the speed of sound" about 1200 kilometres an hour"

Engineers predict the new plane will be ready by 2050. It will be much quieter than Concorde and it will be able to carry 250 passengers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How will the new plane be better than Concorde?

a. It will be cheaper	b. It will be noisier
c. It will be quieter and larger	d. It will be ready soon
2. The underlined word "it" refers to

a. Sound	b. the French	c. Concorde	d. fuel
----------	---------------	-------------	---------
3. The new plane will be able to fly

a. 600 kilometres an hour"	b. 1200 kilometres an hour
c. 1800 kilometres an hour"	d. 2400 kilometres an hour"

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is this article about ?

.....

5. When did Concorde stop flying ?

.....

6. How many passengers did Concorde carry?

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My class is working on a history about ancient Egypt.

a. spoon	b. project	c. shoe	d. cloud
----------	------------	---------	----------
2. It is important to have good with your family and friends.

a. problems	b. relationships	c. walls	d. noises
-------------	------------------	----------	-----------
3. Ancient people built huge to honor their gods.

a. cars	b. houses	c. temples	d. clothes
---------	-----------	------------	------------
4. The map showed the different we could take to get to the beach.

a. routes	b. meals	c. sounds	d. colors
-----------	----------	-----------	-----------
5. The building was finished quickly because of good between all workers.

a. fighting	b. sleeping	c. cooperation	d. silence
-------------	-------------	----------------	------------
6. She had a idea for solving the difficult math problem.

a. stupid	b. common	c. brilliant	d. slow
-----------	-----------	--------------	---------
7. The small company plans to its business and open new stores.

a. shrink	b. expand	c. hide	d. forget
-----------	-----------	---------	-----------

Unit 12 Leadership and Teamwork

8. The person had great _____, owning many houses and expensive cars.
a. noise b. wealth c. health d. luck
9. Winning the gold medal brought the athlete great _____ and fame.
a. sadness b. worry c. glory d. sleep
10. The golden _____ of the city was a time when everything was successful.
a. age b. rain c. box d. food
11. He needed a lot of _____ to lift the heavy box.
a. weakness b. thought c. strength d. fear
12. She listed her best _____ on her resume, such as her diplomas and awards.
a. mistakes b. complaints c. achievements d. shoes
13. Our football _____ practiced every day before the big game.
a. team b. book c. light d. rope
14. We have _____ panels on the roof to use the sun's energy for electricity.
a. oil-powered b. wind-powered c. water-powered d. solar-powered
15. Good _____ is necessary for everyone in the group to finish the task successfully.
a. fighting b. confusion c. teamwork d. anger

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father said to us, "Always tell the truth."
_____ (told)
2. The lifeguard said to us, "Don't swim beyond the red flags!"
_____ (warned)
3. The instructor said to the students, "Hand in your assignments by Friday."
_____ (asked)
4. The mechanic said to me, "Come back next week for the final check."
_____ (told)
5. He said to the children, "Do not touch the wet paint."
_____ (ordered)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The children (warned) their father to buy them ice cream.
2. The coach (said) the runner to keep going even when he felt tired.
3. The flight attendant (suggested) all passengers to fasten their seatbelts.
4. He (said) the neighbors not to make so much noise late at night.
5. The beggar (threatened) passers-by to give him some money for food.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"What should a good leader do?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What should a good leader do?
- 2- What do they need to understand?
- 3- What should they provide for their teams?
- 4- Should they encourage and praise teamwork?

- جمل تساعدك علي كتابة الفقرة:

- 1- Good leader should first listen
- 2- They need to understand different ideas and.....
- 3- They should show



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

conflicts (n.)	صراعات	inspire (v.) (d)	يلهم
doubt (n.)	شك	guide (v.) (d)	يرشد / يدل
empathy (n.)	تعاطف	trust (v. ed)	يثق في
modesty (n.)	تواضع	adapt (v. ed)	يتأقلم
motivated (adj.)	متحفز	discourage (v. d)	يثبط العزيمة
powerful (adj.)	قوي		

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

effective (adj.)	فعال	research (v.) (ed)	يبحث
job title (n.)	المسمى الوظيفي	share (v.) (d)	يشارك
clearly (adv.)	بوضوح	communicate (v.) (d)	يتواصل
feelings (n.)	مشاعر	achieve (v.) (d)	ينجز
viewpoints (n.)	وجهات نظر	peacefully (adv.)	بسلام
emotional (adj.)	عاطفي	intelligence (n.)	ذكاء
feedback (n.)	تعليق / مراجعة	respectful (adj.)	محترم للآخرين
leadership (n.)	قيادة	adaptable (adj.)	قابل للتكيف
goals (n.)	أهداف	improve (v.) (d)	يحسن
key qualities (n.)	الصفات الأساسية	celebrate (v.) (d)	يحتفل
vision (n.)	رؤية	adjust (v.) (ed)	يعدل
progress (n.)	تقدم	admit (v.) (ted)	يعترف
trust (n.)	الثقة	attack (v.) (ed)	يهاجم
honesty (n.)	الأمانة	willingness (n.)	إرادة
purpose (n.)	غرض	develop (v.) (ed)	ينمي / يطور
confidence (n.)	ثقة	deny (v.) (ied)	ينكر
shared (adj.)	مشترك	temporary (adj.)	مؤقت

Expressions & Prepositions

connect with	يرتبط بـ	ask for	يطلب
ready to	مستعد لـ	go beyond	يذهب إلى ما وراء
set goals	يضع أهداف	builds trust	تبني الثقة
welcome new ideas	يرحب بالأفكار الجديدة	break them into steps	يحولها إلى خطوات
earns respect	تكتسب الاحترام		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
powerful	قوي	effective		weak	ضعيف
guide	يرشد	lead		mislead	يضل
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust		reject	يرفض
pride	كبرياء	dignity		modesty	تواضع
doubt	يشك	hesitate		make sure	يتأكد
discourage	يحبط/يثبط	dishearten		encourage	يشجع
temporary	مؤقت	provisional		lasting	مستمر
modern	حديث	new		ancient	قديم

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ive	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	effective
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	clearly/ carefully
-al	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	emotional
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	respectful
-able	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	adaptable

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يوضح	showed	shown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
build	يبني	build	build
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept



1 improve/ prove

• **Improve** يحسن

Ex. Let's hope the weather **improves** before Saturday.

• **Prove** يثبت/ يبرهن

Ex. I will **prove** to you that I'm right.

2 allow / let

• **allow+ obj+ to + inf** يسمح

Ex. My parents wouldn't **allow** me **to go** to the party.

• **let + obj+ inf** يسمح

Ex. My parents wouldn't **let** me **go** to the party.

3 communicate/ connect

• **communicate with** يتواصل مع

Ex. I **communicate with** Ali by email.

• **Connect (to – with)** يربط بـ - يوصل

Ex. Please, **connect** this hose **to** the water tap.

Ex. The new Monorail **connects** the new cities **with** Cairo.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a course for students wishing to their English

- a. approve b. improve c. prove d. disapprove

2. You're wrong, and I can it.

- a. approve b. improve c. prove d. disapprove

3. Don't your problems to destroy your life.

- a. make b. let c. solve d. allow

4. the speakers to the CD player.

- a. Communicate b. Contact c. Connect d. Tie

5. Many parents find it difficult to with their teenage sons or daughters.

- a. communicate b. contact c. connect d. concentrate

Reading

SB Page (94)

SB Page (94)

استمع إلى النص



What Makes an Effective leader?

Modern leadership **research**⁽¹⁾ shows that the most **effective**⁽²⁾ leaders share **key qualities**⁽³⁾ that help them **inspire**⁽⁴⁾ teams, solve problems, and achieve **goals**⁽⁵⁾. These qualities are about how **leaders**⁽⁶⁾ connect with and **guide**⁽⁷⁾ others.

Great leaders **communicate**⁽⁸⁾ clearly and listen carefully. They understand others' feelings and **viewpoints**⁽⁹⁾, which builds trust and help solve **conflicts**⁽¹⁰⁾ peacefully. Emotional **intelligence**⁽¹¹⁾ allows them to build respectful, strong team **relationships**⁽¹²⁾. They also stay **adaptable**⁽¹³⁾, ready to adjust plans, welcome new ideas, and trust their teams.



Successful leaders also have a clear **vision**⁽¹⁴⁾. They **set** **goals**⁽¹⁵⁾, break them into **steps**⁽¹⁶⁾, and celebrate **progress**⁽¹⁷⁾ to keep teams **motivated**⁽¹⁸⁾. Importantly, the best leaders never stop learning. They **admit**⁽¹⁹⁾ mistakes, ask for **feedback**⁽²⁰⁾, and work to improve. This modesty earns respect and encourages their teams to grow, too. Leadership isn't about having all the answers, but about guiding others with **honesty**⁽²¹⁾, purpose, and a **willingness**⁽²²⁾ to develop. In today's world, the most successful leaders are those who lead with both **confidence**⁽²³⁾ and **empathy**⁽²⁴⁾, supporting their teams to achieve **shared success**⁽²⁵⁾.

١. بحث
٢. فعال
٣. الصفات الأساسية
٤. يلهم
٥. أهداف
٦. قادة
٧. يرشد
٨. يتواصل
٩. وجهات النظر
١٠. الصراعات
١١. الذكاء
١٢. علاقات
١٣. قابل للتكيف
١٤. رؤية
١٥. يحدد أهداف
١٦. خطوات
١٧. التقدم
١٨. متحفزة
١٩. يعترف
٢٠. التعليق
٢١. الأمانة
٢٢. الإرادة
٢٣. الثقة
٢٤. تعاطف
٢٥. النجاح المشترك

Exercises on Vocabulary
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Definitions

1. Something which is _____, is delicate and easily damaged.
 a. weak b. strong c. powerful d. easy
2. To be _____ means feeling extremely tired or loss of energy.
 a. weak b. strong c. powerful d. energetic
3. To _____ means to journey or travel over or through.
 a. discover b. invent c. explore d. supply
4. A _____ Is something that fills you with surprise and admiration.
 a. conflict b. wonder c. trust d. modesty

Synonyms and Antonyms

5. Good teamwork is a powerful tool. The opposite of the word " powerful " is _____.
 a. effective b. shy c. weak d. strong
6. Teenagers need adults to guide them. Guide is similar in meaning to _____.
 a. travel b. lead c. mislead d. ignore
7. It is hard to adapt to the new school. "Adapt" can be replaced by _____.
 a. live b. reject c. adjust d. apply
8. Success in sport is a source of national pride. The opposite of "Pride" be is _____.
 a. success b. dignity c. modesty d. honesty
9. She discouraged me from going. The opposite of "discouraged" is _____.
 a. disheartened b. rejected c. adjusted d. encouraged

Prefixes & Suffixes

10. To get the adjective from the word " effect", we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ful b. -able c. -ship d. -ive
11. The suffix "_____ " gives the adjective of the word "emotion".
 a. -ful b. -al c. -ship d. -er
12. To get the adjective from the verb "respect" , we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ment b. -ful c. -ship d. -ion
13. To get the adjective from the word " adapt ", we add the suffix "_____".
 a. -ful b. -able c. -ship d. -ive

Guess the meaning

14. The teacher will _____ the students through the science project.
 a. achieve b. wonder c. allow d. guide
15. She showed _____ when her friend was sad.
 a. empathy b. wonder c. trust d. modesty
16. The team was _____ to win the game.
 a. respectful b. motivated c. trust d. modest
17. He won the race but showed _____ by saying, "I was just lucky."
 a. conflict b. wonder c. trust d. modesty
18. The _____ between the two team members was solved after they understood each other's point of view.
 a. conflict b. wonder c. trust d. modesty
19. The teacher wanted to _____ her students to do their best.
 a. attack b. inspire c. adjust d. admit
20. A good manager will _____ the team through difficult projects.
 a. guide b. celebrate c. stay d. pack
21. The two countries had many _____ over the border.
 a. feelings b. feedback c. conflicts d. purpose
22. He felt great _____ for the lost puppy, so he gave it some food.
 a. modesty b. empathy c. confidence d. honesty
23. Despite his fame, the scientist was known for his _____.
 a. feedback b. empathy c. modesty d. job title
24. They lived in a _____ house with smart technology.
 a. effective b. shared c. modern d. emotional
25. It is kind to _____ your toys with your friends.
 a. attack b. adjust c. share d. celebrate
26. My official _____ is "Senior Software Engineer."
 a. job title b. purpose c. honesty d. feedback
27. It is important to _____ your ideas during the meeting.
 a. communicate b. welcome c. attack d. admit
28. Please speak _____ so that everyone can understand you.
 a. emotionally b. effectively c. clearly d. modernly

Unit 12 Leadership and Teamwork

29. It's okay to talk about your _____, like happiness or sadness.
a. conflicts b. feelings c. confidence d. viewpoints
30. We should listen to different _____ before making a decision.
a. viewpoints b. purposes c. feedback d. feelings
31. The movie was so _____ that it made everyone cry.
a. effective b. motivated c. emotional d. clear

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

viewpoints - inspire - conflicts - empathy - celebrate

A good leader can guide and ① _____ a team. They communicate their vision clearly and welcome different ② _____. With honesty and ③ _____, they handle ④ _____ effectively. This creates a shared purpose, making everyone feel motivated and valued. They celebrate successes, which helps the team stay united and strong.

3 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN words on the following:

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"What Makes an Effective Leader?"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- 1- What does an effective leader do?
- 2-What qualities should an effective leader have?
- 3-Do good leaders listen or speak more?
- 4- Do they support every one in the team or only some members of the team?



استمع إلى المفردات

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

role (n.)	دور	researcher (n.)	باحث
organize (v.) (d)	ينظم	topic (n.)	موضوع
presentation	عرض تقديمي	information (n.)	معلومات
detailed (adj.)	مفصل	schedule (n.)	جدول مواعيد
perfect (adj.)	كامل / ممتاز	coordinator (n.)	منسق
deadline (n.)	مهلة / موعد نهائي	creative (adj.)	مبدع
practicing (n.)	ممارسة	resolve (v.) (d)	يحل / يسوي
software (n.)	برامج	semester (n.)	الفصل الدراسي
slides (n.)	شرائح	notice (v.) (d)	لاحظ
official (adj.)	رسمي	strength (n.)	نقطة قوة
main (adj.)	أساسي		

Expressions & Prepositions

good at	جيد في	work together	يعملوا معا
keep track of deadlines	يحافظ على المواعيد النهائية	make sure	يتأكد
practice makes a difference.	الممارسة تصنع الفارق	get better	يتحسن
working out well	يعطي نتيجة جيدة	That sounds great	هذا يبدو عظيم
That works	هذا يعمل جيدا	I'd like to	أريد أن.....
I agree completely	أوافق تماما		



Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
creative	مبدع / مبتكر	innovative		uncreative	غير مبدع
different	مختلف	varied		similar	مشابه
official	رسمي	formal		unofficial	غير رسمي
main	أساسي	chief		minor	غير أساسي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ful	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	powerful
-al	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	natural
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	absolutely
-able	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	forgettable
-ing	تحول الفعل أو الاسم إلى صفة	exciting

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة	
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرأ	read	read
find	يجد	found	found
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
make	يصنع/يعمل	made	made
take	ياخذ	took	taken
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 good at / good for

• good at جيد/ماهر في

Ex. Alex is very good at languages..

• good for مفيد لـ

Ex. Fresh fruit and vegetables are good for you.

2 role / rule

• role (n) دور

Ex. Mothers play an important role in their children's success.

• rule (n) قاعدة

Ex. At school, we must follow the rules.

• rule (v) يحكم

Ex. Do you know who rules France?

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These products are good the environment.

- a. of b. at c. for d. to

2. Raneem is good speaking Spanish.

- a. of b. at c. for d. to

3. He played an important in the company's success.

- a. ruler b. role c. rule d. roll

4. The of the game are quite simple.

- a. rulers b. roles c. rules d. rolls

Reading

SB Page 99

Discussing Team Roles

استمع إلى النص



Maher: We need to **organize**⁽¹⁾ our group presentation for next week. What **role**⁽²⁾ does everyone want to take?

Ramy: I'd like to be the main **researcher**⁽³⁾. I've been reading a lot about our topic, and I enjoy finding detailed information.

Hazem: That 's perfect! I'm good at organizing **schedules**⁽⁴⁾ and keeping track of **deadlines**⁽⁵⁾. I can be our project coordinator.

Maher: Great! I think I work best as a **creative**⁽⁶⁾ person. I've been practicing with presentation **software**⁽⁷⁾, and I have some ideas for making our slides more interesting.

Ramy: What about you, Ahmed? You're always so good at helping people work together.

١. ينظم
٢. دور
٣. باحث
٤. جداول مواعيد
٥. مهلة/موعد
٦. نهائي
٧. مبدع
٨. برامج

Ahmed: Thanks! I guess I'm naturally a team **supporter**⁽⁸⁾. I like making sure everyone's ideas are heard and helping resolve any **disagreements**⁽⁹⁾.

Hazem: This is working out well. We all have different **strengths**⁽¹⁰⁾, and they **complement**⁽¹¹⁾ each other perfectly.

Maher: Exactly ! I've noticed that our best group **projects**⁽¹²⁾ happen when everyone plays to their strengths.

Ahmed: And we've been getting **better**⁽¹³⁾ at teamwork each semester. **Practice**⁽¹⁴⁾ really makes a difference.

Ramy: So, when should we have our first official planning meeting?

٨. مساند
٩. عدم اتفاق
١٠. نقاط قوة
١١. مختلفة
١٢. يكمل
١٣. مشاريع
١٤. يتحسن
١٥. التمرين / الممارسة



Speaking

Useful Expressions

• تعبيرات مفيدة

Talking About Roles:

التحدث عن الأدوار

I'd like to be أرغب في أن أكون
I'm good at ... أجيد...
I work best as... أعمل بشكل أفضل عندما...
I'm naturally a.. أنا بطبيعتي...
My strength is.. نقطة قوتي هي...
I enjoy ... استمتع...

Describing Team Dynamics:

وصف ديناميكيات الفريق

We complement each other نُكَمِّل بعضنا البعض
Everyone plays to their strengths يُوظَّف كلُّ منا نقاط قوته.
We work well together نعمل معًا بشكل جيد.
Our skills balance each other out مهارتنا تُوازِن بعضها البعض.

Making Suggestions:

تقديم اقتراحات

How about if I.. ? ماذا لو... ؟
What if we.. ? ماذا لو... ؟
I think it would be good if... أعتقد أنه سيكون من الجيد لو...
Maybe we should... ربما يجب علينا...
We could try.. يمكننا المحاولة...

Expressing Agreement:

التعبير عن الموافقة

That 's perfect ! رائع!
Great idea! فكرة رائعة!
That works well هذا جيد.
That makes sense هذا منطقي.
I agree completely أوافق تمامًا.
Absolutely! بالتأكيد!

Read and complete the following dialog.

That sounds great - That works - I agree completely - I'd like to

Mona : Hey, Rodayna! What's your preferred role in group work? Why?

Rodayna : Hi Mona! ① be the organizer.
I'm good at keeping track of tasks and making sure everything runs smoothly.

Mona : ②! What makes a team successful?

Rodayna : A team is successful when everyone plays to their strengths. We complement each other and work well together.

Mona : I agree! How do you handle disagreements in teams?

Rodayna : I listen to everyone's views and suggest regular check-ins. What do you think?

Mona : ③ well! What's the worst team experience you've had?

Rodayna : When we didn't communicate well and some felt left out?

Mona : ④! When we communicate well, everything comes together perfectly.



Writing Tip

Writing a short text كتابة نص قصير

• When writing a short text

عند كتابة نص قصير:

- Focus on one idea
- Keep sentences simple
- Use clear vocabulary
- Start with an introduction
- Follow with the main point
- End with a conclusion

- ركز على فكرة واحدة
- اجعل الجمل بسيطة
- استخدم مفردات واضحة
- ابدأ بمقدمة
- تابع بالفكرة الرئيسية
- أنه بخاتمة

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

communication - problem - cooperation - decision inspire - achieve

My Leadership Goal

I want to become a better leader. To do this, I will improve my ① skills by working with my team and listening to everyone's ideas. I will focus on team ② and help solve any ③ we face together. I also want to ④ others by encouraging them to do their best. ⑤ making is important, so I will practice making choices that help the group. In the future, I hope to be a leader who helps others ⑥ their goals.

Exercises on Vocabulary**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:****Synonyms and Antonyms**

1. He found a creative solution to the problem. "Creative" is similar in meaning to.....
a. boring b. favourite c. innovative d. strong
2. This is the company's official logo. The antonym of "official" is.....
a. favorite b. formal c. unofficial d. necessary
3. What is the main aim of the meeting? "Main" is similar in meaning to.....
a. minor b. secondary c. unofficial d. chief

Prefixes and Suffixes

4. The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the word "power".
a. -ful b. -able c. -ship d. -er
5. To get the adjective from the verb "forget", we add the suffix".....".
a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ion

Guess the meaning

6. What is the of a firefighter in an emergency?
a. sleep b. role c. book d. pencil
7. We need to a party for our friend's birthday next month.
a. organize b. eat c. forget d. sell
8. She is going to give a about her recent travels.
a. presentation b. shoe c. song d. break
9. The doctor asked for a description of the patient's symptoms.
a. slow b. short c. detailed d. happy
10. This gold medal shows that the athlete's performance was
a. difficult b. perfect c. rough d. early
11. The for paying the bill is tomorrow, so don't be late.
a. deadline b. floor c. phone d. window
12. You need to install new to edit videos on your computer.
a. chair b. money c. software d. juice
13. The teacher showed the class a series of with pictures from history.
a. slides b. rocks c. hats d. trees
14. The school sent an letter to all parents about the new rules.
a. silly b. official c. quiet d. brown
15. What is the reason you decided to study abroad?
a. main b. small c. wet d. thin

16. She works as a at the university, studying human behavior.
a. baker b. waiter c. researcher d. driver
17. The children chose a fun for their group project: space travel.
a. spoon b. topic c. sock d. cloud
18. Where can I find reliable about local history?
a. information b. dirt c. noise d. clothes
19. Let's check the to see what time the meeting starts tomorrow.
a. spoon b. schedule c. cloud d. car
20. The event made sure all the different parts of the show ran smoothly.
a. coordinator b. baker c. swimmer d. pilot
21. We need to together to finish this big project on time.
a. do b. work c. take d. fight
22. Please, sure the door is locked before you leave the house.
a. try b. make c. hope d. leave
23. I want to better at playing the guitar this year.
a. improve b. get c. sell d. stop
24. It's important to track of deadlines so you don't miss any appointments.
a. lose b. keep c. ignore d. watch

General Exercises



on Lessons 5&6

1 Finish the following dialog:

Omar meets a tourist

Omar : Welcome to Egypt!

Tourist : Thank you.

Omar : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : ① before.

Omar : ② ?

Tourist : I come from England.

Omar : ③ ?

Tourist : I visited Luxor and Aswan.

Omar : How do you like Egypt?

Tourist : ④

Omar : I wish you good luck.

Tourist : ⑤

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a useful and important habit in our modern life. We read books when we are alone or have free time. A lot of people prefer watching television but I like reading

Unit 12 Leadership and Teamwork

because it widens my mind. I can find new ideas and a lot of information which help me to make my life better. It gives me the chance to think and dream. Although we live in the age of computer, the internet and there is a television set in every house, we need to read books which are easier to carry and move with us everywhere and every time. Try to read a book in the shade of a tree in a garden or a field and I am sure you will enjoy it very much.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- people prefer watching TV.
a. A few b. Much c. Many d. Little
- The underlined word "It" refers to
a. computer b. the internet c. reading d. television
- When can you read books?
a. When we are busy b. When we are dreaming.
d. When we are in a garden . d. When we have free time.

B. Answer the following questions :

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- Why is reading important and useful?
.....
- Where can you read a book?
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He is very and often comes up with new ideas.
a. boring b. heavy c. creative d. sleepy
- The neighbors met to the problem with the loud music.
a. forget b. open c. resolve d. grow
- This college course lasts for one full
a. shoe b. semester c. hour d. sandwich
- Did you that the office furniture has been changed?
a. notice b. forget c. close d. hide
- Teamwork is a major of our small company.
a. weakness b. strength c. fear d. shadow
- My sister is good singing and plays the piano well.
a. at b. about c. of d. in

7. The coach kept saying, to motivate the players.
 a. you should stop b. practice makes a difference
 c. don't worry about it d. it's too late
8. The new marketing campaign is and sales are increasing.
 a. failing b. working out well
 c. being ignored d. causing problems
9. Can we have the meeting at 10 AM? "Yes, for me."
 a. that works b. that fails c. that is slow d. that is old
10. "I think we should choose the blue design." "replied his partner.
 a. I feel sick b. I agree completely
 c. I have no idea d. I want to leave
11. The students decided totogether on the difficult science project.
 a. stop b. work c. take d. hide
12. Please that all the windows are closed before the storm.
 a. make sure b. forget c. ignore d. ruin
13. I need to at speaking Spanish before my trip to Madrid.
 a. get better b. get slower c. get worse d. get quiet
14. "A weekend trip to the beach?, " she said happily.
 a. That sounds terrible b. That sounds great
 c. That sounds boring d. That sounds empty
15. I'd like eat dinner early tonight because I'm very hungry.
 a. to b. for c. that d. at

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"My trip to Luxor and Aswan"

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. How was your trip to Luxor and Aswan?
2. What is Luxor called?
3. How was the atmosphere there?
4. What was the best part of the trip?

Review on Unit 12

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

emphasize (v.) (d)	يؤكد	doubt (n.)	شك
beyond (adv.)	ما وراء	empathy (n.)	تعاطف
hybrid (adj.)	هجين	modesty (n.)	تواضع
budget (n.)	ميزانية	motivated (adj.)	متحفز
judges (n.)	حكام / قضاة	powerful (adj.)	قوي
marketing (n.)	التسويق	inspire (v.) (d)	يلهم
campaign (n.)	حملة	guide (v.) (d)	يرشد / يدل
inspire (v.) (d)	يلهم	trust (v. ed)	يثق في
heritage (n.)	التراث	adapt (v. ed)	يتأقلم
prosperity (n.)	الرخاء	discourage (v. d)	يثبط العزيمة
conflicts (n.)	صراعات		



Language

قواعد لغوية

Reported Orders

- عند تحويل الجملة الأمرية من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

Reported imperatives, (order, suggestions & advice)

الكلام المنقول في صيغة الأمر (الاقتراحات والنصائح)

Reported imperatives (orders) الكلام المنقول في صيغة الأمر

Direct imperative الجملة الأمرية في الكلام المباشر

- تبدأ الجملة الأمرية في الكلام المباشر بـ (مصدر الفعل) في الإثبات، وبـ **Don't / Never + inf** في النفي.

Ex. Close the windows.

Ex. Don't make noise.

- لتحويل الجملة الأمرية من (مباشر **Direct**) إلى (كلام منقول **Reported**) نتبع الآتي:
 ① نحول فعل القول **said / said to** إلى إحدى أفعال نقل الكلام (**reporting verbs**) الآتية:

أخبر	told	أمر	ordered
أعطى تعليمات	instructed	أمر	commanded
أراد	wanted	طلب	asked
		طلب	requested

② نحذف علامات التنصيص ونستخدم بدلا منها **(to)** إذا كانت الجملة الأمرية مثبتة، أو **(not to)** إذا كانت منفية.

③ تحول الضمائر والأزمنة والظروف كما سبق شرحه.

- وتكون صيغة الجملة الأمرية المحولة لغير المباشر كالآتي:

reporting verb + object + (not) to + inf.

Ex. The teacher said to us, "Take out your books. (Direct)

= The teacher **told / asked / ordered** us to take out our books. (Reported)

- For Commands Use a reporting verb like "told", "ordered", "asked", "advised", or "commanded".

بالنسبة للأوامر، استخدم فعل تبليغ مثل "أخبر"، "أمر"، "سال"، "نصح"، أو "أمر".

- The structure is:

[Subject] + [reporting verb] + [person receiving the order] + to + [verb]

Ex. Direct: The teacher **said to** me. "Open **your** book."

- Reported: The teacher **told** me **to** open **my** book.

- For negative commands, you simply add "not" before "to."

بالنسبة للأوامر المنفية، يمكنك ببساطة إضافة "**not**" قبل "**to**".

Ex. Direct : The police officer said . "Don't move!"

- **Reported:** The police officer ordered him **not to** move.

Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

A good leader should first listen carefully to everyone on the team. They need to understand different ideas and feelings. Next, a leader must set a clear goal so the team knows exactly what they are working toward. They should show the way by working hard themselves, acting as a great example for others to follow. A good leader doesn't just give orders; they support the team and provide the tools and help needed to succeed. When things go wrong, they take responsibility and help find solutions instead of blaming others. Finally, they should encourage and praise people for their hard work and achievements. This makes the team feel valued, builds trust, and helps everyone grow stronger together. Teamwork and respect are the keys to their success.

Lessons 3

An effective leader is someone who guides others well. They are not just a boss. First, they must be good at listening. They hear ideas and problems from their team. Second, they need to communicate clearly. Everyone should understand the goal and their role. Third, a good leader is honest and trustworthy. People follow someone they believe in. They also stay calm during problems and make smart decisions. A great leader helps their team grow and succeed. They do not take all the credit for success. They support everyone and are fair. Finally, they work hard and set a strong example. In short, an effective leader brings people together to achieve a common goal.

Lessons 5 & 6

My trip to Luxor and Aswan was the most amazing adventure. First, we flew to Luxor, which is often called the world's greatest open-air museum. We spent a whole day exploring the gigantic Karnak Temple. Walking through its huge columns felt like stepping back in time. The next day, we visited the Valley of the Kings. It was incredible to go down into the tombs of ancient pharaohs. We then took a nice train ride south to the beautiful city of Aswan. The atmosphere there is so calm and peaceful. We took a small boat to visit the lovely Philae Temple, which is on an island. We also saw the huge Aswan High Dam. The best part was a felucca boat ride on the Nile River at sunset. The water was so calm, and the sky was full of colors. I also bought a beautiful handmade scarf from the local market. The people in both cities were very kind and friendly. I loved learning about the ancient history and enjoying the beautiful scenery. It was a perfect holiday that I will never forget.

Al-Azhar Test

Basketball is my favorite sport. I really enjoy playing basketball. It is a fun and fast game that you play with a team. I like the feeling of dribbling the ball down the court. The best part is when I score a basket and help my team. Playing this sport is also a great way to stay active with my friends.

Test on Unit 12

Egypt is a fantastic place for tourists because it is like a giant, open-air museum. It is famous for its ancient history and incredible pyramids. Visitors can stand before the Great Pyramids of Giza and the mysterious Sphinx, which are amazing to see.

A trip down the Nile River is very peaceful and shows you beautiful views and old temples. You can also see the amazing treasures from King Tut's tomb in the Grand Egyptian Museum. For a change, the Red Sea has very clear blue water. It is perfect for swimming and seeing colorful fish. The weather in Egypt is usually sunny and warm, which is great for a holiday. Egyptian people are very friendly and welcoming to visitors. The food is also delicious, with dishes like koshary. It is a unique country where you can explore deserts, sail a river, and learn about pharaohs all in one trip.

Al Azhar

Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdi : Hello, when did you arrive in Egypt?

Tourist : Two days ago.

Magdi : How do you like Egypt?

Tourist : ①

Magdi : ②

Tourist : I'm staying at Hilton Hotel.

Magdi : ③

Tourist : Just a week.

Magdi: I wish you a happy stay in Egypt.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main of a teacher in a classroom is to help students learn.

- a. role b. reel c. rule d. roller

2. Before the trip, we need to our clothes in the suitcase.

- a. make b. organize c. throw d. buy

3. The doctor the patient to rest for 3 days.

- a. said b. warned c. advised d. begged

4. The instructor the swimmers to jump into the pool then.

- a. said b. told c. threatened d. begged

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

get - notice - semester - strength - schedule

I agree completely that my new study ① is working out well. I want to ② better at math this ③, so I am practicing every day. I must notice my weak areas. My ④ is reading, so I organize that time easily. Remember, practice makes a difference.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mother told me (cleaning) my room immediately.

2. The general commanded the soldiers (attack) at dawn.

3. The sign warned the drivers (not exceeding) the speed limit.
4. She (said) him to study for the test every night.

5 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are about 285 million people in the world who are blind or find it difficult to see. However, not many of these people can read Braille. The problem is that Braille books are not cheap. The cost of making a Braille book is four or five times more than any other book. Technology can help blind people. Some of them can listen to news and information on smartphones. There are also "talking books" which blind people can listen to. However, some blind people prefer to read. Now, you can also buy Braille ebooks. At the moment, these are difficult to make and expensive to buy. However, scientists are now working on Braille ebooks that might be cheaper than Braille books in the future. These ebooks might be the best way to help blind people. That would be good news for millions of people.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people have problems with seeing?
.....
2. Why do you think that Braille books are not cheap to make?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The cost of something is how
a. much money you need to buy it b. long it takes to make
c. many people use it d. you make something
4. If they become cheaper, more blind people will probably use In the future.
a. Braille books b. Braille ebooks
c. smart phones d. books

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A sport you like"

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Test on Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The speaker wanted to the importance of recycling.
a. forget b. emphasize c. draw d. ignore
- is the work of telling people about a product to help sell it.
a. Producing b. Wrapping c. Marketing d. Buying
- To get the adjective from the verb "forget", we add the suffix "....."
a. -ment b. -ful c. -able d. -ion
- We have no reason to doubt you. "Doubt" is the opposite of
a. make sure b. hesitate c. suspect d. mislead

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

organize - presentation - track - notice - role

Our team needs to ① the detailed information for the final ② Everyone has a clear ③, and our main goal is a perfect result. The project coordinator helps us keep ④ of deadlines. We must work together to make sure everything is submitted by the official deadline.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi,

It's my first visit to Egypt. My friends advised me to go to Alexandria. It's summer. However, it is not very hot there, so many tourists go at this time. I'm staying in a hotel in Alexandria now. It is Friday there is little traffic in the streets. The hotel is near the sea and I can hear the boats. The hotel is also near the Tourist Information Centre, but it is closed today. Tomorrow I will ask about what I should see in the city. The guidebook says that I should visit Fort Qaitbey. The stones in the fort are from the famous lighthouse. They were used after the lighthouse collapsed in an earthquake in 1303.

Best wishes, Andy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word collapsed means
a. was built b. fell c. started d. was seen

2. The underlined word "it" refers to.....
 a. the hotel b. the Tourist Information Centre
 c. the road d. Fort Qaitbey
3. Many tourists go to Alexandria in the summer as the weather is.....There.
 a. hot b. windy c. nice c. rainy

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Who do you think Andy is writing this email to and why?
5. Which places does the guidebook advise Andy to visit?
6. Do you think that Andy's friends were right to advice her to visit Alexandria?
 Why?

Story

4 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What is a key characteristic the text attributes to Captain Nemo?
 a. His friendly nature. b. His strange brilliance.
 c. His lack of curiosity. d. His poor leadership.
2. What are powerful things which can achieve wonders?
 a. Human curiosity and knowledge. b. Wealth and ambition.
 c. Sorrow and isolation. d. Storms and oceans.
3. What might ambition mixed with sorrow lead to, according to the text?
 a. Great wealth. b. Isolation. c. Final answers.d) A weak craft.
4. How is the ocean described at the end of the story?
 a. Calm and welcoming. b. Conquered and known.
 c. Vast and mysterious. d. Small and easily explored.

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What are the three main things Aronnax wrote about?

6. Does the sea symbolize freedom or danger in t he story? Why?

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

1. Nader said to his brother , "Take the umbrella with you." (advised)
-

2. My mother said to me , "Don't forget to tidy your room."

(told)

3. The teacher said, " Open your books on page 25."

(asked)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She commanded me..... (stopping) talking.

1. He ordered the soldiers..... (fire) their guns.

2. The teacher told the students (handed) in their assignments.

7 Finish the following dialog:

Manar : Is there a library in your school?

Marwa : ①

Manar : ② ?

Marwa : It's on the third floor.

Manar : ③ ?

Marwa : I go to the school library twice a week.

Manar : What kind of books do you like to read?

Marwa : ④

Manar : Can you borrow books from the library?

Marwa : ⑤ at a time.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Why you think Egypt is a good place for tourists to visit"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review (4)

Vocabulary



المفردات الإضافية

bridge (n)	جسر	clothing (n)	الملبس
paper (n)	ورق	greeting (n)	تحية
tape (n)	شريط لاصق	shake hands	يتصافح
together (adv)	معا	hold (v) (held)	يستوعب
famous for (adj)	مشهور بـ	ideas (n)	أفكار
testing (n)	اختبار	treasures (n)	كنوز
strength (n)	قوة	Pharaoh (n)	الفرعون
tasks (n)	مهام	the Sphinx (n)	أبو الهول
teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي	move to (v) (d)	انتقلت إلى
culture (n)	ثقافة	work on (v) (ed)	يعمل على
own (adj)	خاص	focus on (v) (ed)	يركز على
unique (adj)	مميز/فريد	their own way	بطريقتهم الخاصة
landmarks (n)	معالم	respecting	احترام
the Seven Wonders (n)	عجائب الدنيا السبع	realize (v) (d)	يدرك
mask (n)	قناع	bow (v) (ed)	ينحني
design (n)	تصميم	decide (v) (d)	يقرر
skills (n)	مهارات	divide (v) (d)	يقسم

Listening

SB Page (103)



SB Page (103)

استمع إلى النصوص



Last week, our class had to build a **bridge**⁽¹⁾ using only paper and **tape**⁽²⁾. At first, everyone wanted to do things **their own way**⁽³⁾, and it didn't work well. Then, we **decided**⁽⁴⁾ to listen to each other's ideas and **divide**⁽⁵⁾ the **tasks**⁽⁶⁾. Some students worked on the **design**⁽⁷⁾, while others **focused on**⁽⁸⁾ testing the strength. By the end of the day, our bridge held ten books without breaking! We **realized**⁽⁹⁾ that teamwork isn't just about working together- it's about respecting each person's skills and ideas.

١. جسر
٢. شريط لاصق
٣. بطريقتهم الخاصة
٤. قررنا
٥. نقسم
٦. المهام
٧. التصميم
٨. ركزوا على
٩. أدركنا


Audio Script SB Page (104)

Egypt is famous for its **ancient landmarks**⁽¹⁾ that attract visitors from all over the world. The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the **Seven Wonders**⁽²⁾ of the Ancient World and still stands today. Nearby, the Sphinx **guards**⁽³⁾ the desert with its lion's body and human head. In Cairo, the Egyptian Museum **holds**⁽⁴⁾ thousands of treasures from ancient times, including the **mask**⁽⁵⁾ of King Tutankhamun. Farther south, the **temples**⁽⁶⁾ of Abu Simbel were built by Pharaoh Ramses II and later moved to higher ground to protect them from the **rising waters**⁽⁷⁾ of the Nile. These landmarks remind everyone of Egypt's rich history and **creativity**⁽⁸⁾.

١. معالمها القديمة
٢. العجايب السبعة
٣. تحرس
٤. يحتوي على
٥. قناع
٦. المعابد
٧. المياه المرتفعة
٨. الابداع

General Test on Units 10-12
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Polar bears to the cold by growing thick fur.
a. adapt b. dance c. cry d. melt
- He wore his medals with pride. "Pride" is opposite in meaning to
a. dignity b. cleverness c. modesty d. knowledge
- To get the adjective from the verb "comfort", we add the suffix ".....".
a. -er b. -able c. -ation d. -ful
- To is to make someone feel interested or want to do something good.
a. emphasize b. judge c. inspire d. advertise

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

listen - clearly - weak - calm - trust

A successful leader is a good guide. They do not just give orders. They ① first and explain their vision ② They build ③ within their team. A good leader stays ④ in problems and helps find answers. They celebrate team wins, not just their own. Their success is seen in a strong, happy, and successful team that achieves great things together.

3

Read the following text then answer the questions:

One cold winter morning, a young boy named Omar was walking to school when he saw smoke coming from a small house nearby. Without thinking twice, he ran to the door and heard a child crying inside. Omar quickly called for help and then crawled through the open window to rescue the frightened boy. Just as he got out, firefighters arrived and put out the fire. Everyone praised Omar for his bravery. He said he didn't feel like a hero—he just wanted to help. His quick thinking and courage saved the child's life and inspired others to act bravely in difficult situations. Sometimes, true bravery comes from caring about others more than yourself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar saw _____ coming from a small house.
a. water b. light c. smoke d. a dog
- Omar's brave action helped save a _____.
a. dog b. child c. firefighter d. hero
- The underlined word "he" refers to _____.
a. every one b. the child c. the firefighter d. Omar

B. Answer the following questions

- What would you have done if you were in Omar's place?

- Why do you think Omar didn't see himself as a hero?

- What makes a person truly brave?

The Story

4

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The men saw a huge _____ that attacks the submarine.
a. shark b. whale c. squid d. crab
- The three fellows escaped from the submarine through a _____.
a. small boat b. warship c. steel box d. sunken ship
- The story is full of adventure and _____.
a. magic b. mystery c. sadness d. comedy

4. The submarine was powered by -----

a. coal

b. gas

c. electricity

d. petrol

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What happens when the submarine is attacked by a giant squid?

6. Do the characters ever return to land at the end of the story?

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. The police came to the crime scene, but the criminal escaped.

(before)

2. "Where did you buy this book?"

(She asked me..)

3. "Don't be late for class,"

(The teacher ordered us)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She asked me where I ----- (go) the previous night.

2. The teacher told us ----- (turn off) our phones before the exam.

3. After we ----- (arrive) home, it started to rain.

7 Finish the following dialogue:

Two classmates are talking about animal adaptation

Amany : Why do polar bears have white fur?

Gamila : Their white fur helps them blend in with the snow so ① -----

Amany : ② ----- ?

Gamila : They store fat in their humps, which their bodies can turn into water and energy when needed.

Amany : ③ ----- ?

Gamila : Their large ears help them hear tiny sounds and also release heat to stay cool in the hot desert.

Review 4

Amany : How do emperor penguins stay warm in freezing temperatures?

Gamila : 4

Amany : Why do some animals change color with the seasons?

Gamila : 5

like the Arctic fox, which turns white in winter and brown in summer.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your school trip to Cairo"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

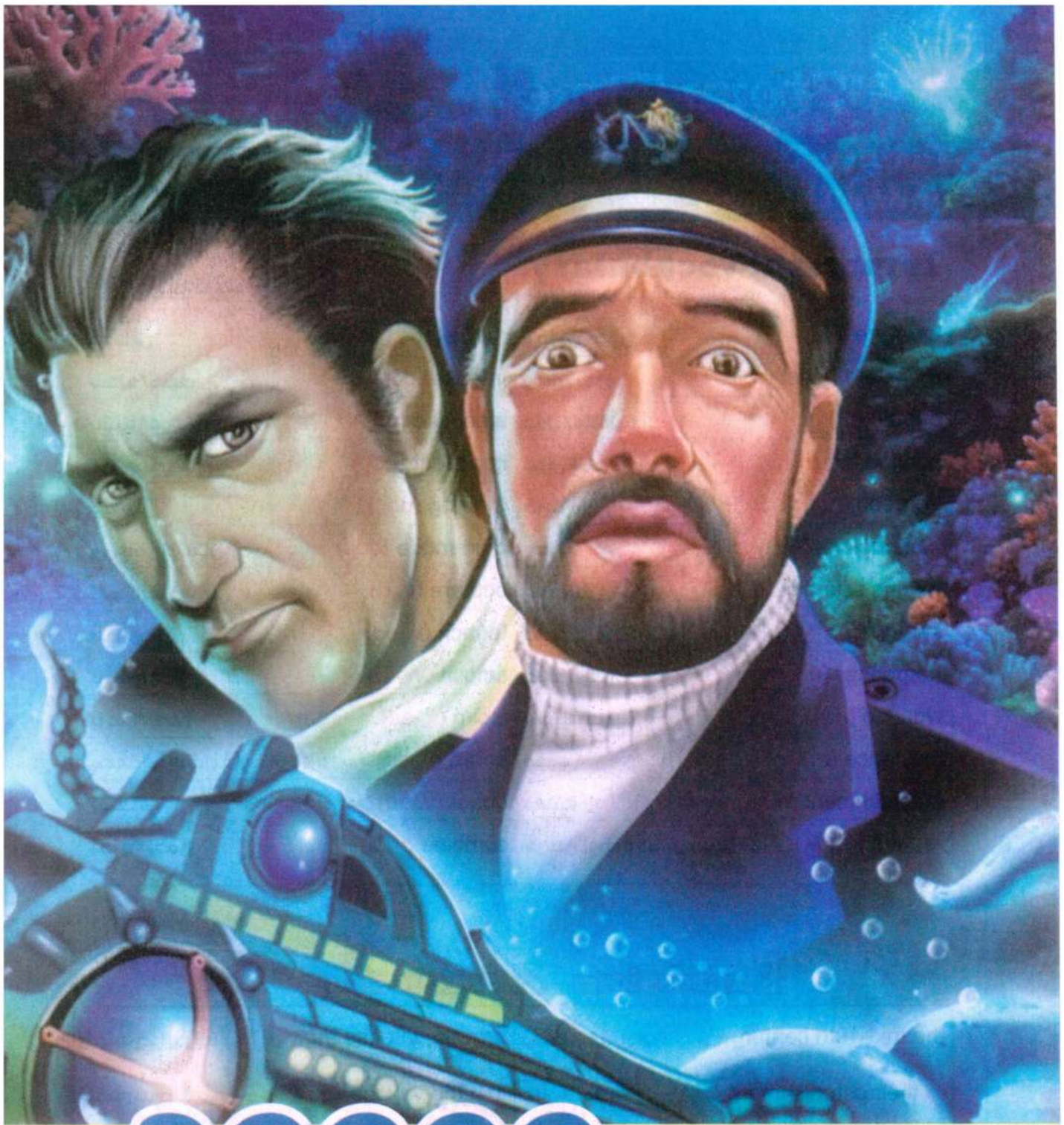
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



20000 LEAGUES
UNDER THE SEA

Story Time

Chapter One

The Mystery of the Sea Monster

Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea

Important Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

creature (n.)	مخلوق / كائن	marvelous (adj.)	مدهش
monster / beast (n.)	وحش بحري	intense (adj.)	شديد / كثيف
debate (n.)	جدل / مناظرة	steel-like (adj.)	يشبه الفولاذ
cannon fire (n.)	نيران المدافع	impatient (adj.)	غير صبور
harpoon (n.)	خربة	glowing (adj.)	متوهج
companions (n.)	رفاق	man-made (adj.)	من صنع الإنسان
marine scientist (n.)	عالم بحري	capture (v. d)	يأسر / يقبض على
servant (n.)	خادم	launch (v. ed)	يبدأ / يطلق
harpooner (n.)	صائد بالحرايب	smash (v. ed)	يحطم
warship (n.)	سفينة حربية	claim (v. ed)	يزعم / يدعي
existence (n.)	وجود	board (v. ed)	يصعد إلى (سفينة أو طائرة)
astonishment (n.)	دهشة	doubt (v. ed)	يشك في
league (n.)	فرسخ (وحدة قياس مسافة)	combine (v. d)	يمزج / يجمع

Expressions & Prepositions

the mid-19th century	منتصف القرن ١٩	grow so intense that	مكثف جداً لدرجة أن
to their astonishment	ما أدهشهم	join the voyage	ينضم للرحلة
(be) about to begin	على وشك أن يبدأ	become part of	يصبح جزءاً من
grow intense	يزداد كثافة	(be) thrown into	يتم قذفه في

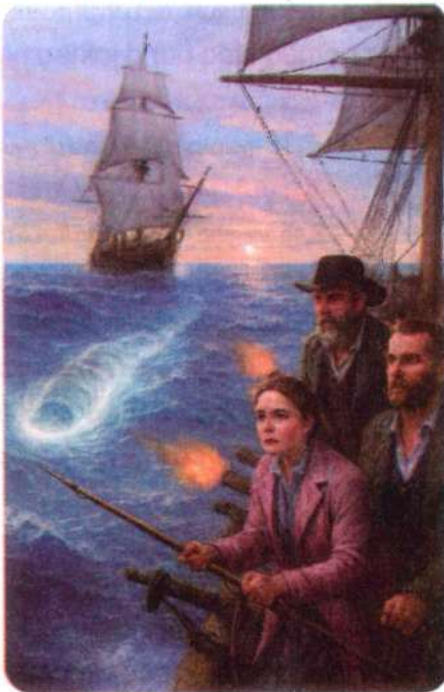


Introduction about the author

Jules Verne (1828 -1905) was a French **novelist**⁽¹⁾ and is often called the "Father of **Science Fiction**."⁽²⁾ He wrote **imaginative**⁽³⁾ adventure tales that **combined**⁽⁴⁾ scientific ideas with **vivid**⁽⁵⁾ storytelling. His most famous works include *Journey to the Center of the Earth* (1864). *Around the world in Eighty Days* (1873), and *Twenty Thousand Leagues*⁽⁶⁾ *Under the Sea* (1870). Verne's writings inspired both readers and scientists.

- Read the text. Why do people sometimes believe in sea legends?

In the **mid-nineteenth century**⁽¹⁾, sailors across the oceans reported a strange creature. Ships claimed to have seen a huge "**sea monster**⁽²⁾," moving faster than whales and **smashing**⁽³⁾ ships with terrible force. Newspapers described it as both **marvelous**⁽⁴⁾ and terrifying. Public **debate**⁽⁵⁾ grew so **intense**⁽⁶⁾ that a voyage was launched to **capture**⁽⁷⁾ or kill the **beast**⁽⁸⁾.



Professor Pierre Aronnax, a French marine scientist, was invited to join the voyage. His loyal **servant**⁽⁹⁾ Conseil and a Canadian **harpooner**⁽¹⁰⁾ named Ned Land also became part of the crew. They **boarded**⁽¹¹⁾ a **warship**⁽¹²⁾ and set sail across the Pacific.

For months, they searched without success. Some sailors **doubted**⁽¹³⁾ the monster's **existence**⁽¹⁴⁾, while others became **impatient**⁽¹⁵⁾.

At last, one evening, a long glowing shape appeared in the waves. The crew chased it **desperately**⁽¹⁶⁾. Cannon fire and harpoons were launched. Suddenly, the "monster" turned and hit the ship with its **steel-like**⁽¹⁷⁾ body. Aronnax and his **companions**⁽¹⁸⁾ were thrown into the sea.

١. منتصف القرن الـ ١٩
٢. وحش بحري
٣. محطما
٤. رائع
٥. جدل
٦. مكثف
٧. يأسر
٨. الوحش
٩. خادم
١٠. صائد بالحرايب
١١. صعد إلى
١٢. سفينة حربية
١٣. شك في
١٤. وجود
١٥. غير صبور
١٦. بياس
١٧. يشبه الفولاذ
١٨. الرفقاء

Exercises on Chapter 1

A Answer the following questions:

- What did sailors report seeing in the mid-nineteenth century?
ماذا أفاد البحارة برؤيتهم في منتصف القرن التاسع عشر؟
- They reported seeing a strange, huge "sea monster".
- أفادوا برؤية "وحش بحري" ضخم وغريب.
- How did the "sea monster" move?
كيف كان يتحرك "وحش البحر"؟
- It moved faster than whales.
- كان يتحرك أسرع من الحيتان.
- What did the newspapers describe the creature as?
بماذا وصفت الصحف المخلوق؟
- They described it as both marvelous and terrifying.
- وصفته بأنه عجيب ومرعب في آن واحد.
- What was launched to deal with the beast?
ما الذي أطلق للتعامل مع الوحش؟
- A voyage was launched to capture or kill the beast.
- أطلقت رحلة بحرية للقبض على الوحش أو قتله.
- Who was Professor Pierre Aronnax?
من هو البروفيسور بيير أرونأكس؟
- He was a French marine scientist.
- كان عالمًا بحريًا فرنسيًا.
- Who joined Professor Aronnax on the voyage?
من انضم إلى البروفيسور أرونأكس في الرحلة؟
- His loyal servant Conseil and a Canadian harpooner named Ned Land joined him.
- انضم إليه خادمه المخلص كونسيل وصياد حربة كندي يُدعى نيد لاند.
- What kind of ship did they board?
ما نوع السفينة التي صعدوا عليها؟
- They boarded a warship.
- صعدوا على متن سفينة حربية.
- How long did they search without success?
كم من الوقت بحثوا دون جدوى؟
- They searched for months without success.
- بحثوا لأشهر دون جدوى.
- What appeared in the waves one evening?
ماذا ظهر في الأمواج ذات مساء؟
- A long glowing shape appeared.
- ظهر شكل طويل متوهج.
- What happened to Aronnax and his companions?
ماذا حدث لأرونأكس ورفاقه؟
- They were thrown into the sea.
- تم إلقاؤهم في البحر.

Critical thinking questions

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

- Why do you think the sailors were so fascinated with the idea of a sea monster?
لماذا تعتقد أن البحارة كانوا مفتونين جدًا بفكرة وحش البحر؟
- Because the creature was something strange and unknown.
- لأن المخلوق كان غريبًا ومجهولًا.
- What role did professor Aronnax play in the voyage, and how did his scientific background help?
ما الدور الذي لعبه البروفيسور أرونأكس في الرحلة، وكيف ساهمت خلفيته العلمية؟

- His knowledge of sea animals helped the crew understand what the creature might be.
- ساعدت معرفته بالحيوانات البحرية الطاقم على فهم ماهية هذا المخلوق.
3. How did the description of the sea monster create a sense of both fear and wonder among the crew?
كيف خلق وصف وحش البحر شعورًا بالخوف والدهشة بين أفراد الطاقم?
- The monster was described as huge, fast, and powerful, which made the crew afraid. But it was also mysterious and glowing, which made them feel wonder.
- وُصف الوحش بأنه ضخم وسريع وقوي، مما أثار خوف الطاقم. لكنه كان أيضًا غامضًا ومتوهجًا، مما أثار دهشتهم.
4. What do you think the importance of the "public debate" over the sea monster's existence was?
ما رأيك في أهمية "النقاش العام" حول وجود وحش البحر؟
- The public debate made people take the reports seriously. Without the debate, the voyage might never have taken place.
- دفع النقاش العام الناس إلى أخذ التقارير على محمل الجد. لولا النقاش، لما كانت الرحلة لتتم أبدًا.
5. In your opinion, how might the voyage to capture the sea monster affect the relationships between the crew members?
برأيك، كيف يمكن أن تؤثر رحلة القبض على وحش البحر على العلاقات بين أفراد الطاقم؟
- The voyage could bring the crew closer together because they were facing danger as a team.
- من الممكن أن تُقرب الرحلة الطاقم من بعضهم البعض لأنهم كانوا يواجهون خطرًا كفريق واحد.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Why do you think the public debate about the monster grew so intense?
لماذا تعتقد أن الجدل العام حول الوحش قد ازداد حدة؟
- Because the reports were scary and people wanted to feel safe.
- لأن التقارير كانت مخيفة، وأراد الناس الشعور بالأمان.
7. Why do you think some sailors started to doubt the monster's existence?
لماذا تعتقد أن بعض البحارة بدأوا يشككون في وجود الوحش؟
- Because they searched for months and did not find anything, making them impatient.
- لأنهم بحثوا لأشهر ولم يجدوا شيئًا، مما جعلهم ينفد صبرهم.
8. Was the "monster" really a living creature? How do you know?
هل كان "الوحش" كائنًا حيًا حقًا؟ كيف عرفت؟
- No, it hit the ship with a "steel-like body," which suggests it was a man-made object, like a submarine.
- لا، لقد صدم السفينة بجسم يشبه الفولاذ، مما يوحي بأنه جسم من صنع الإنسان، مثل غواصة.
9. Why do you think Ned Land was chosen for the voyage?
في اعتقادك لماذا تم اختيار نيد لاند للرحلة؟
- Because he was a skilled harpooner, who could help capture or kill the beast.
- لأنه كان صيادًا ماهرًا بالحرية، وكان بإمكانه المساعدة في اصطياد الوحش أو قتله.
10. Why was Professor Aronnax a good person to join this voyage?
لماذا كان البروفيسور أرونأكس شخصًا مناسبًا للانضمام إلى هذه الرحلة؟
- Because he was a scientist who could study the creature with knowledge and not just fear it.
- لأنه كان عالمًا استطاع دراسة المخلوق بمعرفة، وليس مجرد الخوف منه.

Chapter 1 Twenty thousand leagues under the sea

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

General Exercises on Chapter 1

1. In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge
a. whale b. sea monster c. shark d. giant squid
2. Professor Aronnax was invited to join the.....
a. party b. flight c. army d. voyage
3. The sea monster was described as having a..... body.
a. steel-like b. fish-like c. long d. jellyfish-like
4. Ned Land, a Canadian harpooner, became part of the.....
a. expedition b. scientists c. crew d. warship crew
5. The ship's crew chased the creature after it.....
a. swam away b. appeared in the waves
c. attacked them d. dove underwater
6. Newspapers described the sea monster as both and terrifying.
a. marvelous b. mysterious c. enormous d. dangerous
7. A voyage was launched because people wanted to the creature.
a. feed b. protect c. capture d. train
8. The crew boarded a and set sail across the Pacific.
a. submarine b. warship c. merchant ship d. fishing boat
9. The crew searched for the monster for a long time, which made them feel
a. excited b. impatient c. overjoyed d. sleepy
10. Conseil joined the adventure because he was Aronnax's
a. teacher b. enemy c. servant d. captain

B Answer the following questions:

1. What was the main problem reported by sailors in the mid-nineteenth century?
2. What two qualities did newspapers use to describe the "sea monster"?
3. Why was a special voyage launched?
4. Who were the three main people who joined the voyage?
5. What was Professor Aronnax's profession?

C Critical thinking - Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the public debate about the creature became "intense"?
2. Why do you think sailors were so quick to believe the creature was a monster?
3. Why do you think Ned Land, a harpooner, was included in the crew?
4. Why did the sailors become impatient after months of searching?
5. How does the description "steel-like body" help you understand it was not a real animal?

Story Time

Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea. by Jules Verne

Chapter Two

Captives of Captain Nemo

Important Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

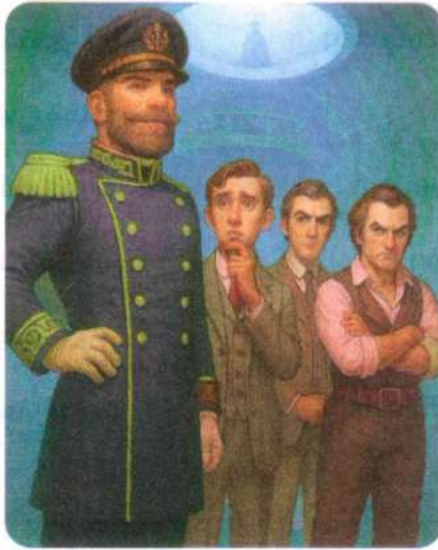
commander (n.)	القائد	remain (v. ed)	يظل
mysterious (adj.)	غامض	scientific curiosity (n.)	الفضول العلمي
strong will(n.)	إرادة قوية	loyal (adj.)	وفي/مخلص
entirely (adv)	كلياً	valued freedom (n.)	يقدر الحرية
beneath (adv)	تحت	astonishing (adj.)	مدهش
floating palace (n.)	قصر عائِم	treasures(n.)	كنوز
pearls(n.)	اللؤلؤ	ancient artifacts(n.)	تحف قديمة
long distances(n.)	مسافات طويلة		

Expressions & Prepositions

through an iron door	عبر باب حديدي	escape from	يهرب من
powered by electricity	تدار بالكهرباء	brought inside	تجلب للداخل
without surfacing	بدون الصعود للسطح	life beneath the sea	الحياة تحت سطح البحر
once aboard	إذا صعدوا على متن الغواصة	as long as they lived	طوال حياتهم

Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were brought inside through an iron door. There, they met the **commander**⁽¹⁾: Captain Nemo, a **mysterious**⁽²⁾ man of **strong will**⁽³⁾ and deep knowledge. Nemo explained that his ship, the Nautilus, was built **entirely**⁽⁴⁾ for life **beneath**⁽⁵⁾ the sea. Powered by electricity, it could travel very long distances **without surfacing**⁽⁶⁾.

Nemo welcomed them politely, but made it clear: once **aboard**⁽⁷⁾, they could never return to land. They were to **remain**⁽⁸⁾ with him as long as they lived. Professor Aronnax, filled with scientific **curiosity**⁽⁹⁾. He accepted that as he wanted to learn about the ocean and its secrets. Conseil stayed **loyal**⁽¹⁰⁾ to his master. But Ned Land, who **valued freedom**⁽¹¹⁾ above all, was angry.



He began making a plan to escape from the Nautilus.

Life on the Nautilus was **astonishing**⁽¹²⁾. The ship looked like a floating palace under water with a library, a museum, and big windows to see the deep ocean. Nemo showed them **treasures**⁽¹³⁾ gathered from the sea: **pearls**⁽¹⁴⁾, gold, and ancient **artifacts**⁽¹⁵⁾. He told them that he kept himself away from land. The sea, he insisted, was his only **homeland**⁽¹⁶⁾. Thus, they began to feel; **half-prisoners**⁽¹⁷⁾ and half-guests. They were kept on a journey that full of **wonders**⁽¹⁸⁾ and dangers.

١. القائد
٢. غامض
٣. إرادة قوية
٤. كلياً
٥. تحت
٦. بدون الصعود للسطح
٧. على متن الغواصة
٨. يظل
٩. الفضول
١٠. وافي/مخلص
١١. يقدر الحرية
١٢. مدهش
١٣. كنوز
١٤. اللؤلؤ
١٥. تحف
١٦. موطن
١٧. شبه سجناء
١٨. عجائب

Exercises on

Chapter 2

2 Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. How did professor Aronnax react to the situation on the Nautilus, and why?

كيف كان رد فعل البروفيسور أرونأكس على الوضع على متن نوتيلوس، ولماذا؟

- Professor Aronnax accepted the situation because he was filled with scientific curiosity and wanted to learn about the ocean and its secrets.

- لقد تقبل البروفيسور أرونأكس هذا الوضع لأنه كان مليئاً بالفضول العلمي وأراد أن يتعلم عن المحيط وأسراره.

2. Why was Ned Land so restless and angry about being aboard the ship?

لماذا كان نيدلاند قلقاً وغاضباً للغاية لوجوده على متن السفينة؟

- Because he valued freedom above all else.

- لأنه كان يقدر الحرية فوق كل شيء.

3. How was life on the Nautilus?

كيف كانت الحياة على متن نوتيلوس؟

- It was astonishing. The ship was like a floating underwater palace, equipped with a library, a museum, and large windows for viewing the ocean.
- كان الأمر مذهلاً. كانت السفينة أشبه بقصر عائِم تحت الماء، مجهزة بمكتبة ومتحف ونوافذ واسعة لمشاهدة المحيط.

4. How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land? كيف قارن الكابتن نيمو البحر باليابسة؟
- He stated that the sea was his only homeland and that he kept himself away from land.
 - أوضح أن البحر هو موطنه الوحيد وأنه يبتعد عن البر.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Who is the commander of the Nautilus, and how is he described?

من هو قائد سفينة نوتيلوس، وكيف يُوصف؟

- The commander is Captain Nemo. He is a mysterious man of strong will and deep knowledge.
- القائد هو الكابتن نيمو، هو رجل غامض ذو إرادة قوية ومعرفة عميقة.

6. What is the Nautilus powered by, and what is its key advantage?

ما هو مصدر طاقة نوتيلوس، وما هي ميزته الرئيسية؟

- The Nautilus is powered by electricity, and its key advantage is that it can travel very long distances without needing to surface.

- تعمل نوتيلوس بالكهرباء، وميزتها الرئيسية هي قدرتها على السفر لمسافات طويلة دون الحاجة إلى الصعود إلى السطح.

7. What was Captain Nemo's one condition for Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land once they came aboard?

ما هو الشرط الوحيد الذي وضعه الكابتن نيمو لأرونأكس وكونسيل ونيد لاند بمجرد صعودهم على متن الغواصة؟

- Captain Nemo made it clear that once aboard, they could never return to land and would have to remain with him for the rest of their lives.

- أوضح الكابتن نيمو أنه بمجرد صعودهم على متنها، لن يتمكنوا من العودة إلى اليابسة أبداً، وسيضطرون إلى البقاء معه طوال حياتهم.

8. How did each of the three main characters react to their new situation on the Nautilus?

كيف كان رد فعل كل من الشخصيات الرئيسية الثلاث على وضعها الجديد على متن نوتيلوس؟

- Professor Aronnax accepted it due to his scientific curiosity. Conseil stayed out of loyalty to his master. Ned Land was angry and began planning his escape.

- قبل البروفيسور أرونأكس الوضع بدافع فضوله العلمي. وبقي كونسيل مع سيده ولاءً له. غضب نيدلاند وبدأ يخطط لهروبه.

9. What were some of the astonishing features of life aboard the Nautilus?

ما هي بعض السمات المذهلة للحياة على متن نوتيلوس؟

- The ship was like a floating underwater palace, featuring a library, a museum, and large windows for viewing the deep ocean.

- كانت السفينة أشبه بقصر عائِم تحت الماء، تضم مكتبة ومتحفاً ونوافذ واسعة تُطل على أعماق المحيط.

Critical thinking questions

SB Exercises

1. Why do you think captain Nemo chose to keep Aronnax and his friends on the Nautilus instead of sending them back to land?

لماذا برأيك اختار الكابتن نيمو إبقاء أرونأكس وأصدقائه على متن سفينة نوتيلوس بدلاً من إعادتهم إلى البر؟

- Captain Nemo likely kept them to protect the secret of the Nautilus, its advanced technology, and his own hidden life beneath the sea.

- من المرجح أن الكابتن نيمو احتفظ بهم لحماية سر نوتيلوس، وتكنولوجياها المتقدمة، وحياته المخفية تحت سطح البحر.

2. In what ways could life on the Nautilus be better or worse than life on land?

Give examples.

بأي طريقة يمكن أن تكون الحياة على متن نوتيلوس أفضل أو أسوأ من الحياة على البر؟ أعط أمثلة.

- Better: It offered opportunities of seeing deep-sea wonders, visiting shipwrecks.
- الأفضل: كان يُتيح فرصاً لرؤية عجائب أعماق البحار، وزيارة حطام السفن.
 - Worse: It meant a complete loss of personal freedom and connection to the outside world.
- الأسوأ: كان يعني فقداناً كاملاً للحرية الشخصية والاتصال بالعالم الخارجي.
3. If you were in Ned Land's place, would you try to escape or stay on the ship?
Why?
لو كنت مكان نيد لاند، هل ستحاول الهروب أم البقاء على متن السفينة؟ ولماذا؟
- I would try to escape. The permanent loss of freedom and the inability to see my home or loved ones again would be too great a price.
- سأحاول الهرب. فالخسارة الدائمة للحرية وعدم القدرة على رؤية منزلي أو أحبائي مرة أخرى سيكون ثمناً باهظاً جداً.

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. Where did Captain Nemo say he gathered his treasures, and what did this reveal about his relationship with the land?
أين قال الكابتن نيمو إنه جمع كنوزه؟ وماذا يكشف هذا عن علاقته بالأرض؟
- He gathered treasures like pearls, gold, and artifacts from the sea. This revealed that he kept himself away from land and considered the sea his only homeland.
- جمع كنوزاً كاللؤلؤ والذهب والتحف من البحر. هذا يكشف أنه ابتعد عن الأرض واعتبر البحر موطنه الوحيد.
5. How did the prisoners begin to feel about their situation as the journey progressed?
كيف بدأ السجناء يشعرون بحالتهم مع تقدم الرحلة؟
- They began to feel like half-prisoners and half-guests on a journey that was full of both wonders and dangers.
- بدأوا يشعرون وكأنهم نصف سجناء ونصف ضيوف في رحلة مليئة بالعجائب والمخاطر.
6. What does the Nautilus itself tell you about Captain Nemo's personality?
ماذا يُخبرك نوتيلوس نفسه عن شخصية الكابتن نيمو؟
- It shows he is a genius, loves beauty, and wants to be separate from the world.
يُظهر أنه عبقر، يُحب الجمال، ويرغب في الانفصال عن العالم.
7. Is Conseil's loyalty to Aronnax a strength or a weakness here?
هل ولاء كونسيل لأرونأكس نقطة قوة أم ضعف هنا؟
- It is both. It is good to be loyal, but he does not think for himself.
إنه كلاهما. من الجيد أن يكون المرء وفياً، لكنه لا يفكر بنفسه.
8. If you were Aronnax, would you accept Nemo's rule to see the ocean's secrets?
لو كنت مكان أرونأكس، هل ستقبل حكم نيمو برؤية أسرار المحيط؟
- Yes, for the adventure.
- نعم، من أجل المغامرة.
 - No, freedom is too important.
- لا، الحرية مهمة للغاية.
9. What is the biggest problem with Nemo's perfect underwater world?
ما هي أكبر مشكلة في عالم نيمو المثالي تحت الماء؟
- It is a prison. His guests did not choose to be there.
إنه سجن. لم يختار ضيوفه البقاء فيه.
10. What does this chapter predict will be the main conflict for the rest of the story?
ما الذي يتوقعه هذا الفصل أن يكون الصراع الرئيسي لبقية القصة؟
- The conflict between wonder (staying) and freedom (escaping)
الصراع بين الدهشة (البقاء) والحرية (الهروب)

General Exercises on Chapter 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Ned Land was angry because he valued _____ above all.
a. the sea b. freedom c. treasure d. knowledge

2. Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his.....
 a. excitement b. curiosity c. fear d. desire for freedom
3. Captain Nemo's ship, called....., was built for life beneath the sea.
 a. Nautilus b. Atlantis c. Sea King d. Odyssey
4. Nemo showed treasures collected from the sea, such as....., and.....
 a. pearls, gold and ancient artifacts b. jewels, metals, and paintings
 c. seashells, corals, and ships d. gold, diamonds, and gems
5. Nemo declared that the sea, not..... was his only homeland.
 a. the land b. the ocean c. the city d. civilization

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Captain Nemo explained that the Nautilus was built entirely for life.....
 a. on the surface of the sea. b. beneath the sea.
 c. in the arctic circle. d. near coastal cities.
7. The primary source of power for the Nautilus was.....
 a. steam b. wind c. electricity d. nuclear energy
8. Once the men were aboard the Nautilus, Captain Nemo made it clear they.....
 a. could leave at the next port. b. could never return to land.
 c. would become his soldiers. d. must pay for their journey.
9. Conseil's reason for staying on the Nautilus was his.....
 a. scientific curiosity. b. loyalty to his master.
 c. fear of Captain Nemo. d. desire for treasure.
10. The text describes life on the Nautilus as.....
 a. boring and repetitive. b. dangerous and frightening.
 c. astonishing and wonderful. d. lonely and sad.

B Answer the following questions:

1. How did Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land enter the Nautilus?
2. What did Captain Nemo declare as his only homeland?
3. What was the Nautilus built for?
4. What unique power source allowed it to travel long distances?
5. What was the condition Captain Nemo set for his three guests once they came aboard his ship?

C Critical thinking - Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Captain Nemo both polite and threatening?
2. Is Nemo's offer to stay forever fair? Why or why not?
3. Why do Aronnax and Ned Land react so differently to the same situation?
4. Can someone be both a prisoner and a guest at the same time? How?
5. Why does Nemo call the sea his only homeland?

Story Time

Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea. by Jules Verne

Chapter Three

Wonders of the Deep

Important Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

sea bed (n.)	قاع البحر	curiosity (n.)	فضول / حُب استطلاع
coral reefs (n.)	الشعاب المرجانية	companion (n.)	رفيق
wonders (n.)	عجائب	mastery (n.)	براعة / إتقان
shipwrecks (n.)	خُطام السفن	silence (n.)	صمت
suit (n.)	بدلة	motives (n.)	دوافع / أسباب
diving voyages (n.)	رحلات غوص	brilliant (adj.)	ذكي
remains (n.)	بقايا / أطلال	mysterious (adj.)	غامض
sunken city (n.)	مدينة غارقة	familiar (adj.)	مألوف / معروف
marine life (n.)	الحياة البحرية	underwater (adj.)	تحت الماء
creature (n.)	كائن / مخلوق	record (v. ed)	يسجل
accurately (adv.)	بدقة	swallow (v. ed)	يبتلع

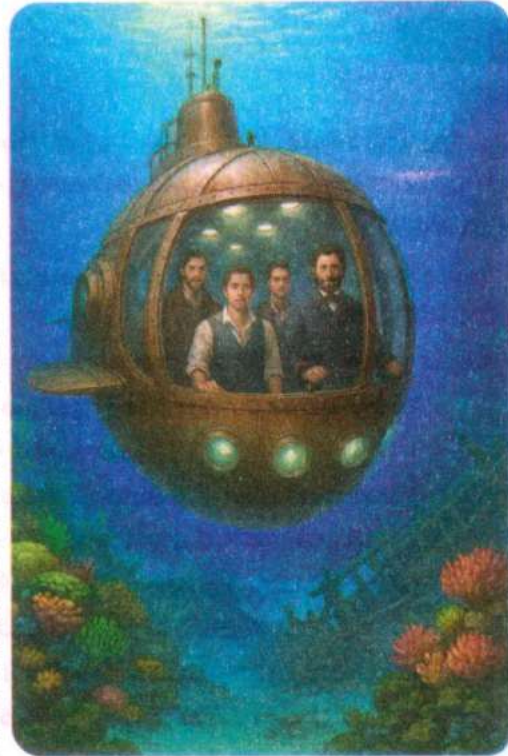
Expressions & Prepositions

glow with	يتوهج بـ / يشع	agree on	يتفق على
invite (sb.) on	يعزم (شخصاً) على	long for	يتوق لـ / يشتهق لـ
provide (sb.) with	يزوّد (شخصاً) بـ	(be) swallowed by	يتم ابتلاعه بواسطة
allow (sb.) to	يتيح (لشخص) أن	excite the chance to	يثير الفرصة لأن
collect samples	يجمع عيّنات	grow impatient	يفقد صبره

The days that followed showed Aronnax the **wonders**⁽¹⁾ of the **underwater**⁽²⁾ world. He looked through the big windows and saw **coral reefs**⁽³⁾ **glowing**⁽⁴⁾ with color, fish of every shape, and **shipwrecks**⁽⁵⁾ resting silently on the ocean floor. Nemo invited his guests on **diving voyages**⁽⁶⁾ providing them with special suits that **allowed them**⁽⁷⁾ to walk over the **sea bed**⁽⁸⁾.

One such journey took them through an underwater forest of strange plants, where they hunted and collected **samples**⁽⁹⁾. Another led them to the **remains**⁽¹⁰⁾ of a **sunken**⁽¹¹⁾ city, where Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations **swallowed**⁽¹²⁾ by the waves.

Professor Aronnax **recorded**⁽¹³⁾ everything carefully, **excited**⁽¹⁴⁾ the chance to study **marine life**⁽¹⁵⁾ in ways no scientist had ever done before. Conseil supported him, naming each **creature**⁽¹⁶⁾ **accurately**⁽¹⁷⁾. But Ned Land **grew impatient**⁽¹⁸⁾. Although he was excited at first, he **missed freedom**⁽¹⁹⁾. And fresh air. To him, the beauty of the sea could not **replace**⁽²⁰⁾ the freedom of land.



Despite⁽²¹⁾ their **differences**⁽²²⁾, the **companions**⁽²³⁾ agreed on one thing: Captain Nemo was both **brilliant**⁽²⁴⁾ and **mysterious**⁽²⁵⁾. His **mastery**⁽²⁶⁾ of science was clear, yet his silence about his past and **motives**⁽²⁷⁾ filled them with **curiosity**⁽²⁸⁾ and **worry**⁽²⁹⁾.

The Nautilus kept moving, deeper and deeper into the blue mystery of the ocean and far from any **familiar**⁽³⁰⁾ shore.

١. عجائب
٢. تحت الماء
٣. الشعاب المرجانية
٤. يتوهج / يضيئ
٥. حطام السفن
٦. رحلات غوص
٧. أتاح لهم
٨. قاع البحر
٩. عينات
١٠. بقايا
١١. غارق
١٢. ابتلع
١٣. سجل
١٤. تحمس لـ
١٥. الحياة البحرية
١٦. كائن/مخلوق
١٧. بدقة
١٨. فقد صبره
١٩. افتقد الحرية
٢٠. يستبدل
٢١. برغم
٢٢. اختلافات
٢٣. رفقاء
٢٤. ذكي
٢٥. غامض
٢٦. إتقان
٢٧. دوافع
٢٨. فضول
٢٩. قلق
٣٠. مألوف

Exercises on Chapter 3

A Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. What was the purpose of Captain Nemo's actions during the voyage, and how did that affect the crew ما هو هدف تصرفات الكابتن نيمو خلال الرحلة، وكيف أثر ذلك على الطاقم؟

- Captain Nemo wanted to explore the sea and learn about it. This made the crew feel surprised and a little worried.

- أراد الكابتن نيمو استكشاف البحر والتعرف عليه. هذا جعل الطاقم يشعرون بالدهشة والقلق.

2. Why do you think Captain Nemo kept his past secret?

لماذا برأيك أبقى الكابتن نيمو ماضيه سراً؟

- Because he didn't want anyone to know about his life.

- لأنه لم يُريد أن يعرف أحدٌ شيئاً عن حياته.

3. What was the purpose of the diving voyages with Captain Nemo?

ما هو هدف رحلات الغوص مع الكابتن نيمو؟

- The diving trips were to see sea life and find new things under the water.

- كانت رحلات الغوص لمشاهدة الحياة البحرية واكتشاف أشياء جديدة تحت الماء.

4. Why did professor Aronnax find the chance to study marine life so exciting, and how did he take this opportunity?

لماذا وجد البروفيسور أرونأكس فرصة دراسة الحياة البحرية مثيرةً للغاية، وكيف اغتنم هذه الفرصة؟

- Professor Aronnax was happy to study sea animals. He wrote down everything he saw.

- كان البروفيسور أرونأكس سعيداً بدراسة الحيوانات البحرية. دُون كل ما رآه.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What did Aronnax see through the big windows?

ماذا رأى أرونأكس من خلال النوافذ الكبيرة؟

- He saw coral reefs, fish, and shipwrecks.

- رأى شعاباً مرجانية وأسماكاً وحطام سفن.

6. Where did the special suits allow the guests to walk?

أين سمحت البدلات الخاصة للضيوف بالمشي؟

- The special suits allowed them to walk on the sea bed.

- سمحت لهم البدلات الخاصة بالمشي على قاع البحر.

7. Who gave the guests special suits?

من الذي زوّد الضيوف بالبدلات الخاصة؟

- Captain Nemo.

- الكابتن نيمو.

8. What did the crew do in the underwater forest?

ماذا فعل الطاقم في الغابة تحت الماء؟

- They hunted and collected samples.

- كانوا يصطادون ويجمعون العينات.

9. What did Nemo hint at in the sunken city?

٩- إلى ماذا ألمح نيمو في المدينة الغارقة؟

- He hinted at forgotten civilizations.

المح إلى حضارات منسية

10. What did Conseil do during the diving voyage?

١٠- ماذا فعل كونسيل خلال رحلة الغوص؟

- He accurately named each creature.

أطلق على كل مخلوق اسماً دقيقاً

Critical thinking questions

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. How do you think Conseil's calmness and accuracy helped during their underwater exploration, compared to Ned Land's impatience?

في اعتقادك كيف ساعد هدوء كونسيل ودقته خلال الاستكشاف تحت الماء، مقارنةً بنفاد صبر نيد لاند؟

- Conseil stayed calm and helped by naming the animals. Ned Land got bored and wanted to go back home.

- حافظ كونسيل على هدوئه وساعده ذلك على تسمية الحيوانات بدقة. شعر نيد لاند بالملل وأراد العودة إلى دياره.

2. What do you think Captain Nemo's silence about his past tells about his character and his relationship with the crew?

في رأيك ماذا كشف صمت الكابتن نيمو عن ماضيه عن شخصيته وعلاقته بالطاقم؟

- This showed he was a secretive man. He didn't want others to know about his life.

- أظهر هذا أنه رجل كئيب. لم يكن يريد أن يطلع الآخرين على حياته.

3. How did the crew see Nemo's character?

- The men thought Nemo was very smart but also strange and mysterious.

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. Why did Ned Land want to leave?

- Because he missed freedom and fresh air of the island.

لماذا أراد نيد لاند المغادرة؟

5. How did Aronnax feel about studying marine life?

- He was very excited.

كيف شعر أرونأكس بدراسة الحياة البحرية؟

كان متحمساً جداً

6. What do you think made Aronnax excited about the voyage?

- He loved studying sea life and seeing things no one had seen before.

برأيك ما اذى جعل أرونأكس متحمساً للرحلة؟

- كان يحب دراسة الحياة البحرية ورؤية أشياء لم يرها أحد من قبل.

7. What lesson can we learn from the differences between Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land?

- People can think differently but still work together.

ما الدرس الذي يمكن أن نتعلمه من الاختلافات بين أرونأكس وكونسيل ونيد لاند؟

- يمكن للناس التفكير بشكل مختلف ولكنهم ما زالوا يعملون معاً.

8. If you were one of Nemo's guests, would you enjoy living under the sea? Why or why not?

- Yes, because I like the sea.

لو كنت أحد ضيوف نيمو، هل ستستمتع بالعيش تحت الماء؟ ولماذا؟

نعم، لأنني أحب البحر

- No, because I would miss the sun and land.

لا، لأنني سأفتقد الشمس واليابسة

General Exercises on Chapter 3

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The crew saw..... glowing with color through the great observation windows.

a. fish b. coral reefs c. shipwrecks d. sharks

2. The Nautilus moved forward into mysteries, carrying them far from.....

a. land b. war c. safety d. their home

3. Conseil named each creature.....

a. excitement b. accurately c. curiosity d. confusion

4. Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by.....

a. the waves b. storms c. the earth d. the mountains

- 

272

Story Time

Twenty Thousand Leagues under
The Sea. by Jules Verne

Chapter
Four

Battles and
Dangers

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

battles (n.)	معارك	leadership (n.)	قيادة
threats (n.)	تهديدات / أخطار	battlefield (n.)	ساحة معركة
risk (n.)	مجازفة / مخاطرة	tension (n.)	توتر
squid (n.)	خَبَّار (حيوان بحري)	desperate (adj.)	يائس / فاقد الأمل
struggle (n.)	صراع	fearless (adj.)	جسور / جريء
axe (n.)	فأس	trapped (adj.)	مُحاصر
harpoon (n.)	خُرْبة	indifference (n.)	لامبالاة
warships (n.)	سُفن حربية	beneath (prep.)	أسفل
depths (n.)	أعماق	admire (v. d)	يُعجب بـ
mercy (n.)	رحمة / شفقة	attack (v. ed)	يهاجم

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) dangerous to	يكون خطرا على	forced its way free	شقَّت طريقها بالقوة
on the deck	على سطح السفينة	without mercy	بلا رحمة
escape danger	يفلت من الخطر	cold indifference to	لامبالاة باردة تجاه
with (sth.) running low	مع انخفاض مستوى ...	break a path to	يشق طريقا إلى

Chapter 4 Twenty thousand leagues under the sea

life on the Nautilus was not without **risk**⁽¹⁾. Once, the submarine was attacked by a giant **squid**⁽²⁾ In a **desperate struggle**⁽³⁾ **on deck**⁽⁴⁾, Nemo and his crew fought bravely with **axes and harpoons**⁽⁵⁾. Ned Land, **fearless**⁽⁶⁾ as always, killed the monster. Only by great effort did they **escape the danger**⁽⁷⁾.

Another time, the submarine became **trapped**⁽⁸⁾ beneath thick ice at the South Pole. With oxygen **running low**⁽⁹⁾, the crew worked hard to **break a path**⁽¹⁰⁾ to the surface. At the last moment, the Nautilus **forced its way free**⁽¹¹⁾, and the men breathed fresh air again.



When **warships**⁽¹²⁾ appeared on the surface, Nemo attacked them **without mercy**⁽¹³⁾, sending them to the depths.

Through such dangers, the passengers learned more about Nemo's character. He showed calm courage and remarkable **leadership**⁽¹⁴⁾, yet also a cold **indifference to**⁽¹⁵⁾ human life.

Aronnax began to admire Nemo but at the same time fear him.

The ocean, though beautiful, was also full of **threats**⁽¹⁶⁾ and dangers. For Aronnax it was a school of wonder; for Nemo it was a **battlefield**⁽¹⁷⁾; for Ned Land it remained a prison. The **tension**⁽¹⁸⁾ among them grew as the voyage continued.

١. مخاطرة
٢. حبار
٣. صراع يائس
٤. على السطح
٥. الفتوس والحرب
٦. جسور
٧. ينجو من الخطر
٨. محاصر
٩. انخفاض مستوى
١٠. يشق طريقا إلى
١١. شقت طريقها بالقوة
١٢. السفن الحربية
١٣. بلا رحمة
١٤. قيادة
١٥. لا مبالاة تجاه
١٦. تهديدات
١٧. ساحة معركة
١٨. توتر

Exercises on Chapter 4

A Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. What was the main risk faced by Captain Nemo and his crew?

ما هو الخطر الرئيسي الذي واجهه الكابتن نيمو وطاقمه؟

- A dangerous sea monster.

- وحش بحري خطير.

2. What did the submarine do to escape the danger?

ماذا فعلت الغواصة للهروب من الخطر؟

- It broke a path to the surface.

- شقت طريقها إلى السطح.

3. How did Captain Nemo react to the situation?

- He showed calmness and leadership.

- أظهر هدوءًا وقيادة.

4. What does Ned Land's character show in this situation?

ماذا أظهر شخصية نيد لاند في هذا الموقف؟

- He showed fearlessness and strength.

- أظهر شجاعة وقوة.

5. What was the most dangerous creature mentioned in the text?

ما هو أخطر مخلوق ذكر في النص؟

- It was a giant squid.

- كان حبارًا عملاقًا.

6. What was Captain Nemo's role in facing the dangers on the submarine?

ما هو دور الكابتن نيمو في مواجهة المخاطر على متن الغواصة؟

- قاد الطاقم بهدوء وشجاعة.

7. How did the crew manage to survive the attacks from the giant squid?

كيف نجا الطاقم من هجمات الحبار العملاق؟

- قاتلوا معًا وقتلوا الحبار.

- They fought together and killed the squid.

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Where did the submarine become trapped?

أين علقت أو حوصرت الغواصة؟

- It became trapped beneath thick ice at the South Pole.

- علقت تحت جليد سميك في القطب الجنوبي.

9. What did Nemo do when warships appeared?

- He attacked them without mercy.

- هاجمهم بلا رحمة.

10. What two sides of Nemo's personality did Aronnax see?

ما الجانبان اللذان رأهما أرونأكس في شخصية نيمو؟

- He saw both Nemo's courage and his cold indifference.

- رأى شجاعة نيمو ولامبالاة الباردة.

Critical thinking questions

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. How would you describe the relationship between Captain Nemo and his crew?

كيف تصف العلاقة بين الكابتن نيمو وطاقمه؟

- They respected and trusted him.

- كانوا يحترمونه ويثقون به.

2. What can we learn from Captain Nemo's leadership in dangerous situations?

ما الذي يمكن أن نتعلمه من قيادة الكابتن نيمو في المواقف الخطرة؟

- We can learn that good leaders stay calm and guide others.

- يمكننا أن نتعلم أن القادة الجيدين يحافظون على هدوئهم ويرشدون الآخرين.

3. If you were a crew member, how would you have reacted to the dangers described?

لو كنت أحد أفراد الطاقم، كيف كنت ستتفاعل مع المخاطر الموصوفة؟

- I'd stay brave and help the crew.

- كنت سأبقى شجاعًا وأساعد الطاقم.

4. Why do you think Captain Nemo was able to stay calm during such difficult situations?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن نيمو كان قادرًا على الحفاظ على هدوئه في مثل هذه المواقف الصعبة؟

- Because he had experience and self-control.

- لأنه كان يتمتع بالخبرة وضبط النفس.

5. Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن هدوء الكابتن نيمو كان عاملاً أساسياً في نجاتهم؟ لماذا أو لماذا لا؟

- Yes, because his calmness kept everyone focused.

- نعم، لأن هدوئه أبقي الجميع في حالة تركيز.

6. If Captain Nemo had panicked, how might the crew's chances of survival have changed?

لو أصيب الكابتن نيمو بالذعر، فكيف كانت ستتغير فرص نجا الطاقم؟

- They might have panicked and failed.

- ربما أصيبوا بالذعر وفشلوا.

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Why might Aronnax admire Nemo even though he feared him?

لماذا قد يُعجب أرونأكس بنيمو رغم خوفه منه؟

- Nemo was intelligent and brave but also mysterious and cold.

- كان نيمو ذكيًا وشجاعًا، لكنه كان أيضًا غامضًا وبارد المشاعر.

8. What do the different views of the ocean show about each character?

ماذا تُظهر وجهات النظر المختلفة تجاه المحيط عن كل شخصية؟

- Each man saw it through his own feelings and goals.

- رأى كل رجل المحيط من خلال مشاعره وأهدافه الخاصة.

Chapter 4 Twenty thousand leagues under the sea

9. What lesson can be learned from the crew's hard work under pressure?

ما الدرس الذي يمكن تعلمه من عمل الطاقم الشاق تحت الضغط؟

- Never give up, even in dangerous situations. لا تستسلم أبدًا، حتى في المواقف الخطرة.

10. Why do you think Ned Land wanted freedom so much?

لماذا تعتقد أن نيد لاند رغب بشدة في الحرية؟

- He loved open spaces and hated being trapped under the sea.

- كان يحب المساحات المفتوحة ويكره أن يكون محاصرًا تحت سطح البحر.

General Exercises on Chapter 4

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Life on the Nautilus was not without
a. risk b. task c. mask d. disc
- The ocean was full of and dangers.
a. mysteries b. wonders c. treasures d. threats
- The submarine was once attacked by a giant
a. feather b. shark c. squid d. whale
- A desperate took place on the deck of the submarine.
a. bargain b. struggle c. attempt d. celebration
- Captain Nemo and his crew fought bravely with axes and
a. spoons b. balloons c. cartoons d. harpoons
- The crew worked hard because their Oxygen was
a. giving up b. running away c. running out d. looking after
- Aronnax began to Captain Nemo, but fear him.
a. inquire b. retire c. require d. admire
- Captain Nemo demonstrated calm courage and remarkable
a. leadership b. weakness c. anger d. citizenship
- Captain Nemo showed not only calm courage but also to human life.
a. kindness b. mercy c. indifference d. fear

B Answer the following questions:

- What large creature attacked the Nautilus on the deck?
- What weapons did Nemo and his crew use to fight the attacking creature?
- Which of the companions finally killed the giant squid?
- What dangerous situation did the Nautilus face at the South Pole?
- What resource began running low when the submarine was trapped under the ice?

C Critical thinking - Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think Nemo fought the giant squid instead of escaping?
- What does Ned Land's bravery during the squid attack show about him?
- Why do you think Aronnax started to fear Nemo, even though he admired him?
- How did Ned Land's view of the ocean change during the trip?
- Why do you think the ocean was a "battlefield" for Nemo?

Story Time

Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea.

Chapter Five

Secrets of Captain Nemo

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

determined(adj)	مصمم	actions(n)	أعمال
the truth(n)	الحقيقة	warships(n)	السفن الحربية
hidden(adj)	مخبي/مخفي	fight(v) fought	يقاتل
Cruelty (n)	قسوة	details(n)	تفاصيل
brave(adj)	شجاع	personal(adj)	شخصي
scientific(adj)	علمي	Meanwhile	في الحال
discovery(n)	اكتشاف	confirmed(v) (ed)	أكد
graveyard(n)	مقابر	sunken ships(n)	السفن الغارقة

Expressions & Prepositions

without hesitation	بدون تردد	traveled across	سافر عبر
Fight against	يقاتل ضد	had the right	كان له الحق
beneath the waves	تحت سطح البحر	no matter	بغض النظر عن
find a way home	يجد طريق للعودة	as part of	كجزء من

- Read the following text. Who wanted to learn the truth about Captain Nemo?

As the Nautilus traveled across the world's oceans⁽¹⁾, Aronnax became more determined⁽²⁾ to learn the truth about Nemo. The captain was clearly⁽³⁾ a man of wealth⁽⁴⁾, education, and sorrow⁽⁵⁾, but he kept his past hidden⁽⁶⁾. Nemo's actions sometimes confirmed that. He attacked warships without hesitation, claiming to fight against cruelty. Yet he never told the details of his personal story. To Aronnax, Nemo was both brave and mysterious⁽⁷⁾.



Meanwhile, Ned Land planned escape⁽⁸⁾. He argued that no man had the right⁽⁹⁾ to keep them prisoners, no matter⁽¹⁰⁾ how wonderful the submarine⁽¹¹⁾. Aronnax hesitated⁽¹²⁾, torn between scientific discovery and freedom⁽¹³⁾. Conseil remained calm and loyal⁽¹⁴⁾ to his master.

One evening, as Nemo guided the submarine through a graveyard⁽¹⁴⁾ of sunken ships⁽¹⁵⁾, Aronnax realized the captain saw himself as part of the dead world beneath the waves- The mystery⁽¹⁶⁾ of Nemo deepened, but so did the companions' determination⁽¹⁷⁾ to find a way home.

١. محيطات
٢. مصمم / عازم
٣. بوضوح
٤. ثروة
٥. حزن / ندم
٦. مخفي
٧. غامض
٨. يهرب
٩. الحق
١٠. بغض النظر عن
١١. غواصة
١٢. متردد
١٣. حرية
١٤. مقبرة
١٥. سفن غارقة
١٦. اللغز
١٧. تصميم

Exercises on Chapter 5

A Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him?

كيف أكدت أفعال نيمو ما كان يُشاع عنه؟

He attacked warships without hesitation, claiming to fight against cruelty.

هاجم السفن الحربية دون تردد، مدعياً محاربة القسوة.

2. What did Ned Land decide to do while living on the Nautilus?

ماذا قرر نيد لاند فعله أثناء إقامته على متن سفينة نوتيلوس؟

Ned Land planned escape.

نيد لاند يخطط للهروب.

3. How did Aronnax feel when he saw the graveyard of sunken ships?

كيف شعر أرونأكس عندما رأى مقبرة السفن الغارقة؟

He saw himself as part of the dead world beneath the waves.

لقد رأى نفسه كجزء من العالم الاموات تحت الأمواج.

4. What mystery about Nemo deepened as the story went on?

ما هو اللغز الذي تعمق حول نيمو مع تطور القصة؟

- I think he sees himself as part of the dead world beneath the waves.

اعتقد أنه يرى نفسه كجزء من العالم الاموات تحت الأمواج

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What was Captain Nemo's general behavior, as observed by Aronnax?

- ما هو السلوك العام للكابتن نيمو، كما لاحظته أرونأكس؟

He was a man of wealth, education, and deep sorrow who kept his past completely hidden. كان رجلاً ثرياً ومتعلماً، لكنه كان يعاني من حزن عميق، وقد أخفى ماضيه تماماً.

6. What was Ned Land's primary goal throughout this part of the journey?

- ما هو الهدف الرئيسي لنيد لاند طوال هذا الجزء من الرحلة؟

Ned Land was planning their escape, believing no one had the right to keep them prisoners. كان نيد لاند يخطط لهروبهم، معتقداً أنه لا يحق لأحد احتجازهم أسرى.

7. What two contrasting qualities did Aronnax attribute to Captain Nemo?

ما الصفتان المتناقضتان اللتان نسبهما أرونأكس للكابتن نيمو؟

Aronnax saw Nemo as both brave and mysterious.

رأى أرونأكس أن نيمو شجاع وغامض في آن واحد.

8. How did the chapter end for Aronnax and his companions?

- كيف انتهت أحداث الفصل بالنسبة لأرونأكس ورفاقه؟

The mystery of Nemo deepened, but so did their shared determination to find a way home. تعمق غموض نيمو، لكن تعمق أيضاً تصميمهم المشترك على إيجاد طريق للعودة إلى الوطن.

9. What did Captain Nemo claim to be fighting against when he attacked warships?

- ما الذي ادعى الكابتن نيمو أنه كان يحاربه عندما هاجم السفن الحربية؟

He claimed he was fighting against cruelty. ادعى أنه كان يحارب القسوة.

Critical thinking questions

B Answer the following questions:

SB Exercises

1. Why do you think captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty land?

لماذا برأيك اختار الكابتن نيمو محاربة قسوة الأرض؟

- He probably saw great evil on land. He fights cruelty because he hates it so much, and the sea is his escape.

ربما رأى شراً عظيماً على البر. يحارب القسوة لأنه يكرهها بشدة، والبحر هو ملاذه.

2. Nemo attacked warships without hesitation. Do you think this makes him a hero or a dangerous man? Why?

هاجم نيمو السفن الحربية دون تردد. هل تعتقد أن هذا يجعله بطلاً أم رجلاً خطيراً؟ لماذا؟

- This makes him a dangerous man. As he has no right to attack the ships without reason. هذا يجعله رجلاً خطيراً، إذ لا يحق له مهاجمة السفن دون مبرر.

3. Conseil was torn between discovery and freedom. If you were in his place, which would you choose, and why?

كان كونسيل متردداً بين الاكتشاف والحرية. لو كنت مكانه، فماذا ستختار، ولماذا؟

If I were in his place, I would choose to escape. As no one has the right to keep them prisoners. لو كنت مكانه، لاخترت الهروب، إذ لا يحق لأحد احتجازهم.

4. Why do you think captain Nemo keep his past hidden?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن نيمو يخفي ماضيه؟

I think he did some bad things which he didn't want anyone to know.

أعتقد أنه فعل بعض الأشياء السيئة التي لم يكن يريد لأحد أن يعرفها.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What internal conflict did Professor Aronnax struggle with?

ما الصراع الداخلي الذي عانى منه البروفيسور أرونكس؟

Aronnax was torn between his desire for continued scientific discovery aboard the Nautilus and his desire for freedom.

كان أرونكس ممزقاً بين رغبته في مواصلة الاكتشاف العلمي على متن سفينة نوتيلوس ورغبته في الحرية.

6. How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him?

كيف أكدت أفعال نيمو آراء الناس عنه؟

His actions confirmed that he was a man fighting against cruelty, but his refusal to share his personal story confirmed his mysterious and secretive nature.

أكدت أفعاله أنه رجل يحارب القسوة، لكن رفضه مشاركة قصته الشخصية أكد طبيعته الغامضة والسرية.

7. How is Conseil's behavior described in contrast to Ned Land's?

كيف يُوصف سلوك كونسيل مقارنةً بسلوك نيد لاند؟

While Ned Land was rebellious and planned escape, Conseil remained calm and consistently loyal to his master, Aronnax.

بينما كان نيد لاند متمردًا ويخطط للهروب، ظل كونسيل هادئًا ومخلصًا لسيده أرونكس.

8. What significant realization did Aronnax have while passing the sunken ship graveyard?

ما هو الإدراك المهم الذي أدركه أرونكس أثناء مروره بمقبرة السفينة الغارقة؟

Aronnax realized that Captain Nemo saw himself as part of the dead world beneath the ocean waves.

أدرك أرونكس أن الكابتن نيمو رأى نفسه جزءًا من عالم الأموات تحت أمواج المحيط.

9. What was Ned Land's argument for why they should escape, regardless of the Nautilus's wonders?

ما هي حجة نيد لاند لتبرير هروبهم، بغض النظر عن عجائب نوتيلوس؟

He argued that no man had the right to keep them as prisoners, no matter how wonderful or advanced the submarine was.

لقد زعم أنه ليس من حق أي رجل أن يحتفظ بهم كأسرى، بغض النظر عن مدى روعة الغواصة أو تقدمها.

General Exercises on Chapter 5



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Captain Nemo spoke passionately against _____.

- a. wealth b. injustice c. education d. discovery

2. Nemo attacked _____ without hesitation.

- a. warships b. submarines c. islands d. whales

3. To Aronnax, Nemo seemed both brave and a _____.

- a. scientist b. friend c. mysterious d. prisoner

4. Ned Land planned to _____.

- a. explore the sea b. escape c. stay forever d. join Nemo

5. Conseil remained _____ between scientific discovery and his master's choice.
 a. torn b. angry c. sad d. discovery

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Captain Nemo was clearly a man of wealth, education, and _____.
 a. joy b. sorrow c. anger d. fear
7. Nemo attacked warships, claiming to fight against _____.
 a. science b. freedom c. cruelty d. discovery
8. To Aronnax, Nemo was both brave and _____.
 a. friendly b. simple c. mysterious d. cruel
9. Ned Land argued that no man had the right to keep them as _____.
 a. scientists b. friends c. prisoners d. crew
10. Aronnax was torn between his desire for scientific discovery and his desire for _____.
 a. wealth b. freedom c. revenge d. power
11. Conseil's attitude was described as calm and _____ to his master.
 a. angry b. loyal c. mysterious d. unfair

Answer the following questions:

1. What are some clues in this chapter about Captain Nemo's past and personality?

2. How does the setting of the "graveyard of sunken ships" make Aronnax feel?

3. Why does Ned Land want to escape so badly, even though the Nautilus is wonderful?

4. Describe the different feelings Aronnax has about staying or escaping.

5. What do you think the "dead world beneath the waves" means to Captain Nemo?

Critical thinking - Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Captain Nemo attack warships but hide his own story?

2. Is Nemo a hero or a villain in this chapter? Explain.

3. Why is Aronnax "torn" between discovery and freedom?

4. How does the sunken ship graveyard represent Nemo's mind?

5. Can Ned Land's plan for freedom and Aronnax's desire for discovery ever work together?

Story Time

Twenty Thousand Leagues under The Sea.

Chapter
six

Escape to
Freedom

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

chance (n)	فرصة	coast (n)	الساحل
depths (n)	أعماق	shore (n)	شاطئ
storm (n)	عاصفة	vast (adj)	هائل / ضخم
curiosity (n)	شغف / فضول	mysterious (adj)	غامض
companion (n)	رفيق / صاحب	half-conscious (adj)	شبه مدرك
isolation (n)	عزلة	threaten (v) (ed)	يهدد
freedom (n)	الحرية	exhausted (adj)	منهك
raft (n)	طوف / قارب	crash (v) (ed)	يتحطم
mankind (n)	البشرية	near (v) (ed)	بالقرب من
solid ground (n)	أرض صلبة	drift (v) (ed)	ينجرف
adventure (n)	مغامرة	damage (v) (d)	يتلف
brilliance (n)	ذكاء	lower (v) (ed)	يخفض

Expressions & Prepositions

They drifted away	لقد انجرفوا بعيدا	reached the safety	وصلوا إلى الأمان
lead to	يؤدي إلى	wrote down	سجل / دون
at dawn	عند الفجر		



Definitions

weak (adj.)	ضعيف	delicate and easily damaged
exhausted (adj.)	منهك	feeling extremely tired or loss of energy
explore (v.)	يستكشف	to journey or travel over or through
wonders (n.)	عجائب	amazing things

- Read the following text. Who wanted to learn the truth about Captain Nemo?

At last, after many months, the Nautilus neared the **coasts**⁽¹⁾ of Europe. Ned Land saw this as a chance to **escape**⁽²⁾. During a strong **storm**⁽³⁾, the three companions secretly lowered a small boat into the sea. They drifted away, because of the storm, yet driven by the hope of **freedom**⁽⁴⁾.

The night was long and dangerous. Waves crashed over them, and the wind **threatened**⁽⁵⁾ to damage their weak craft. But **at dawn**⁽⁶⁾, exhausted and **half-conscious**⁽⁷⁾, they reached the

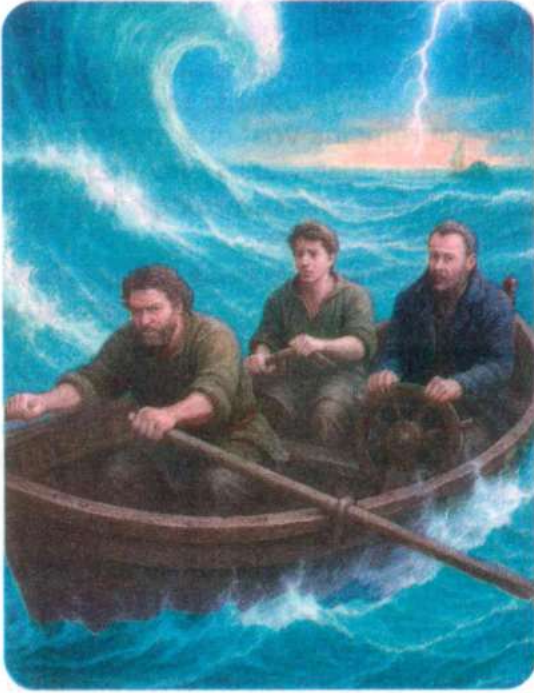
safety of a shore. For the first time in many months, they felt solid **ground**⁽⁸⁾ under their feet.

Aronnax later wrote down their incredible **adventures**⁽⁹⁾: the wonders of the sea, the dangers

they had faced, and the strange **brilliance**⁽¹⁰⁾ of Captain Nemo. He never discovered the full truth about Nemo's past, nor what became of the Nautilus. Did it still **explore**⁽¹¹⁾ the depths, hidden from **mankind**⁽¹²⁾, or had it crashed the storm.

The story closed not with final answers but with a lesson: Human **curiosity**⁽¹³⁾ and knowledge are powerful and can achieve wonders. Yet **ambition**⁽¹⁴⁾ mixed with sorrow

may lead to **isolation**⁽¹⁵⁾. The ocean remains vast and **mysterious**⁽¹⁶⁾, holding secrets **beyond our reach**⁽¹⁷⁾.



١. سواحل
٢. يهربوا
٣. عاصفة
٤. الحرية
٥. هددت
٦. عند الفجر
٧. شبه مدركين
٨. أرض صلبة
٩. مغامرات
١٠. ذكاء
١١. يستكشف
١٢. البشرية
١٣. شغف
١٤. طموح
١٥. عزلة
١٦. غامض
١٧. بعيدة عن متناولنا

Exercises on Chapter 6

A Answer the following questions:

SB Questions

1. Why did Aronnax and his companions choose to escape despite the dangers they faced?

لماذا اختار أرونأكس ورفاقه الهرب رغم المخاطر التي واجهوها؟
They chose to escape because the Nautilus was near the coasts of Europe, which they saw as their best chance for freedom.

اختار أرونأكس ورفاقه الهرب رغم المخاطر لأنهم رأوا في اقتراب الغواصة من سواحل أوروبا فرصة للعودة إلى الحرية..

2. How did the storm affect the companions' journey and what challenges did it present?

كيف أثرت العاصفة على رحلة الرفاق، وما التحديات التي واجهتها؟

The storm had a double effect. On one hand, it helped them escape. On the other hand, it presented extreme challenges.

كان للعاصفة تأثير مزدوج. فمن ناحية، ساعدتهم العاصفة على الهروب ولكن من ناحية أخرى، شكلت العاصفة تحدياً كبيراً.

3. What did Aronnax write about the events in the story?

ماذا كتب أرونأكس عن أحداث القصة؟

Aronnax wrote about their incredible adventures, the dangers they faced, and the strange brilliance of Captain Nemo.

دَوّن عجائب أعماق البحار، والمخاطر التي واجهوها، والعبقرية الغريبة للكابتن نيمو.

4. How did the three companions feel when they finally reached safety?

كيف شعر الرفاق الثلاثة عندما وصلوا أخيراً إلى بر الأمان؟

They were exhausted and half-conscious. The primary feeling was immense relief as they felt solid ground under their feet for the first time in many months.

شعروا بالإرهاق الشديد وكانوا في حالة شبه وعي. كان الشعور الأهم هو الشعور بالأمان تحت أقدامهم لأول مرة منذ أشهر عديدة.

5. What do you think Aronnax meant by "the ocean remains vast and mysterious"?

ما رأيك فيما قصده أرونأكس بقوله: «يظل المحيط شاسعاً وغامضاً»؟

I think Aronnax meant that despite human exploration and knowledge, the ocean is so immense that it keeps its deepest secrets hidden.

أعتقد أن أرونأكس قصد أن المحيط الشاسع يحوي أسراراً وأعماقاً لم يستطع الإنسان استكشافها أو فهمها بالكامل.

Bit by Bit questions

6. Why did Ned Land think it was a good time to escape?

لماذا رأى نيد لاند أن الوقت مناسب للهروب؟

Because the Nautilus was near the coasts of Europe.

- لأن سفينة نوتيلوس كانت قريبة من سواحل أوروبا.

7. What was the weather like during their escape?

كيف كان الطقس أثناء هروبهم؟

There was a very strong storm.

- كانت عاصفة قوية جداً.

8. How did the men feel when they finally reached the shore?

كيف شعر الرجال عندما وصلوا أخيراً إلى الشاطئ؟

They were exhausted and half-conscious.

- كانوا منهكين وشبه فاقد الوعي.

9. What are the three main things Aronnax wrote about?

ما هي أهم ثلاثة أمور كتب عنها أرونأكس؟

He wrote about the sea's wonders, the dangers they faced, and Captain Nemo's strange brilliance.

- كتب عن عجائب البحر، والمخاطر التي واجهها، وعبقرية الكابتن نيمو الغريبة.

10. According to the lesson, what can ambition mixed with sorrow lead to?

بحسب الدرس، إلى ماذا يؤدي الطموح الممزوج بالحزن؟

It can lead to isolation.

- قد يؤدي إلى العزلة.

Critical thinking questions

1. Why did Captain Nemo choose isolation instead of interacting with the world?

لماذا اختار الكابتن نيمو العزلة بدلاً من التفاعل مع العالم؟

Captain Nemo likely chose isolation due to a profound sorrow or a past tragedy caused by the world above.

من المرجح أن الكابتن نيمو اختار العزلة بسبب حزن عميق أو مأساة شخصية في ماضيه جعلته يفقد الثقة في المجتمع البشري والحضارة على السطح.

2. Does the sea symbolize freedom or danger in the story? Why?

هل يرمز البحر إلى الحرية أم الخطر في القصة؟ ولماذا؟

The sea symbolizes both freedom and danger, depending on the perspective.

يرمز البحر لكل من الحرية والخطر في القصة، لكن بطرق مختلفة.

- **Freedom:** For Captain Nemo, the sea is a kingdom where he is free from the world he despises.

فهو يرمز للحرية بالنسبة للكابتن نيمو، حيث يمثل مملكته الخاصة التي يحكمها بعيداً عن قيود العالم.

- **Danger:** The sea is also a threatening and powerful force, as seen in the storm that nearly kills Aronnax and his companions.

الخطر: البحر أيضاً يشكل قوة تهديدية وقوية، كما رأينا في العاصفة التي كادت أن تقتل أرونالكس ورفاقه.

3. What does Aronnax's view of human knowledge being "limited" tell us about humanity's relationship with the unknown?

ماذا يُخبرنا رأي أرونالكس في "محدودية" المعرفة البشرية عن علاقة البشرية بالمجهول؟

Aronnax's view tells us that humanity's relationship with the unknown is one of perpetual curiosity and pursuit, but also one of humility.

وتخبرنا وجهة نظر أرونالكس أن علاقة البشرية بالمجهول هي علاقة فضول دائم وسعي دائم، ولكنها أيضاً علاقة لها حدود.

Bit by Bit questions

4. What is the "lesson" about ambition mixed with sorrow?

ما هو "الدرس" المستفاد من الطموح الممزوج بالحزن؟

It says that great talent (ambition) plus great pain (sorrow) can make someone lonely and isolated, like Nemo.

يقول إن الموهبة العظيمة (الطموح) بالإضافة إلى الألم الشديد (الحزن) يمكن أن تجعل المرء وحيداً ومعزولاً، مثل نيمو.

5. Why do you think the story leave Nemo's fate a mystery?

لماذا تعتقد أن القصة تترك مصير نيمو غامضاً؟

To keep the ocean and Nemo's character feel mysterious and endless, like the sea itself.

لإبقاء المحيط وشخصية نيمو غامضين ولا نهائيين، مثل البحر نفسه.

6. How is the ocean itself like a character in the story's ending?

كيف يُشبه المحيط نفسه شخصية في نهاية القصة؟

It is shown as a powerful, secret-keeping place that humans cannot fully control or understand.

يُصوّر كمكان قوي يحفظ الأسرار لا يستطيع البشر السيطرة عليه أو فهمه تماماً.

7. What two "powers" does the final lesson say humans have?

ما هما "القوتين" اللتين يذكرهما الدرس الأخير لدى البشر؟

The power of curiosity (to ask questions) and the power of knowledge (to learn).

قوة الفضول (طرح الأسئلة) وقوة المعرفة (التعلم).

8. Did Ned Land's value of "freedom" win in the end?

هل انتصرت قيمة "الحرية" لدى نيد لاند في النهاية؟

Yes, because they escaped. But Aronnax also valued knowledge, which he had to leave behind.

نعم، لأنهم هربوا. لكن أرونالكس قَدَّر المعرفة أيضاً، والتي كان عليه أن يتركها وراءه.

General Exercises on Chapter 6



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB questions

1. What was the main motivation of the characters when they secretly lowered a small boat into the sea?
 - a. To escape their enemies
 - b. To find treasure
 - c. To seek freedom
 - d. To explore new lands
2. How was the weather described during their escape attempt?
 - a. Dangerous and stormy
 - b. Calm and peaceful
 - c. Clear and sunny
 - d. Foggy and cloudy
3. What happened at dawn after the storm?
 - a. They reached the shore.
 - b. The boat sank.
 - c. They were captured.
 - d. They turned back to the submarine.
4. Who was the inventor of the Nautilus mentioned in the text?
 - a. Aronnax
 - b. Conseil
 - c. Captain Nemo
 - d. Ned Land
5. What was the final lesson learned by Aronnax about human knowledge?
 - a. It can solve all problems.
 - b. It cannot achieve true freedom.
 - c. It can achieve great things but is limited.
 - d. It is useless in the ocean.

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. What did Ned Land see as the Nautilus neared Europe?
 - a. A chance to explore the coast.
 - b. A chance to escape.
 - c. A dangerous storm approaching.
 - d. The home of Captain Nemo.
7. How was the weather described during their escape attempt?
 - a. Calm and peaceful.
 - b. Foggy and cloudy.
 - c. With a strong storm.
 - d. Clear and sunny.
8. The full truth about Nemo's past
 - a. was discovered in the end.
 - b. was that he was a pirate.
 - c. remained secret until the end.
 - d. was known by every one.

9. What did Aronnax do after his escape?
 - a. He searched for the Nautilus.
 - b. He became a sea captain.
 - c. He wrote down their incredible adventures.
 - d. He revealed all of Captain Nemo's secrets.
10. What is one thing Aronnax never discovered?
 - a. The location of the Nautilus.
 - b. The full truth about Captain Nemo's past.
 - c. How to build a submarine.
 - d. The names of his companions.

Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the storm help them escape?

2. Why does Aronnax call Nemo "brilliant" even after being his prisoner?

3. Was escaping the right choice for Aronnax? Why?

4. What does the "weak craft" (small boat) tell you about their escape plan?

5. Who is more free at the end: the men on land or Captain Nemo in the sea?

Critical thinking - Answer the following questions:

1. What was the hardest part of the escape for Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned?

2. How do you think they felt when they first stepped on land again?

3. What wonders do you think Aronnax wrote about in his book?

4. Why do you think the author never tells us what happened to Captain Nemo?

5. What is one secret you think the ocean might still be hiding?

ENGLISH

FOR PREPARATORY SCHOOLS

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20
26

الصف الثالث الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني



rd 3
PREP
SECOND TERM

دار غزة



للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

R

Review on Unit 7 (Sports)

Lessons 1 & 2

شخص رياضي	كبار السن
العمل الجماعي	الصحة البدنية
خصم	طاقة
مغزى / درس مستفاد	رمي القرص (رياضة أولمبية)
النصر	مصارع في العصور الرومانية القديمة
جائزة	سباق العربات الحربية
الروح الرياضية	الرماية بالسهم
الأمانة	فارس (في العصور الوسطى)
إصابة	معركة / قتال
مصاب	اللعب النزيه / الروح الرياضية
عالمي	شرف / تكريم
إعجاب	إعجاب
المباراة النهائية - نهائي	بطل
منافس / خصم	احترام / يحترم
مجتمع	تركيز / يركز
مسابقة / منافسة	يستمتع بـ
حدث	بشري - إنسان
يصل إلى	القوة / الصلابة
يتنافس	السرعة
يشمل	فرصة
يمارس / يتدرب	المصارعة
يُعجب بـ	قتال
يستمر	ركوب الخيل
يحطم	المبارزة (رياضة استخدام السيوف)
يهاجم	رياضة الكريكيت

1. Write the word:

	round object thrown in sport
	a soldier in the Middle Ages
	cart pulled by horses
	treating others honestly in games
	good reputation or respect from other people
	a strong feeling of approval of somebody because of their good qualities
	a feeling of respect and approval of somebody
	a person or team that won a competition in a sport
	to give attention to one particular subject or person rather than another

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
strength		
dangerous		
popular		
global		
peace		
inspire		
champion		
fair		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

re- / ir- / -ous / -ing / -ation / -ition / -ship / th	
regular	start
danger	gener
fam	compet
runn	friend
walk	streng



1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children like to do _____ every day to stay active.
a. sport b. homework c. play d. exercise
2. Lifting weights helps to build _____ in your arms.
a. focus b. speed c. skill d. strength
3. A cheetah runs with great _____ in the forest.
a. teamwork b. speed c. strength d. honor
4. Drawing well needs a lot of _____ and practice.
a. health b. focus c. respect d. skill
5. The _____ happen every four years in different countries.
a. matches b. tournaments
c. Olympic Games d. races
6. I enjoy _____ every morning in the park.
a. horse riding b. wrestling c. fencing d. running
7. The student practiced _____ to improve his throw.
a. discus throwing b. football c. fencing d. cricket
8. A _____ wore armor and rode a horse.
a. champion b. knight c. athlete d. teacher
9. Our _____ celebrates festivals and helps neighbors.
a. community b. friendship c. teamwork d. honor
10. Exercise is good for your _____ and mind.
a. health b. honor c. friendship d. focus

2

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She _____ (use) to ride her bike to school every day.
2. They didn't _____ (used) to watch much television.
3. We used to _____ (living) in a much smaller house.
4. I _____ (not / use) to like vegetables when I was young.
5. My grandfather _____ (use) to tell us wonderful stories.
6. This building didn't _____ (used) to be a library; it was a post office.
7. People used to _____ (writing) letters instead of sending emails.

8. She _____ (not / use) to wear glasses, but now she does.
9. There _____ (use) to be a beautiful garden here.
10. He didn't _____ (used) to be so serious; he was very funny.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. We lived in a small village before moving to the city. (used to)

2. They were good friends, but they grew apart. (used to)

3. She didn't enjoy spicy food, but now she loves it. (not use)

4. My father smoked a pipe when I was a child. (used to)

5. There was an old cinema on this street. (used to)

6. I didn't believe in ghosts, but that story changed my mind. (not use)

7. He took the bus to work every day. (used to)

8. She had very long hair when she was a teenager. (used to)

9. They didn't travel abroad because it was too expensive. (not use)

10. People wrote letters to stay in touch. (used to)



اللاعب الرياضي	الركض / الجري
قارة	رفع الأثقال
الامتياز / التفوق	المصارعة
خصم	ألعاب القوى
السلام	الألعاب الأولمبية
الصدقة	أمة / دولة / شعب
الاحترام - يحترم	مُشجّع (لفريق)
مُنَجِّد	دوائر
مشهور	قيّم
حديث / مُعاصر	إنجازات
أولمبي	روح
قديم	بفخر
الجُمباز	بعدالة
كُرّة القدم	يُذَكَّر
كُرّة السلة	ينضم / يلتحق بـ
الكُرّة الطائرة	يحضر
التنّس	يمثل
السباحة	يحتفل بـ
كُرّة اليد	

1. Write the word:

	a person who competes in sports
	the quality of being extremely good
	a person that you are playing or fighting against
	one of the earth's large land masses (Asia, Australia, Africa, Europe, North and South America, and Antarctica)

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
ancient	_____	_____
respect	_____	_____
peace	_____	_____
friendship	_____	_____
united	_____	_____
famous	_____	_____
modern	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ed / -ic / -s	
unit _____	Olympic _____
athlet _____	athletic _____

Lesson



Lesson 3

1 Complete the following dialog:

Sama : Hello, Mona! Do you belong to the adventure sports club?

Mona : ① _____

Sama : That sounds exciting! What activity do you enjoy the most?

Mona : ② _____

Sama : Interesting! Why do you prefer that activity?

Mona : ③ _____

Sama : And how often do you usually practice it?

Mona : ④ _____

Sama : Is joining the club easy for new members?

Mona : ⑤ _____

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**athletes - countries - friendship - compete - continents**

The Olympic Games bring together ① _____ from more than 200 nations. They travel from different ② _____ to ③ _____ in many sports such as athletics, swimming, and football. The Olympic rings represent the five ④ _____ united in friendship. Although winning medals is important, the true spirit of the Olympics is about respect, excellence, and celebrating achievements together.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The _____ take place every four years in different countries.
a. races b. tournaments c. matches d. Olympic Games
2. Many _____ train hard to win medals in the competition.
a. artists b. teachers c. athletes d. musicians
3. More than 200 _____ participate in the Olympic Games.
a. clubs b. cities c. schools d. nations
4. Players _____ in different sports to show their talent.
a. rest b. celebrate c. admire d. compete
5. _____ is very popular in Europe and South America.
a. Archery b. Wrestling c. Gymnastics d. Football
6. Many people enjoy _____ in the pool during summer.
a. football b. running c. swimming d. fencing
7. _____ includes running, jumping, and throwing events.
a. Cricket b. Chess c. Tennis d. Athletics
8. _____ helps children develop flexibility and strength.
a. Gymnastics b. Wrestling c. Football d. Tennis
9. The _____ has five rings of different colors.
a. club flag b. national flag c. school flag d. Olympic flag
10. The _____ on the flag represent the five continents.
a. stripes b. stars c. lines d. five rings

Lessons 5 & 6

رياضة فردية	بطولة / دوري
اللياقة البدنية	إثارة
سباق تنافسي	مسابقة
الانضباط	بطولة
العمل الجماعي	إلهام
القفز الطويل	احترام
الشعور العام	لائق بدنيا
طاقة	نشط
مدرب	مُريح
قبل النهائي	بصحة جيدة
مُفَضِّل	مُنْتَعِش
مُثير	هادئ
بانتظام	في حالة تركيز
يفيد / ينفع - يستفيد	يشجع
	رياضة جماعية

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
inspiration		
fit		
active		
relaxing		
refreshed		
focused		
tournament		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ition /-ation /-ship	
compet _____	champion
inspir _____	



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teamwork - sailing - patient - strong - discover

Last year, a group of friends went on an adventure across the ocean, ① _____ from one port to another. They wanted to ② _____ hidden caves and enjoy the wonders of nature. The waves were strong, but they stayed ③ _____ and worked together with great ④ _____. Each member of the crew was loyal to one another, helping whenever someone needed support.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Our school organizes a _____ every year for all students.
a. sports day b. festivals c. parties d. meetings
4. In the _____, each team member runs a part of the track.
a. swimming session b. long jump c. chess game d. relay race
5. Teachers teach _____ to help students follow rules in sports.
a. speed b. strength c. discipline d. excitement
6. Football requires _____ to pass the ball and score goals.
a. speed b. talent c. courage d. teamwork
7. I watched an exciting _____ last night on TV.
a. football match b. chess game c. swimming session d. homework
8. Many schools join a _____ to compete with other teams.
a. tournament b. festival c. party d. exhibition
9. The audience felt a lot of _____ during the final match.
a. laziness b. boredom c. fear d. excitement
10. Students practice every day to improve in the _____.
a. homework b. break c. competition d. game
11. The coach _____ each player to try their best.
a. encouraged b. ignored c. punished d. avoided
12. Winning the _____ is the dream of all players.
a. championship b. exam c. party d. festival

Test on Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Athletes must focus on their during a match.
a. opponents b. friends c. teachers d. parents
- The team's performance was an for young athletes.
a. failure b. problem c. challenge d. inspiration
- Players pass the ball in to score goals.
a. Handball b. Football c. Tennis d. Athletics
- Sport can help build strong between classmates.
a. competition b. friendship c. fear d. anger

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

Olympic flag - compete - event - peace - strength

The Olympic Games are a big world sports ① Athletes from many countries meet to ② in sports like football and swimming. The five rings on the ③ show the five continents united in friendship. The Olympics are not only about medals, but also about respect, fair play, and bringing people together in ④

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Regular exercise is very important for our health. It helps us become stronger and more active. When we play sports, our hearts work better and our bodies stay fit. Many students enjoy sports such as football, basketball, and swimming. These activities help them make new friends and learn how to work in teams.

Sports also reduce stress and make us feel happy because they improve our mood. Doctors say that doing exercise for at least thirty minutes a day is good for everyone. Even simple activities like walking or cycling can make a big difference in our health. That is why we should make exercise a part of our daily routine.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Regular exercise helps people to be
a. weaker b. stronger c. lazier d. slower
- Students can make new friends when they
a. sleep b. read c. play sports d. travel

3. According to doctors, exercising for _____ is good for everyone.
a. thirty minutes b. five minutes c. two hours d. ten hours
4. Walking and cycling are examples of _____ activities.
a. difficult b. dangerous c. simple d. boring

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Why do sports make students feel happy?

6. How can walking or cycling help us?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sailors in the nineteenth century believed that the strange creature they saw was a _____.
a. giant squid b. shark c. whale d. sea monster
2. Ned Land joined the group because he was known as a skilled _____.
a. captain b. harpooner c. scientist d. engineer
3. Professor Aronnax agreed to take part in the mission that was organised to _____.
a. find the creature b. train sailors c. study whales d. repair ships
4. The ship decided to follow the strange animal when it suddenly _____.
a. changed colour b. jumped out of the water
c. showed itself in the waves d. stopped moving

B. Answer the following questions

5. How did Professor Aronnax's interest in marine life influence his decision to join the mission?

6. How could the shared goal of finding the creature change the way the crew members worked together?

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. This town was much quieter before the new factory opened. (used to)

2. I didn't exercise regularly, but now I go to the gym. (not use)

3. He worked as a chef before becoming a teacher. (used to)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I used to _____ (studying) French, but I've forgotten most of it.
2. They _____ (not / use) to have a car, so they walked everywhere.
3. My sister _____ (use) to collect stamps when she was little.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hadi and Karim are talking about the importance of doing sports.

Hadi : I think doing sports is very important for everyone.

Karim : Yes, that's true.

Hadi : ① _____

Karim : Really? I usually sit at home after school.

Hadi : ② _____

Karim : Maybe running. It looks easy and fun.

Hadi : ③ _____

Karim : I think I should start doing it in the early morning.

Hadi : ④ _____

Karim : Yes, and it helps me stay healthy, too.

Hadi : ⑤ _____

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of sports"

Lessons 1 & 2



الصبر	تقاليد
التناغم/الانسجام	ثقافة
الهوية	مراسم/احتفال
يتجمع/يجتمع	مجتمع
تجمع	مهرجان/احتفال
يعكس	احتفالات
اثارة	قيم
كبير السن	اهمية
طيبة	تاريخ
تماثيل	شائع
مشابه	أقارب
روح	بهجة
تحول	احترام
عادات	جليد
جيران	هائل /ضخم
حكمة	ابداع
هدية	فصلي
مبهج	الصدافة
عيد الفصح	ضيف
الحياة الواقعية	مصدر
يسجل	أحداث رياضية
يمرر/ينقل	إقليم/منطقة
يظهر	وليمة
يحيي	موسيقى
	ملابس

1. Write the word:

	a belief, custom or way of doing something
	the way of life of a group of people
	to show or be a sign of the nature of something or of somebody's attitude or feeling
	special event like a wedding
	the ability to stay calm and accept a delay or something annoying without complaining
	peace or balance among people or things
	who someone is

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
appear		
common		
massive		
different		
harmony		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ment / -ce / -ness / -ity / -al / -ation / -ship / -ful	
excite	culture / season
importan / patien	transform
kind	friend
creativ	joy



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The town keeps its old alive by teaching them to children.
a. ideas b. games c. traditions d. photos
2. Learning about different helps students respect others.
a. teams b. cultures c. numbers d. colors
3. The two houses stayed by a small wooden bridge.
a. lost b. dark c. tired d. connected.
4. Strong work together during difficult times.
a. communities b. bottles c. mirrors d. beaches
5. We study to learn about life in the past.
a. dust b. salt c. history d. traffic
6. Many tourists visit the city during summer
a. rules b. festivals c. tools d. lessons
7. The town held big after the team won the cup.
a. celebrations b. problems c. shadows d. storms
8. Parents teach children important at a young age.
a. values b. bottles c. signals d. borders
9. Every has traditions that make it special.
a. wall b. society c. coin d. machine
10. It is to take off your shoes before entering some homes.
a. noisy b. sharp c. empty d. common

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The book (who) I borrowed from the library were interesting.
2. The boy (whose) plays football is very clever.
3. The girl (when) sits next to me in class is very kind.

4. The school (where) is near my house is being built nowadays.
5. The school (when) my father works is near our house.
6. This is the bank (where) is near my house .
7. The girl (that) bag is red is my sister.
8. Friday is the day (which) we go to the club.
9. The man (who) phone just rang should answer.
10. This is the village (when) I was born.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. The boy is my cousin. He plays football. (who)
.....
2. I know the city. It has a famous museum. (which)
.....
3. She is the teacher. She teaches English. (who)
.....
4. I saw the boy . He won the prize. (who)
.....
5. This is the man . His son is a doctor. (whose)
.....
6. Friday is a holiday. Hamza visits his grandfather on Friday. (when)
.....
7. Amman is the city . Yara wrote about it. (which)
.....
8. June is the month. Pupils take their holiday in it. (when)
.....
9. The book is expensive. I bought it yesterday. (which)
.....
10. Cairo is the city. Yara works in it.. (where)
.....

Lesson 3

تكرم	كرم الضيافة
أجيال	مجتمع
يومي	شموع
ممارسات	محبوب
دور	عظيم/كبير
مظروف	ضيف
حظ	ذكرى
قديم	بدفء
يعد/يجهز	طريقة
وجبات	حي
اهتمام/عناية	حديث
يحل محل	يشارك
في الخارج	يؤمن/يصدق
غرض	يعكس
تزيين/زخرفة	تقليدي
قبور	يوصل/يتصل
	العادات

1. Write the word:

	an accepted way of behaving or of doing things in a society or a community
	To do something that shows great respect for someone or something
	friendly and generous behaviour towards guests
	all the people who were born at about the same time

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
hospitality	_____	_____
community	_____	_____
honor	_____	_____
simple	_____	_____
guest	_____	_____
polite	_____	_____
long-standing	_____	_____
grand	_____	_____
alive	_____	_____
warmly	_____	_____

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ation / -al / -ness	
gener _____	tradition _____
happi _____	_____

Lesson



Lesson 3

1 Complete the following dialog:

A teacher and a student are talking about the Grand Egyptian Museum

Teacher : Today we'll talk about the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Student : Excuse me sir. ① _____?

Teacher : The Grand Egyptian Museum is a large museum near the Pyramids of Giza.

Student : That's amazing! ② _____?

Teacher : It will display thousands of ancient Egyptian artifacts, including the treasures of Tutankhamun.

Student : Some exhibits show how Egyptians lived thousands of years ago.

Teacher : ③ _____

Student : What about the statues and monuments, sir? What can we see?

Teacher : ④ _____

Student : When will the museum be fully open to visitors?

Teacher : ⑤ _____

Student : Thank you very much, sir. I can't wait to visit it.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pollution - air - attractive - especially - monuments

Ismailia is beautiful! There are ① _____ buildings and interesting ② _____. There isn't much traffic, so there isn't much ③ _____. There are lots of things to do, ④ _____ at the weekend.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many _____ help people understand their country's history.
a. apples b. customs c. roads d. tools
2. Morning _____ like exercise can make your day better.
a. practices b. bottles c. colors d. storms
3. Every school has its own _____ that students learn to follow.
a. cloud b. mirror c. engine d. culture
4. A strong _____ supports its members in difficult times.
a. river b. community c. carpet d. mountain
5. Summer _____ attract many visitors to the town.
a. festivals b. tables c. pencils d. mirrors
6. The main _____ of the trip was to learn teamwork.
a. purpose b. rain c. corner d. plate
7. Sports events can _____ people _____.
a. break / slowly b. bring / together c. hide / away d. turn / around
8. Children like to _____ their rooms with colorful drawings.
a. open b. push c. forget d. decorate
9. He has lots of happy _____ of his stay in Japan.
a. shoes b. graves c. memories d. birds
10. People lit _____ during the quiet evening ceremony.
a. chairs b. candles c. messages d. glasses

Lessons 5 & 6

ثقافي	حي / على قيد الحياة
خبير	احتفال
تاريخ	مرتبط
قيم	مجتمع
مميز	توضيح / شرح
وجبة	روابط أسرية
الوحدة	يشكل
الكرم	يشارك
عادات	يزين / يزخرف
عائلات	يربط يوصل
معا	يوجد
مهرجان	يخلق/يبدع

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
delicious		
beautiful		
special		
unity		
generosity		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-al / -ly / -ce / -ful / -ation / -ity

cultur / tradition

wonder

love

explan

importan

generos

Lessons

Lessons 5 - 6
1

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

amazed - countryside - monuments - museum - amazing

A lot of tourists prefer spending their holidays in Egypt as it has a lot of **1** They also like to go to the Egyptian **2** to see our old treasures. Some of them prefer going to the **3** to enjoy the fresh air and the clean environment. Finally, they are **4** to see such these wonderful places.

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- People celebrate to honor their ancestors and long-standing practices.
 a. traditions b. neighbors c. tourists d. hope
- Different societies have unique that guide their daily lives.
 a. festival b. decorations
 c. colorful clothes d. customs
- A studies the art, music, and beliefs of different communities.
 a. relatives b. cultural expert c. carnival d. family unity
- Festivals and events often help to from different regions.
 a. connect people b. decorate c. share meals d. hope
- Reading about ancient civilizations can give us a better understanding of
 a. friendship b. generosity c. history d. neighbors

6. Honesty and kindness are important moral
a. values b. tourists c. carnivals d. decorations
7. Language and traditions are part of a person's
a. relatives b. hospitality c. festival d. identity
8. Being part of a community creates a sense of
a. share meals b. cultural expert c. belonging d. carnival
9. Many British people enjoy in the late afternoon.
a. afternoon tea b. eid c. hope d. traditions
10. Families often during holidays to celebrate together.
a. fight b. work c. sleep d. gather

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The Importance of Traditions"

Blank handwriting practice paper with horizontal lines.

Test on Unit 8

1

Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Families often _____ during holidays to strengthen bonds.
a. hope b. decorations c. colorful clothes d. share meals
- Parents encourage _____ to ensure strong family relationships.
a. tourists b. traditions c. carnival d. family unity
- Parents gave their children small _____ as gifts.
a. clouds b. trees c. wheels d. envelopes
- Good _____ makes guests feel welcome and relaxed.
a. illness b. hospitality c. weather d. silence

2

Read and complete the text with words from the list:

teaching - taught - tasks - proud - role

I do not think any word or sentence can describe mother. My mother is my ⑤ _____ model. She has ⑥ _____ me to respect people. I feel safe because she is always by my side. My mother always helps me with my homework and other school ⑦ _____. She organizes everything in my life. I am ⑧ _____ of my mother.

3

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Leadership is the ability to guide and inspire others to achieve a common goal. A good leader listens to team members and respects their opinions. Teamwork is essential because no one can succeed alone. When people work together, they can share ideas and solve problems faster. Leaders encourage cooperation and make sure everyone feels valued. Communication is a key part of teamwork. Successful teams trust each other and support one another. Leadership also means making fair decisions and setting a good example. Challenges become easier when a team works with unity. Both leadership and teamwork help people achieve success in any project.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Leaders encourage _____ in their teams.
a. competition b. cooperation c. isolation d. neglect

2. successful teams are built on
 a. trust b. fear c. confusion d. laziness
3. teamwork helps people problems faster.
 a. ignore b. delay c. solve d. create

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is one main quality of a good leader?

5. Why is teamwork important?

6. How does leadership help a team during challenges?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ned Land became furious because he cared most about
 a. the ocean b. freedom c. riches d. knowledge
2. Professor Aronnax agreed to join the Nautilus mainly due to his
 a. thrill b. curiosity c. fear d. wish for freedom
3. The vessel commanded by Captain Nemo, named, was designed for underwater life.
 a. Nautilus b. Atlantis c. Sea King d. Odyssey
4. Nemo revealed treasures from the ocean, including
 a. pearls, gold, and ancient artifacts b. jewels, metals, and paintings
 c. seashells, corals, and shipwrecks d. gold, diamonds, and gems

B. Answer the following questions

5. How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land?

6. If you were in Ned Land's place, would you try to escape or stay on the ship? Why?

5 Rewrite the following sentences:

1. That is the time. We met our teacher for the first time then. (when)

2. The festival is held every spring. It is very colorful. (which)

3. The boys are playing in the garden. They are friends (who)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The city (which) we visited last summer is beautiful.
2. The festival (who) is held every spring is amazing.
3. Mr. Khaled (which) car is black wants to buy a new one

7 Complete the following dialog:

Karim and Samy are talking about cultures and traditions.

Karim : Have you ever learned about other countries' traditions?

Samy : ① I really enjoy discovering new customs.

Karim : I love that, too. Last week, I read about Japanese tea ceremonies.

Samy : That sounds interesting! ② ?

Karim : Yes, they have many traditions that show respect and discipline.

Samy : ③ ?

Karim : I think their festivals are the most exciting part of their culture.

Samy : I agree. I want to travel and see different cultures myself.

Karim : ④ ! It's the best way to learn about the world.

Samy : ⑤

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A custom in your family or community"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. When does it happen?
2. What do people do?
3. Who takes part?
4. What values does it show?

Review on Unit 9 (Courage and Survival)

Lessons 1 & 2

أوراق (النبات أو الشجر)	قرينة/ دليل
فروع / أغصان	نُغز
طعم/ مذاق	مُستكشف
البحث عن	قِطْع أثرية
شُجاع	ماوى / ملجأ - يَحتمي
غارق	كشاف كهربائي
رائج / منتشر	البقاء / النجاة
حي / على قيد الحياة	حامض الطعم
محظوظ	مذعور
نهائي	مخفي
تاريخي	الشجاعة
حمضي	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
آمن	العمل الجماعي
مفاجئ	قرصان
بشكل إبداعي	أسطورة
يهم	حل المشكلات
يشجع	إثارة / انفعال
يسد / يغلق	ذكي
يعبئ	البقاء
ينبض بسرعة	خطر
خوف - يخاف	اختيار
إشارة / تلميح - يلمح	غابة / أدغال

1. Write the word:

	a hint that helps you solve something
	A question or a puzzle with a hidden answer
	a piece of historical object from the past
	a person who travels to discover new places
	being out of sight or not easily seen
	a safe place to stay and protect yourself
	light carried to see in the dark
	living through a dangerous or difficult situation
	having an acidic taste, like lemon
	showed sudden fear

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
clue		
riddle		
brave		
shelter		
survival		
sour		
panicked		
hidden		
courage		
alive		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ity / -er / -ly / -ment / -able / -en-	
activ_____	_____
explor_____	enjoy_____
creative_____	_____ courage

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The clever detective followed the _____ to solve the mystery of the crime.
a. news b. clues c. shoes d. views
- The children laughed as they tried to solve funny _____ during the game.
a. middles b. handles c. candles d. riddles
- The pirate buried his treasure in a _____ location on the secret island.
a. hidden b. ridden c. bitten d. written
- A team of brave _____ spent years charting the coastline of the island.
a. destroyers b. employers c. explorers d. importers
- The museum has a collection of ancient _____ found in the pyramids.
a. contacts b. artefacts c. impacts d. contracts
- We quickly built a small _____ to protect us from the rainstorm.
a. shelter b. builder c. server d. poster
- The lemon juice tasted too _____ for me to drink.
a. delicious b. tasty c. healthy d. sour
- I really enjoy _____ the weekend at home with my family.
a. spending b. to spend c. spend d. spent

Unit 9 Courage and Survival

9. She refused in the meeting because she wasn't ready.

- a. speaking b. spoke c. to speak d. to speaking

10. They decided a new language together before traveling abroad.

- a. learning b. to learn c. learn d. learned

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We agreed (leave) earlier so we could reach the mountain before dark.

2. He hopes (become) a professional photographer one day.

3. They avoided (look) at me during the meeting.

4. My friend suggested (apply) for a job in the new factory.

5. The alarm clock has stopped (work), and I need to repair it.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. It is a bad idea to use your phone while someone is talking to you. (avoid)

2. I do not want to clean the kitchen because it's too much work. (don't enjoy)

3. She enjoys swimming in the pool when the weather is warm. (loves to)

4. Do you mind helping me with my homework? (Can)

5. I consider starting my new project in January. (plan)

Lesson 3



الضعفاء	قبيلة
رُواة	استراتيجية
عقبة/صعوبة	خصم/عدو
مقاتل	وفاء
القيَم	وفي
أجيال	حكمة
مُخلص	حكاية شعبية
داعِم	أسطورة شعبية
خاص/مميّز	بطل شعبي
ينافس/يتنافس	آداء/عرض
يلهم	الأعداء
يؤخّذ	الشجاعة
يشمل	معركة
يهزم/هزيمة	قائد
يدافع عن	قيادة

1. Write the word:

	a group of families living together with shared traditions
	a person or group that competes with another
	being faithful and supportive to others
	clever plan to win a battle
	great intelligence and good judgment

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
rival		
hardship		
loyal		
compete		
unite		
defend		
strategy		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ty / -dom / -ance / -ship / -ry / -er /	
perform	leader
brave	loyal
lead	free

Lesson

Lesson 3
1 Complete the following dialog:

Karim is talking to Omar about his experience when he got lost in the Jungle

Omar : What happened during your trip?

Karim : ①

Omar : ②?

Karim : I lost the map and couldn't find my way back.

Omar : ③?

Karim : I climbed a small hill, and luckily ④

Omar : I'm glad you're safe now.

Karim : ⑤

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bravery - hero - performance - leader - tribe

A long time ago, there was a small tribe who lived near the mountains. Their
 ① was a wise man named Tariq. He was known for his ②
 and kindness. One day, some rivals attacked the ③ Tariq fought bravely
 to protect his people. He became a folk ④ His story is still told today,
 inspiring everyone to be brave in times of hardship.

3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The desert lived peacefully together, sharing food and water.
 a. sand b. country c. tribe d. wedding
- Good means guiding others with confidence and fairness.
 a. leadership b. partnership c. hardship d. scholarship
- She showed great when she spoke in front of the whole school.
 a. dream b. sleep c. dream d. courage
- The man lifted a very heavy rock to show his amazing
 a. speed b. strength c. colour d. focus
- Dogs are famous for their they always stay by their owners' side.
 a. loyalty b. reality c. royalty d. unity
- Our school's biggest in the soccer game is the school from the next town.
 a. arrival b. survival c. rival d. trial
- My grandfather shares his with me, teaching me how to make good decisions.
 a. kingdom b. wisdom c. freedom d. boredom
- Colleges usually to attract the best students.
 a. complete b. compete c. delete d. defeat
- The singer's at the concert was amazing. Everyone loved it.
 a. importance b. acceptance c. performance d. resistance
- The soldiers were trained to protect the border from attacks.
 a. enemy b. lonely c. friendly d. funny

Lessons 5 & 6

مغامرة	هدف
ثقافات	رحلة
صحاري	الإبحار
تقاليد	الشجاعة
بوصلة	قوي
مقدمة	خطير
مغزى / درس مستفاد	يسافر
عالم في التاريخ	يستمتع بـ
المعرفة	يكتشف
الفضول / حب الاستطلاع	يلهم
هجوم / يهاجم	صفات
عاصفة	الصبر
خاتمة	أخطار
يصف	غابة مطيرة
يتفادى / يتجنب	حيوانات برية
يعبر	أمطار غزيرة
يحمي	تقاليد
يحترم	الطبيعة
يستمر	بث لبرنامج عبر الانترنت
يبقى على قيد الحياة / ينجو	مُضيف / يستضيف

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
bravery		
powerful		
dangerous		
inspire		
wild		
heavy		
curiosity		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-er / -ful / -ous	
danger	travel
power	

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

loyal - teamwork - sailing - strong - discover

Last summer, we went on a journey across the sea, ① _____ from one island to another. We wanted to ② _____ new places and enjoy nature. The waves were ③ _____, but we learned patience and ④ _____. It was a wonderful lesson about courage and respect for the beauty of the sea.

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Seeing people help each other in hard times can _____ us to be kinder.
a. retire b. inquire c. inspire d. admire
- Be careful! Swimming alone in the deep lake is a big _____.
a. manger b. painter c. stranger d. danger
- One of my best friend's greatest _____ is that she always tells the truth.
a. qualities b. holidays c. melodies d. activities.
- After making a mistake, he learned an important _____ about being careful.
a. reason b. season c. lesson d. person
- Many unique animals and plants live in the Amazon _____.
a. ocean b. continent c. desert d. rainforest
- If you want to grow plants, you need time and a lot of _____.
a. distance b. patience c. absence d. presence
- Some animals can _____ in deserts with very little food or water.
a. arrive b. drive c. survive d. dive
- The children felt _____ and warm inside the house during the loud thunderstorm outside.
a. safe b. scared c. panicked d. pale
- To get out of the forest, we used a _____ to find our way to the north.
a. campus b. progress c. compass d. chorus
- The lion is a _____ animal that rules the forest.
a. careful b. powerful c. colorful d. peaceful

3

Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A folk tale that taught you a lesson."

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test on Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- Travelers often back small gifts from the countries they visit.
a. come b. give c. sing d. bring
- The leader of the tribe defeated his rival. "Rival" is a synonym for
a. friend b. enemy c. hero d. captain
- We add the prefix "....." to the word "danger" to change it into a verb.
a. en b. in c. im d. ir
- The child's made her open the box to see what was inside.
a. capacity b. generosity c. equality d. curiosity

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

hardship - wisdom - torch - proud - calmed

The explorer walked deep into the dark cave. When his ① went out, he panicked for a moment but soon ② down. Using his strength and ③, he found his way by feeling the walls and listening to echoes. At last, he reached the exit, ④ of his courage.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Lina was an explorer who loved visiting new places. One day, she joined a team to explore a deep rainforest. The trees were tall, and the air was full of strange sounds. Suddenly, the group lost their map, and everyone panicked. But Lina stayed calm and used her compass to find the right direction. After hours of walking, they found a river that led them back to safety. The team thanked Lina for her quick thinking and bravery. From that day, she learned that staying calm and using wisdom is the best way to solve problems.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What did Lina use to find the right direction?
a. A flashlight b. A map c. A compass d. A phone
- How did the team feel when they lost their map?
a. Panicked b. Excited c. Calm d. Happy
- One day, Lina and her team go exploring
a. a rainforest b. an ocean c. the space d. the desert

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What problem did the group face during their journey?

5. How did Lina help her team return to safety?

6. What lesson did Lina learn from her adventure?

Story**4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Aronnax saw coral reefs with color through the big windows.

- a. growing b. glowing c. flowing d. showing

2. Nemo provided special suits that allowed them to walk on the sea

- a. ship b. land c. reef d. bed

3. In the underwater forest, the guests hunted and collected

- a. samples b. treasures c. fish d. plants

4. Professor Aronnax carefully everything he saw.

- a. forgot b. destroyed c. ignored d. recorded

B. Answer the following questions

5. Why did Ned Land want to leave?

6. How did the companions see Nemo's character?

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

1. It is not a good idea to go swimming alone.

(Avoid)

2. I like reading books in my free time.

(to read)

3. Avoid making noise in the library.

(shouldn't)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The climber wanted (**reach**) the top of the mountain before sunset.
2. I enjoy (**walk**) in the quiet park after work to feel relaxed.
3. The librarian reminded everyone (**speak**) quietly while reading.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Samira and Mariam are talking about a desert trip

Samira: Hi Mariam! How was your desert trip yesterday?

Mariam: It was great, but something unexpected happened!

Samira: ①.....?

Mariam: Our car broke down in the desert.

Samira: What did you do then?

Mariam: ②.....

Samira: ③.....?

Mariam: Yes, luckily, he arrived after an hour with water and tools.

Samira: ④..... What did you learn from that trip?

Mariam: ⑤.....

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الملحق)

"A day you spent in the park."

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. When was it?
2. Who did you go with?
3. What did you do?
4. How did you feel?

R

Review on Unit 10 (Animal Adaptations)

Lessons 1 & 2

التكيف	هجرة
الحفاظ على / ترشيد	مزعج
حيوان مفترس	مَن / سهل التكيف
مفتون	ملحوظ / بارز
أستاذ / بارع	أنماط الهجرة
البرد القارس	عادات التغذية
ظروف / أحوال	أجهزة تتبع
مخلوقات / كائنات	موطن
بيئة	سلوك
الفريسة	شديد / قاس / متطرف
فراء سميك	قاس
حاسة السمع	ممتاز
حشرة	شحيح / نادر
أصداف	حالي / جاري
درجة الحرارة	صعب
سنام	مذهل
الدهون	رائع
رموش العين	يخلق / يصنع
عواصف رملية	يحدد موقع
الحياة البرية	يخزن
خبير	يراقب / يرصد
مجال	يزعج
	قاس

1. Write the word:

	changes that help living things survive in their environment
	rough or severe
	protecting nature and natural resources
	animals that hunt and eat other animals
	very interested in
	the movement from one place to another.
	annoying or interrupting
	able to change easily
	amazing or extraordinary

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
harsh		
fascinated		
predator		
disturbing		
flexible		
conservation		
extreme		
thick		
adaptations		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ation / -ed / -ure / -ing / in- / -al	
adapt _____	challeng _____
adapt _____	_____ credible
creat _____	surviv _____

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Lions live in the savanna, which is the perfect _____ for them to hunt and rest.
a. contact b. contract c. apartment d. habitat
- The camel's special _____ allows it to live for many days without water.
a. relation b. adaptation c. station d. education
- _____ efforts aim to save rare animals like tigers and pandas.
a. Conservation b. Transformation c. Conversation d. Observation
- The shark is a strong _____ that hunts fish in the ocean.
a. tractor b. editor c. predator d. monitor
- In the circus, the children were _____ by the magician's amazing tricks.
a. celebrated b. fascinated c. decorated d. educated

6. Every year, birds make a long from cold places to warmer ones.
 a. migration b. relation c. vacation d. creation
7. The loud thunder last night was and kept the children awake and worried.
 a. deserving b. pleasing c. interesting d. disturbing
8. Gymnasts need to be very to move and bend easily.
 a. visible b. flexible c. possible d. lovable
9. The rescue team did a job saving the child from drowning.
 a. available b. enjoyable c. remarkable d. believable
10. Life in the desert can be because of the extreme heat and little water.
 a. harsh b. easy c. comfortable d. interesting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The lifeguard asked the children when (did they start) swimming in the pool .
2. I asked the hotel clerk (when) the Wi-Fi password for the room was.
3. My mom asked me (Can I help) her carry the heavy bags.
4. I asked my classmate (when) he had a red pencil.
5. The tour guide asked us if (are our tickets) ready.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. " Did you finish cleaning the kitchen". (Mother asked)
2. Did you see the big fireworks show last night? (She wanted to know)
3. "When will the flight arrive at the airport tomorrow?"
 (The travel agent asked me)
4. What time did the bakery open this morning? (I asked)
5. "How long have you lived abroad?" (The interviewer wanted to know..)

Lesson

3



دَفِئْ	سَمِيك
تَمْوِيه / تَخْفِي - يَخْفِي	يَخْفِي / يَخْتَفِي
أَمِيَال	يَعْرِض / يَوْضَح
الْبَقَاء	الْقُطْب الشَّمَالِي
بَرَارِي	شَدِيد البرودة / قُطْبِي شَمَالِي
مَخَالِب	جَلِيدِي / بَارِد جَدَا
أَحْذِيَةِ الثَّلْج	قُطْبِي (شَمَالِي أَوْ جَنُوبِي)
صَيَاد	تَام / مَثَالِي
فَقْدَان	مَوْسَمِي
نَبَاتَات	شَدِيد البرودة
ذَكَر / مُذَكَّر	يَتَجَمَّع
الْبَطْرِيقِ الْقُطْبِي	يَمْتَص
فَقَسِ الْبَيْض	يُوفِر / يَتِيح
ظِلَام دَامِس	يَنْخَفُض / يُسْقَط / يُسْقَط
رِيْش	يَقْلَل مِنْ / يَنْخَفُض
	قُوَّة

1. Write the word:

	having a large distance
	when the color of an animal matches to make it difficult to see
	a unit for measuring distances
	to show something clearly by giving proof
	the state or quality of being warm, rather than hot or cold

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
camouflage		
demonstrate		
thick		
strength		
Arctic		
seasonal		
absorb		
survival		
gather		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

im- / -al / -y / -ar / -th	
possible	pol
season	warm
ic	

Lesson



Lesson 3

1 Complete the following dialog:

Hany and Samy are talking about some Arctic animals

Hany : What did you do yesterday after school?

Samy : After finishing my homework, I read about Arctic animals.

Hany : That's interesting! ①

Samy : ②

Hany : Amazing! How do these animals survive in the extreme cold?

Samy : ③ to keep them warm.

Hany : How do polar bears find food?

Samy : ④ They smell seals from far away.

Hany : Wow! That's incredible!

Samy : Yes, and snow leopards can jump between rocks easily.

Hany : ⑤

Samy : They use their long tails to stay balanced.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**incredible - warmth - strength - camouflage - snowshows**

In the cold Arctic, animals have amazing ways of survival. The Arctic hare uses ① to hide in the snow. Its thick fur gives it ② in the freezing weather. People sometimes wear ③ to walk on the snow. Nature's ideas are truly ④ and help all creatures live safely.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man used all its to move the heavy rock.
a. breath b. length c. strength d. growth
2. Feeling cold, the little cat slept near the fire for
a. warmth b. cloth c. growth d. path
3. Many animals change their fur color for to catch prey.
a. advantage b. disadvantage c. massage d. camouflage
4. Exploring the forest was an adventure that I enjoyed so much!
a. impossible b. incredible c. invisible d. comfortable
5. He put on a jacket to protect himself from the cold wind outside.
a. thick b. light c. quick d. panicked
6. I wonder how Polar bears survive the extreme cold in the regions.
a. Thick b. Metallic c. Arctic d. Classic
7. We stayed inside because the weather was outside.
a. pleasing b. freezing c. teasing d. sleeping
8. The teacher will how to use the new map.
a. demonstrate b. decorate c. operate d. celebrate
9. Water is important for human
a. arrival b. musical c. survival d. approval
10. Dark colors more heat from the sun than light ones.
a. disturb b. absorb c. survive d. arrive

Lessons 5 & 6

حماية	حجم
خصائص	نظام غذائي
البيات الشتوي	حالة
المناخ	الهجرة
أحذية برقبة طويلة	الدهون
حاسة السمع	فراء سميك
منحدرات صخرية	مُعَرَّض / يَعْرِض
التكيفات	شعر
معرض للخطر أو الانقراض	الفقمة (حيوان بحري)
حاد / قوي	موسم
أجوف	الطبيعة
إضافي / زائد	أقدام / قدم
رقيق	ناجٍ / باقٍ
بالإضافة إلى ذلك	نمور الثلج
يكشف / يكتشف	الماعز الجبلي
يعكس	الوصف الجسدي
يوازن / يتوازن	بُقْع داكنة
موطن	

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
hibernation		
exhibit		
survivor		
keen		
hollow		
extra		
detect		
store		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:**-or / -y**

surviv _____

fluff _____

Lessons**Lessons 5 - 6****1****Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****safe - adaptations - traditions - habitat - hibernation**

Animals use different ways to live in their habitats. Some animals show special

① _____ like thick fur or sharp claws. In winter, some animals go into

② _____ to save energy. Protecting their ③ _____ is very important, so they can stay ④ _____ and continue living in nature.

2**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My dream is to go _____ around the world on a small boat.

- a. mailing b. failing c. sailing d. trailing

2. Using a telescope, you can _____ many stars and planets in the night sky.

- a. discover b. recover c. deliver d. disorder

3. The teacher wanted to _____ her students to love reading.

- a. inquire b. acquire c. retire d. inspire

4. The cat showed great _____ when it jumped in front of the dog to save its kittens.

- a. nursery b. bravery c. savagery d. slavery

5. Being a good listener is an important _____ to be a successful leader.

- a. quality b. addition c. facility d. activity

6. Many rare animals and plants live deep in the _____.

- a. rainstorm b. rainbow c. rainforest d. sandstorm

7. We have many old _____ that we still practice during the holy month of Ramadan.

- a. positions b. traditions c. conditions d. ambitions

8. She downloaded a new _____ to listen to while working in the kitchen.

- a. hibernation b. forecast c. adaptation d. podcast

9. We learned an important _____ about teamwork today.

- a. lesson b. reason c. person d. season

10. We must _____ animals from losing their homes.

- a. connect b. neglect c. protect d. collect

4 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A desert animal I like"

[illegible]

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. Why are the fennec fox's ears helpful in the desert?
2. How does the fox protect its feet from the hot ground?
3. What makes the fennec fox able to survive in very hot places?
4. Why does the writer like the fennec fox?

Test on Unit 10**1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The birds waited for the _____ of their eggs to see the baby chicks.
a. matching b. scratching c. catching d. hatching
2. Birds have soft _____ that keep them warm and help them fly.
a. leathers b. feathers c. weathers d. fathers
3. The roads were very _____ after the storm, so we drove slowly.
a. icy b. pricey c. spicy d. fancy
4. Emperor Penguins live in the cold _____ regions around the South Pole.
a. solar b. bowler c. roller d. polar

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

natural - endangered - hearing - amazing - camouflage

Some animals have special features to help them survive. The fox has sharp ① _____ to find its prey under the ground. The chameleon uses ② _____ to hide from enemies and catch insects. These ③ _____ features help animals stay safe and find food in their ④ _____ habitats.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dolphins are friendly sea animals that live in groups called pods. They are very smart and can communicate with each other using clicks and whistles. Dolphins eat fish and sometimes help fishermen by driving fish toward their nets. They can jump high out of the water and swim very fast. Dolphins breathe air through a hole on top of their heads called a blowhole. When a dolphin is sick or hurt, other dolphins help it stay near the surface to breathe. Many people love dolphins because of their intelligence, teamwork, and kindness toward others in their group.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do dolphins use to communicate? _____
a. Words b. Whistles c. Writing d. Waves
2. What is the hole on top of a dolphin's head used for? _____
a. Eating b. Swimming c. Communicating d. Breathing

3. Where do dolphins live?

- d. In the forest b. In the desert
c. In the mountains d. In the ocean

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do dolphins help fishermen?

5. What do dolphins eat?

6. Why do people love dolphins?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Captain Nemo and his crew fought bravely with axes and _____.

- a. spoons b. balloons c. cartoons d. harpoons

2. The crew worked hard because their Oxygen was _____.

- a. giving up b. running away c. running out d. looking after

3. Aronnax began to _____ Captain Nemo, but fear him.

- a. inquire b. retire c. require d. admire

4. Captain Nemo demonstrated calm courage and remarkable

- a. leadership b. weakness c. anger d. citizenship

B. Answer the following questions

5. How did Captain Nemo react when he saw the sea monster?

6. What did Nemo do when warships appeared?

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

1. "Are you going to the party?"

(I asked her...)

2. "Can you buy me a newspaper on your way?"

(My father asked me...)

3. "Why did you leave the party early?"

(They wondered...)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She wanted to know _____ (what) I had ever seen a lion.
2. The doctor asked the patient _____ (did you eat) any fast food the day before.
3. The librarian wanted to know _____ (will you return) the books by Friday.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar and Salma are discussing a school project about the Arctic fox

Omar : Hi, Salma. For our project on Arctic animals, I am researching the Arctic fox.

Salma: Cool! ① _____?

Omar : In winter, it's white. But in summer, ② _____.

Salma: Oh, that helps it hide! ③ _____?

Omar : It eats birds and small animals.

Salma: And where does it sleep?

Omar : ④ _____ it makes in the snow.

Salma: Thanks! The last thing we need is its special skill.

Omar : ⑤ _____, which helps it hear prey under the snow.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

The importance of making adaptations to survive and succeed

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. Why is it important to make adaptations in life?
2. How do students adapt when they face new situations?
3. What can happen if people don't try to adapt to change?
4. How does making adaptations help people become stronger?

R

Review on Unit 11 (Stories on the Move)

Lessons 1 & 2

مدينة الفيوم	لا ينسى
معدات	صعب
مغامرة	خلاب/رائع
بعيد	زلق
مناظر طبيعية	تجربة
كلياً/تماماً	الغطس باستخدام امبوب التنفس
مدهش	رحلة سفاري
بحيرة	كرم الضيافة
نادر	أعمدة
مبلل/رطب	مقبرة
خطير	رحلة للتخييم
إضافي	مريح
دافئ	ماوى
بطانية	ضروري
غير متوقع	درب للتنزه
عادي	شلال
أصدقاء مدي الحياة	ذهبي
ميت	تلال صحراوية
مدفون	واضح جداً
ضعيف	سحب قاتمة
حجر	عاصفة
بنية/بناء	مغامرة
يحجز	السلام
يعبئ	خلط
يجمع/يتجمع	وادي الملوك
يمر	لوحة/رسم
يتوقف	معبد فيلة في أسوان
يتأخر	وادي الريان
يتجاهل	معبد
يستكشف	غير معتاد
يتحول	سطح
	قناع

1. Write the word:

	impossible to forget
	very beautiful, impressive or surprising
	difficult in a way that tests your abilities and skills
	smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide
	swimming near the surface of the sea using a mask to see underwater
	a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature
	warm and friendly treatment of guests
	large stone structures in temples or buildings
	places where the dead are buried, often underground

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
unforgettable		
brehtaking		
challenging		
local		
comfort		
prepared		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-able / -un / -ing / -ment / -ation / -ion	
unforgett	equip
comfort	treat
expected	prepar
challeng	connect

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students planned a weekend to learn survival skills in the mountains.
a. school trip b. business trip c. shopping trip d. camping trip
2. The view from the cliff was so that no one could stop taking photos.
a. dull b. ordinary c. breathtaking d. simple
3. The forest is home to many that only grow in wet climates.
a. rare plants b. common plants c. garden plants d. dry plants
4. People often travel to nature reserves to feel a complete from city stress.
a. construction b. celebration c. disconnection d. foundation
5. The family had to under a wooden roof when the rain began suddenly.
a. take notes b. take shelter c. take control d. take care
6. Winning the marathon was a huge for him after months of training.
a. story b. holiday c. habit d. challenge
7. The captain taught them how to safely across the calm river.
a. sail b. dive c. jump d. run
8. Some people travel to find away from noise and stress.
a. traffic b. danger c. pressure d. peace
9. The lake was so that we could see the rocks at the bottom.
a. dark b. muddy c. crystal-clear d. cloudy
10. Spain was the final on their long European trip.
a. decoration b. explanation c. destination d. invitation

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. By the time she (finish) her homework, her friends had already gone out.
2. They were tired because they (walk) for hours.
3. He (not call) me until he had reached the airport.
4. When we arrived at the cinema, the film (already start).
5. I didn't join the game because I (eat) lunch before.
6. By the time the teacher (arrive), the students had settled down.
7. She (not see) such a beautiful view until she visited the mountains.
8. When the bus (come), we had waited for almost an hour.
9. They were relieved because they (find) their lost dog.
10. By the time the concert (end), most people had left the hall.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I finished my homework. I went out to play. (After)
.....
2. She arrived late. The class had already started. (Before)
.....
3. We didn't start eating. The guests hadn't arrived yet. (till)
.....
4. My uncle left then I came. (When)
.....
5. After she had written the letter, she sent it. (Having)
.....
6. They left the house. The sun had already risen. (Before)
.....
7. We went out. It started raining heavily. (When)
.....
8. She completed the report. The manager checked it immediately. (As soon as)
.....
9. I didn't watch the movie. My friends had already left. (Before)
.....
10. He answered the question. I had finished reading it. (After)
.....

Lesson 3



الطيبة	فردى
برج القاهرة	مصمم/عازم
يتمدد	يكافح
أدوات جذب	معالم
وادي	لا ينسى
جبال	جنوبي
غروب	رحلة
منحدرات	مدى الحياة
ممتاز	دراجة نارية
منظر	متعجب
مذكرات	ودود
المشاهد السياحية	ممتاز
صور	ثقة
شخصي	تدرجيا
لا يصدق	مزدحم
حجر رملي	حقل
عاصفة رملية	لا نهاية لها
يكتشف	محافظة
يثبت	خاص
يلتقط (صورة)	تاريخي
يدرك	عبر
يحاول	مجنون
يواجه	تماما
يقترح	الوحدة

11. Write the word:

	alone, without anyone helping you
	having made a definite decision to do something and not letting anyone prevent you
	try very hard to do something when it is difficult
	something, such as a large building, that you can see clearly from a distance and that will help you to know where you are
	worth remembering or easy to remember
	towards the south

12. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
solo		
wrong		
exhausting		
excellent		
crowded		
endless		
amazing		
wonderful		
incredible		

13. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ness / -ing / -ce / -ly / -less	
loneli _____	wonder _____
confiden _____	end _____
gradual _____	exhaust _____

Lesson



Lesson 3

1 Complete the following dialog:

Nana and Nour are talking about reading

Nana : Hi Nour! ①

Nour : Hello Nana, I'm enjoying reading a book.

Nana : What is your book about?

Nour : ②

Nana : That sounds interesting. ③

Nour : Yes, I really enjoy learning about nature.

Nana : How do you think we can protect animals that are at risk of disappearing?

Nour : ④

Nana : ⑤

Nour : A wildlife sanctuary is a special place where endangered animals are cared for and protected.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exhausted - landscape - confidence - valley - cliffs

Last summer, I went on a trip from Cairo to Luxor. The journey was long, and I felt very ① I rode through the Nile ②, where I saw green fields and desert. One evening, I reached a valley near some ③ and watched a beautiful sunset. Seeing this view gave me ④ and made me proud of my trip.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He had to go on a for three days to meet his clients.

a. business trip

b. family vacation

c. solo adventure

d. educational tour

2. Next summer, we plan a to the mountains with the whole family.

a. solo adventure

b. family vacation

c. business trip

d. travel journal

3. Riding across the country alone was truly a _____.
 a. journey of a lifetime b. street food
 c. governorate d. crowded streets
4. She was very _____ to finish the marathon despite her injury.
 a. struggled b. exhausting c. determined d. captured
5. After a full day of hiking, the climb to the peak was absolutely _____.
 a. exhausting b. friendly people c. temples d. travel journal
6. The boy _____ with his homework because it was very difficult.
 a. managed b. connected c. remembered d. struggled
7. During the trip, he felt deep _____ because he was traveling alone.
 a. confidence b. loneliness c. love d. hatred
8. In the small village, _____ people offered me water and directions.
 a. naughty b. cruel c. bad d. friendly
9. I love trying _____ when I visit new countries.
 a. governorate b. inner strength c. street food d. crowded streets
10. Writing in a _____ helps me remember every part of my journey.
 a. solo adventure b. journey of a lifetime
 c. travel journal d. temples

lessons 5 & 6

رحلة	تماما
جزء	مدهش / لا يصدق
مثير	فجأة
يرشد	ابو الهول العظيم
يشرح	آثار
كلية	خلاف
صورة	يصدق/يعتقد
ثقافة	رائع
غيور	قديم جدا
لا ينسى	كنوز
قليل	كل
لقطات	الفراغنة
يشعر	غروب
الشعاب المرجانية	مندهش
رحلة سفاري في الصحراء	شاطئ
متوقع	يشارك
المتحف المصري	ينسى
	تجربة حياتية

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
powerful		
beautiful		
cool		
ancient		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ing / -able / -al / -ly / -ful	
power _____	forgett _____
natur _____	excit _____
absolut _____	

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

strong - teamwork - discover - patient - journey

Last summer, my friends and I went on a ① _____ across the Red Sea. We sailed from one island to another. We wanted to discover new places and see the beautiful nature. The waves were strong, and sometimes it was hard to stay on course. But we learned to be ② _____ and use ③ _____ to keep the boat steady. Everyone showed loyal support to each other. At night, we watched beautiful sunsets. The trip was exciting and taught us courage, patience, and respect for the sea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The view of the mountains from the top was absolutely _____.
a. unforgettable b. slippery c. bored d. amazed
- The cliff looked _____ as we approached it, so we walked very carefully.
a. bored b. lazy c. amazed d. breathtaking
- We were _____ to arrive in Paris by midnight after the long flight.
a. thrilled b. unknown c. tasteful d. solo
- Be careful on the wet stairs; they are very _____.
a. proud b. solo c. slippery d. natural beauty
- The little boy _____ to lift the heavy suitcase into the car.
a. thanked b. stole c. told d. struggled
- She decided to take a / an _____ trip across Europe by herself.
a. amazed b. interested c. solo d. thrilled
- London has many famous _____ such as Big Ben and the Tower of London.
a. landmarks b. clocks c. guides d. tourists
- I was completely _____ when I saw the Grand Canyon for the first time.
a. incredible b. amazed c. jealous d. interesting

9. The children were _____ to ride the roller coaster for the first time.
a. thrilled b. exciting c. unknown d. frightening
10. Yara felt _____ walking alone in the dark forest at night.
a. interested b. unforgettable c. terrified d. guide

3 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"My Trip to the Grand Egyptian museum"

[illegible]

Test on Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- We stopped on the hill to watch the most beautiful I have ever seen.
a. sunset b. solo c. bound d. trip
- To get the adjective from the noun beauty, we add the suffix
a. - ment b. - able c. -ful d. -ment
- Next summer, we plan a to the mountains with the whole family.
a. solo adventure b. family vacation c. business trip d. travel journal
- I wanted to the hidden caves along the coast during our holiday.
a. explore b. thrilled c. proud d. sunset

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

adventure - snorkeling - desert - tourists - amazed

Last summer, my family went on a fun ① to Sharm El-Sheikh. On the first day, we went ② in the Red Sea. I was very ③ by the colorful fish and coral reefs. The next day, we went to the desert, rode camels, and watched the beautiful sunset. We met friendly ④ and shared our travel stories. At the end of the trip, I felt unforgettable about everything we did. It was a great journey with amazing memories.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum in Giza is one of the largest museums in the world. It holds thousands of artifacts from ancient Egypt, including statues, jewelry, and mummies. The most famous exhibit is the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. Visitors can explore many halls that show the history and culture of Egypt. The museum also has interactive displays that help people learn more about ancient Egyptian life. Many tourists from different countries visit the museum every year. Walking through the halls, one can feel the greatness of Egypt's civilization. It is truly a place where history comes alive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the Grand Egyptian Museum famous for?
 - Its location in Cairo
 - The golden mask of King Tutankhamun
 - Modern art exhibitions
 - Its gardens
- Which of the following can visitors do in the museum?
 - Ride camels
 - Explore halls showing Egyptian history
 - Swim in the Nile
 - watch live concerts
- Who visits the museum every year?
 - Only Egyptian students
 - Tourists from different countries
 - Archaeologists only
 - Local farmers

B. Answer the following questions:

- What do the interactive displays help people do?

- What kinds of artifacts are held in the Grand Egyptian Museum?

- How can walking through the halls make visitors feel?

Story**4 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

- Captain Nemo strongly spoke against _____.
 - wealth
 - injustice
 - education
 - discovery
- Nemo attacked _____ immediately whenever he was provoked.
 - warships
 - submarines
 - islands
 - whales
- Conseil felt _____ between curiosity for science and loyalty to his master.
 - torn
 - angry
 - sad
 - determined
- Ned Land planned to _____ while aboard the Nautilus.
 - explore the ocean
 - escape
 - stay forever
 - join Nemo

B. Answer the following questions

- Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to keep his past secret?

- How did Aronnax feel when he saw the underwater graveyard of ships?

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1. First ,I ate then I did my homework. (after)
2. After finishing the housework, ,I took a shower (until)
3. The tour guide explained that the museum had closed early (before)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. After we _____ (eat) dinner, we went for a walk.
2. Yara was surprised because she _____ never (see) such beautiful mountains.
3. When we arrived at the stop, the bus _____ (left). We didn't catch it.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Alaa and Mona are talking about snorkeling

Alaa : What is snorkeling?

Mona : ① _____

Alaa : What did you do after snorkeling?

Mona : ② _____

Alaa : Did you meet other people there?

Mona : ③ _____

Alaa : How did you feel?

Mona : ④ _____

Alaa : Will you forget this trip?

Mona : ⑤ _____

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A day you spent in the Grand Egyptians museum"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. When was it?
2. Who did you go with?
3. What did you do?
4. How did you feel?

R

Review on Unit 12 (Leadership and Teamwork)

Lessons ① & ②

التسويق	يؤكد
حملة	ما وراء
يلهم	هجين
التراث	ميزانية
الرخاء	حكام/قضاة
قتال	قائد
قوة	مستمر
إنجازات	مشروع
فريق	علاقات
تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	معابد
العمل الجماعي	طرق
يولد	تعاون
طلبة/مضخة	رائع
خصائص/صفات	الثروة
الطاقة المتجددة	المجدد
الميكانيكا	عصر
تحديثات	يحكم/حُكم
ابتكار	الحضارة
عميل/زبون	الفراغة
خط (انتاج)	السلام
الضغط	تجارة
اتجاه/توجه	قيادة
يتوسع	بحث
يشيد	يأمر
يؤسس	يمتدح/يثني على
يميز	يزيد
	يشكل

1. Write the word:

the history, traditions, and culture of a country or family

to make someone feel interested or want to do something good

a state of being successful and having enough money

show as important

more than; outside of

very big or great

a mix of two different things

people who watch or listen and then decide who wins

the work of telling people about a product to help sell it

a plan to share a message and reach a goal

the amount of money you can spend

2. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
important		
successful		
distant		
brilliant		
famous		
increase		
praise		
prosperity		

3. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ful / -ity / -ship / -er / -ion

leader

prosper

cooperat

lead

success

Lessons



Lessons 1 - 2

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- The new factory high-quality batteries last year.
a. produced b. did c. hurt d. inspired
- Strong guide their teams through difficult situations.
a. ladders b. leaders c. rules d. campaigns
- Ancient Greece is known as a that shaped modern thinking.
a. wealth b. kingdom c. civilization d. campaign
- Many countries protect their cultural from damage.
a. heritage b. pressure c. direction d. project
- Great teachers students to reach their goals.
a. admire b. inspire c. suggest d. treat
- The new app became extremely within a few weeks.
a. successful b. success c. succeed d. successor
- A ruled ancient Egypt with great authority.
a. president b. pharaoh c. boss d. minister
- Good education helps societies move toward greater
a. prosperity b. teamwork c. losses d. failure
- The students on finishing their science project early.
a. translated b. concentrated c. increased d. delayed
- The city invested in new to improve public services.
a. pumps b. projects c. pharaohs d. campaigns

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The principal (asked) the students not to use mobile phones during class.
- The teacher (said) the children to finish their homework on time.
3. The coach (said) the players not to play negatively.
- The doctor advised me (don't take) part in the football match.

5. The officer (said) the soldiers to play football.
6. Mother ordered her son (not watch) TV all day.
7. The manager (said) the staff to leave the office early.
8. The captain (tell) the crew to raise the sails.
9. The teacher..... (tell) the students not to ignore the exam rules.
10. The coach (said) the team to train hard for the match.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. The coach said to the players, "Run faster!" (ordered)
.....
2. The teacher said to the students, "Submit your homework on time." (told)
.....
3. The doctor said to me, "Take this medicine twice a day." (advised)
.....
4. The officer said to the soldiers, "Stand at attention!" (commanded)
.....
5. The mother said to her child, "Don't touch the stove!" (told)
.....
6. The manager said to the staff, "Attend the meeting promptly." (ordered)
.....
7. The coach said to the team, "Practice every day." (asked)
.....
8. The teacher said to the class, "Don't cheat in the exam." (advised)
.....
9. The captain said to the crew, "Raise the sails immediately." (commanded)
.....
10. The father said to his son, "Clean your room now." (told)
.....

Lesson 3



صراعات	يلهم
شك	يرشد/ يدل
تعاطف	يثق في
تواضع	يتأقلم
متحفز	يثبط العزيمة
قوي	يبحث
فعال	يشارك
المسمى الوظيفي	يتواصل
بوضوح	ينجز
مشاعر	بسلام
وجهات نظر	ذكاء
عاطفي	محترم للآخرين
تعليق/مراجعة	قابل للتكيف
قيادة	يحسن
أهداف	يحتفل
الصفات الأساسية	يعدل
رؤية	يعترف
تقدم	يهاجم
الثقة	إرادة
الأمانة	ينمي/يطور
غرض	ينكر
ثقة	مؤقت
مشترك	

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
powerful		
guide		
adapt		
pride		
doubt		
discourage		
temporary		
modern		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

/ -al / -able / -ive / -ly / -ful	
effect	respect
clear / careful	adapt
emotion	

Lesson



Lesson 3

1 Complete the following dialog:

Dina and Sara are talking about Sara's new camera

Dina : Hi. sara ! ①

Sara : Hi. Dina. I have bought a new camera.

Dina : ②

Sara : I bought it yesterday.

Dina : Where did you buy it?

Sara : ③

Dina : ④

Sara : Two thousand pounds.

Dina : Can you use it easily ?

Sara : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

courage - hero - performance - leader - tribe

A long time ago, a small tribe lived in a forest. Their ①1 was a wise woman called Laila. She showed great ②1 when danger came. One day, a big fire broke out in the village. Laila worked hard to help everyone, and she became a true ③1. Her ④1 2 in the hard time inspired the young people. Everyone loved her because she was loyal.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She showed great when listening to her friend's problems.
a. courage b. empathy c. freedom d. jealousy
- A good leader must be to handle sudden changes.
a. forgettable b. adaptable c. horrible d. terrible
- Tariq became the respected of his tribe.
a. lead b. leader c. leading d. leadership
- The coach tried to his team before the big game.
a. motivate b. explore c. isolate d. adapt
- The manager helped resolve the between two employees.
a. empathy b. conflict c. peace d. love
- Climbing the mountain required great
a. courage b. exploration c. isolation d. empathy
- Good students always goals and try to achieve them.
a. sit b. seat c. set d. store
- Scientists love to new lands and oceans.
a. isolate b. invent c. explore d. travel
- Reading every day increases your about the world.
a. freedom b. empathy c. knowledge d. carelessness
- Too much can make a person feel lonely and sad.
a. courage b. empathy c. work d. isolation

Lessons 5 & 6

ينظم	باحث
عرض تقديمي	موضوع
مفصل	معلومات
كامل / ممتاز	جدول مواعيد
مهلة / موعد نهائي	منسق
ممارسة	مبدع
برامج	يحل / يسوي
شرائح	الفصل الدراسي
رسمي	لاحظ
أساسي	نقطة قوة
	دور

1. Complete the table:

Word	Synonym	Antonym / Opposite
creative		
different		
official		
main		

2. Add the correct prefixes / suffixes from the list:

-ly / -ing / -ful / -al / -able	
power	forgett
natur	excit
absolute	

Lessons



Lessons 5 - 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

loyal - teamwork - sailing - patient - strong - discover

Last summer, our class went on a journey across the sea. We spent the whole day sailing from one island to another. The waves were ① but we kept going without giving up. During the trip, we had to show teamwork and work together to handle every challenge. Everyone learned the importance of ② in solving problems and helping each other. Some students were very ③ and never got frustrated when things went wrong. By the end of the trip, we were able to ④ new islands and enjoy the beauty of nature.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A truly can guide a team through difficult times.
a. observer b. failure c. assistant d. effective leader
2. Successful people have certain that help them reach goals.
a. possessions b. hobbies c. qualities d. memories
3. A coach can athletes to give their best effort.
a. inspire b. confuse c. ignore d. delay
4. Engineers must work hard to technical problems quickly.
a. avoid b. create c. ignore d. solve
5. By planning carefully, a team can success.
a. waste b. predict c. achieve d. hide
6. Teachers should so students understand instructions clearly.
a. shout b. speak vaguely
c. mumble d. communicate clearly
7. Managers must to understand employee concerns.
a. respond angrily b. argue quickly c. listen carefully d. ignore

10. Leaders work hard to _____ with honesty and reliability.



"Your personal leadership goal."

1. The first part of the paper discusses the importance of the study and the objectives of the research.

2. The second part of the paper discusses the methodology used in the study and the results of the research.

3. The third part of the paper discusses the conclusions of the study and the implications of the findings.

4. The fourth part of the paper discusses the limitations of the study and the areas for future research.

5. The fifth part of the paper discusses the acknowledgments and the references.

Test on Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

- By planning carefully, a team can measurable success.
a. waste time b. predict failure c. achieve results d. hide outcomes
- He is a creative leader. Creative is the synonym of
a. uncreative b. innovative c. ignorant d. minor
- We add the suffix "....." to give the adjective of the word "power".
a. -ful b. -able c. -ship d. -er
- The company its services to three new countries.
a. expanded b. suggested c. reign d. monuments

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

loyal - teamwork - sailing - strong - discover

The students went on a summer trip, ① across a big lake. The waves were ②, and some students felt scared. They stayed calm and worked together. Everyone helped each other and was ③ to their friends. With good teamwork they could ④ a small hidden beach. They felt happy and proud.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Importance of Hard Work

Hard work is one of the most important keys to success. People who work hard are often more disciplined and focused. It helps them achieve their goals faster and build a strong character. Hard work also teaches patience and persistence, which are essential in facing challenges. Those who put effort into their studies or careers usually earn respect and trust from others. Moreover, working hard allows a person to discover new skills and talents. It gives satisfaction and pride when goals are accomplished. Success does not come easily; it requires dedication and consistency. People who work hard inspire others and contribute positively to their communities.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hard work helps people to
a. relax more b. achieve their goals faster
c. avoid responsibility d. spend more time watching tv

2. What does hard work teach according to the text?
- a. laziness and impatience b. patience and persistence
c. forgetfulness and carelessness d. anger and fear
3. People who work hard usually
- a. earn respect and trust b. lose motivation
c. avoid challenges d. waste time

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why is hard work considered a key to success?
.....
5. How can working hard help a person discover new skills?
.....
6. In what ways can hard work positively affect communities?
.....

Story**4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. What was the main reason the characters secretly lowered a small boat into the water?
a. To flee from danger b. To search for hidden riches
c. To gain their freedom d. To discover unknown islands
2. How did the text describe the sea conditions during their attempt to leave?
a. Rough and threatening b. Calm and serene
c. Bright and sunny d. Misty and overcast
3. What occurred at daybreak following the stormy night?
a. They safely reached land b. The boat went down
c. They were taken prisoner d. They returned to the submarine
4. Who was identified as the creator of the Nautilus in the passage?
a. Aronnax b. Captain Nemo c. Conseil d. Ned Land

B. Answer the following questions

5. Why did Captain Nemo choose isolation instead of interacting with the world?
.....
6. What do you think Aronnax meant by "the ocean remains vast and mysterious"?
.....

5 Rewrite the following using the words in brackets:

1. The officer said to the soldiers , " Stand at attention." (commanded)
.....
2. The manager said to the staff , " Attend the meeting on time." (wanted)
.....

3. The nurse said to the patient , " Rest and drink plenty of water."

(told)

6 Complete with the correct form of the word(s):

1. The teacher (said) to the students to finish their assignments before Friday.
2. The coach (said to) the team to practice for an extra hour today.
3. My father advised me (don't waste) my time.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Maher is talking with his friends about presentation for next week

Maher : Hi everyone! We need to plan our group presentation for next week.
What job does everyone want?

Ramy : ①

Maher : I want to be the main researcher. I like finding information about our topic.

Hazem : ②

Ramy : I can organize schedules and keep track of deadlines. I will be the project coordinator.

Maher : ③

Hazem : I can be creative. I have ideas to make the slides fun.

Ahmed : ④

Maher : You help the team. You listen to everyone and solve problems.

Ramy : ⑤

Ahmed : Everyone has different skills, and if we use them, our project will be great.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Ancient Egyptian Leaders"

.....

.....

.....

General Tests on the Second Term

امتحانات عامة على الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Test 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The synonym of the word strength is
a. weakness b. power c. emptiness d. boredom
2. We add the suffix "....." to form a noun from pure .
a. -less b. -ness c. -ity d. -er
3. A chameleon uses to hide from danger.
a. running b. camouflage c. music d. laughing
4. A is someone who protects the environment.
a. mechanic b. conservationist c. artist d. swimmer

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

mindfulness - peaceful - exercises - hold - nervous

There are lots of ways to relax. Breathing ① are one way to relax. Take a deep breath, ② it for a moment, and then let it out. Relaxing can quiet your mind and make you feel ③ and calm. You can practice ④ You should think about the things that are happening right in the present moment.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Artificial intelligence, or AI, is changing the world in many ways. It helps people solve problems more quickly and perform tasks that used to take hours. For example, AI can translate languages, recognize faces, and predict weather conditions. Many students use AI-powered apps to check their homework or learn new skills. Although AI makes life easier, it must be used wisely. Some people worry that depending too much on AI might make humans less creative. Others fear that machines could replace jobs in the future. However, experts believe that AI will create new opportunities and help people work more efficiently. AI is not meant to replace humans; instead, it supports them by handling difficult or repetitive tasks. When used responsibly, it can improve education, healthcare, and communication. Understanding AI is important for young people today because it will play a big role in the jobs of tomorrow.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 - AI is dangerous for students
 - AI is changing life and helping people
 - Machines will replace humans completely
 - People don't need AI
- The underlined word "it" refers to:
 - Education
 - AI
 - Homework
 - Weather
- The phrase "used wisely" means:
 - Used without thinking
 - Used in a smart and careful way
 - Used very quickly
 - Used by many people

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do some people worry about AI?

- How does AI help students?

- Why should young people understand AI?

Story**4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

- Captain Nemo demonstrated calm courage and remarkable
 - leadership
 - weakness
 - anger
 - citizenship
- In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge
 - whale
 - sea monster
 - shark
 - giant squid
- Nemo showed treasures collected from the sea, such as
 - pearls, gold and ancient artifacts
 - jewels, metals, and paintings
 - seashells, corals, and ships
 - gold, diamonds, and gems
- Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by
 - the earth
 - storms
 - the waves
 - the mountains

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did the crew manage to survive the attacks from the giant squid?

- How was life on the Nautilus?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. "How do camels store water?" (He asked)
2. She is the teacher. She teaches English. (who)
3. I regret telling lies. (If only)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She (said) me where the nearest petrol station was.
2. Mona (uses visiting) the temple when she was young.
3. The first lesson (already start) when we arrived at school.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mohamed is asking Salah about his father

Mohamed: Can I ask you some questions, Salah?

Salah : ①

Mohamed : ②?

Salah : My father is a teacher.

Mohamed : ③?

Salah : He works at a preparatory school.

Mohamed : ④?

Salah : He teaches English.

Mohamed : Do you want to be a teacher like your father?

Salah: ⑤

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The synonym of the word compete is
 a. give up b. contest c. ignore d. conceal
- The prefix "un-" gives the meaning of
 a. again b. not b.before d. after
- The athletes up before the match.
 a. played b. warmed b.slept d. rested
- The word "ancient" means very
 a. old b. modern b.new d. recent

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

swimmer - worked - record - improving - didn't work

Ali Ahmed Mahmoud Ali Khalafalla is an Egyptian Olympic ①
 He started swimming at the age of six. Like any other successful person, he
 ② very hard to be successful in his life. He spends a lot of time
 on ③ his skills. In 2017, he set a new Egyptian ④ in
 California.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Many people around the world enjoy sports because they bring excitement, energy, and fun to everyday life. Some people like individual sports such as swimming, running, or cycling, while others prefer team sports like football or basketball. Team sports help players learn **cooperation** and communication because everyone must work together to win. Individual sports teach patience and self-discipline as athletes try to beat **their** own records. Sports are also important for our health because they make our bodies stronger and help us reduce stress. In many schools, students join sports clubs to improve their skills and make new friends. Major sports events, such as the World Cup or the Olympics, inspire millions of people who watch athletes compete with great determination. Whether played indoors or outdoors, sports connect people and remind us that hard work, respect, and fair play are the real meaning of winning.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
 a. different hobbies b.the benefits of sports
 c. school subjects d. travel plans

2. The word cooperation means -----
 a. working together b. shouting loudly
 c. running quickly d. waiting silently
3. The underlined word their refers to -----
 a. teachers b. athletes c. parents d. coaches

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do many students join sports clubs at school?

5. What do individual sports teach athletes?

6. Do you think sports can connect people from different countries? Why/Why not?

Story

4 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was the most dangerous creature they faced underwater?
 a. A giant squid b. A shark c. A giant whale d. A giant octopus
2. Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his -----
 a. excitement b. curiosity
 c. fear d. desire for freedom
3. How did the three companions feel when they finally reached safety?
 a. Relieved b. Exhausted c. Angry d. Excited
4. Conseil was torn between discovery and freedom. If you were in his place, which would you choose, and why?
 a. Discovery b. Freedom c. Neither d. Both

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What does Aronnax's view of human knowledge being "limited" tell us about humanity's relationship with the unknown?

6. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty on land?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I never woke up early. (use)
2. He suggested going to the park. (decided)
3. The doctor said to me, Take this medicine twice a day (advised)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We didn't expect the journey to take so long because we (never travel)
on such difficult roads before.
2. They used to (going) to Luxor every winter.
3. I like the boys (which) help old people

7 Complete the following dialog:

Roquia is asking Habeba about her holiday

Roquia : 1 ?

Habeba : I spent my summer holiday in Alexandria.

Roquia : 2 ?

Habeba : I went there with my family.

Roquia : How did you go there?

Habeba : 3

Roquia : 4 ?

Habeba : We stayed there in a nice hotel.

Roquia : Did you enjoy your staying there?

Habeba : 5

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A review of some types of transport

Test 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/ An is a person who travels to discover new places.
a. carpenter b. explorer c. teacher d. manager
2. The suffix "-less" means ".....".
a. with b. not c. without d. many
3. The castle is a massive building." Massive " is similar in meaning to
a. boring b. favourite c. huge d. weak
4. She carried the experiment carefully.
a. ignored b. performed c. avoided d. stopped

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

amazed - countryside - monuments - Museum - amazing

A lot of tourists prefer spending their holidays in Egypt as it has a lot of
 ① They also like to go to the Egyptian ② to see our
 old treasures. Some of them prefer going to the ③ to enjoy the
 fresh air and the clean environment. Finally, they are ④ to see
 such wonderful places.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Every country has its own culture that shapes the way people live, dress, celebrate, and communicate. Traditions are often passed from one generation to the next, helping families stay connected to their history. For example, some cultures celebrate the new year with fireworks, while others welcome it with music, food, and traditional dances. Language is also a strong part of culture because it expresses beliefs and values. When people travel to new places, they often discover customs that are different from their own, which helps them understand the world better. Sharing traditions, such as preparing special meals or telling folktales, can also bring communities together. Today, social media allows young people to learn about global cultures more easily than before. Even though every culture is unique, most traditions teach respect, kindness, and appreciation for diversity.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main purpose of the text is to show
a. how cultures change b. why cultures are important
c. the history of food d. rules for travel

2. The word unique means
 a. very old b. very strange c. one of a kind d. easy to learn
3. The underlined word their refers to
 a. countries b. families c. young people d. travellers

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do traditions help families?

-
5. Why is language an important part of culture?

-
6. Do you think learning about other cultures is useful? Explain.
-

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Why was Ned Land so restless and angry about being aboard the ship?
 a. He missed freedom b. He disliked the crew
 c. He feared the ocean d. He wanted treasure
2. Captain Nemo's ship called was built for life beneath the sea.
 a. Nautilus b. Atlantis c. Sea King d. Odyssey
3. Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by the
 a. earth b. storms c. waves d. mountains
4. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty on land?
 a. Revenge b. Justice c. Power d. Curiosity

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Aronnax and his companions choose to escape despite the dangers they faced?
-

6. Does the sea symbolize freedom or danger in the story? Why?
-

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. He decided to go to the park. (suggested)
2. She said to me, "Did you do your homework?" (asked)
3. I used to practice before the competition. (didn't)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4. This is the boy (when) toy was broken.
5. My team wants (win) the quiz about Egyptian hieroglyphs this year.
6. She asked me where I (go) the night before to see the Tutankhamun display.

7 Complete the following dialog:

A doctor is examining a patient.

Doctor : ①

Patient : I have a bad cold.

Doctor : ②

Patient : 2 days.

Doctor : Let me examine you. You ③ and have some rest.

Patient : Ok. thanks doctor .When shall I come back?

Doctor : ④

Patient : Thanks a lot.

Doctor : I hope ⑤

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A Review of the Decent Life Initiative

Test 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The synonym of the word represents is _____.
a. hides b. conceals c. symbolizes d. emptiness
- The prefix "re-" means _____.
a. before b. after c. again d. opposite
- The word "purchase" means "to _____ something".
a. sell b. buy c. borrow d. take
- He took _____ in the school competition.
a. ignored b. part c. skipped d. avoided

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

society - appear - brought - feel - disappear

Children are very dear to us. We all work hard to make them (1) _____ happy. When children are (2) _____ up, they will be good people that are useful to (3) _____. On the other hand, if children are neglected, many problems will (4) _____ in society later on.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

People often show courage in difficult situations, especially when they face danger or must make quick decisions. Many survival stories come from people who were lost in the mountains, trapped during storms, or stuck in dangerous places. In these situations, calm thinking and strong willpower can save lives. Some survivors say that remembering their families gave them hope and strength. Others explain that simple tools, like a flashlight or a rope, helped them stay safe until help arrived. Rescue teams also play an important role because they risk their own lives to save others. Survival stories teach us that bravery is not only about fighting danger but also about staying patient and focused. They remind us that courage comes in many forms, and ordinary people can become heroes when they refuse to give up.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about.....
a. mountain sports b. stories of survival and courage
c. building tools d. rescue team training
- The word arrived means.....
a. came b. built c. shouted d. lost
- The underlined word they refers to.....
a. survivors b. storms c. ropes d. flashlights

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What helped some survivors stay hopeful?

5. Why are rescue teams important?

6. Do you think courage is always necessary in life? Why?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was the main motivation of the characters when they secretly lowered a small boat into the sea?

a. To escape their enemies	b. To find treasure
c. To seek freedom	d. To explore new lands
2. What did the submarine do to escape the danger?

a. It dived deeper	b. It fought the monster
c. It surfaced slowly	d. It broke a path to the surface
3. How was life on the Nautilus?

a. Ordinary and boring	b. Exciting and unusual
c. Dangerous all the time	d. Lonely and frightening
4. Why do you think some sailors doubted the existence of the sea monster while others were determined to capture it?

a. Lack of evidence	b. Fear of the sea
c. Rivalry between crew	d. Curiosity and hope

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did the storm affect the companions' journey and what challenges did it present?

6. Conseil was torn between discovery and freedom. If you were in his place, which would you choose, and why?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The doctor said to me, "Take this medicine twice a day." (advised)
2. First, I went out then it rained. (After)
3. This is the guest. We interviewed him on TV. (whom)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I used to (bringing) my notebook.
2. She wondered if I (am) coming to the special museum festival.
3. The doctor (advise) the visitor to rest after walking through all museum halls.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Karim are talking about the sports day

Ahmed : Hey Karim, did you attend ①.....?

Karim : Yes! It was exciting. I really enjoyed the relay race.

Ahmed : ②.....

Karim : Yes, we did. Everyone was shouting and cheering for their teams.

Ahmed : I think sports events are great because ③.....

Karim : True. They also teach us discipline and teamwork.

Ahmed : ④.....

Karim : I agree. Next year, I want to take part in the long jump.

Ahmed : That's a good idea. ⑤.....

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

An adventure you had

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

1. Where were you?
2. What dangers did you face?
3. What lesson did you learn?

Test 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The suffix " _____ " gives the noun of the word "kind".
a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ness
- The word "silent" is the opposite of _____.
a. loud b. quiet c. active d. quick
- A _____ is a device used to see very small objects.
a. telescope b. microscope c. camera d. magnifier
- The students looked _____ to the trip.
a. to b. forward c. in d. on

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

local - spare - elderly - busy - voluntary

My friend and I are looking for some ① _____ work. We want to help ② _____ people. We are going to ask about ③ _____ community centers about reading for people who became old. We read a lot in our ④ _____ time, but we want to do something useful for other people.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Animals around the world survive in different environments because they have special adaptations. These adaptations help them find food, stay safe, and live in extreme weather. In cold regions, animals like polar bears have thick fur and layers of fat to keep warm. In deserts, camels can store water in **their** bodies and walk long distances under the hot sun. Some animals use color to hide from predators; for example, chameleons can change their skin color to **blend** with their surroundings. Other animals use speed, sharp senses, or strong legs to escape danger. Scientists study these adaptations to understand how animals interact with their environment. Learning about adaptations helps us protect endangered species and reminds us that every creature on Earth has a unique way of surviving.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is _____.
a. how animals find homes b. different animal adaptations
c. how scientists work d. desert life only

2. The word blend means
 a. sleep b. hide c. mix d. move
3. The underlined word their refers to
 a. chameleons b. camels c. scientists d. predators

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do scientists study animal adaptations?

2. How do polar bears survive cold weather?

3. In your opinion, which animal adaptation is most interesting? Why?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. How was the weather described during their escape attempt?
 a. Dangerous and stormy b. Calm and peaceful
 c. Clear and sunny d. Foggy and cloudy
2. Ned Land planned to
 a. explore the sea b. escape c. stay forever d. join Nemo
3. What did Aronnax write about the events in the story?
 a. Detailed scientific notes b. Personal diary
 c. Fictional story d. Newspaper report
4. How do you think Captain Nemo's silence about his past tells about his character and his relationship with the crew?
 a. He is secretive b. He is dishonest c. He is careless d. He is playful

B. Answer the following questions: (2 Marks)

5. How was life on the Nautilus?

6. If Captain Nemo had panicked, how might the crew's chances of survival have changed?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't follow the museum guide's instructions properly. (use)
2. "Why are some sarcophagi kept in climate-controlled rooms?" (already)
3. I understood the lesson easily because I studied it before. (already)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He promised (calling) me after visiting the museum.
2. The teacher asked us if we (understand) the lesson about ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics.
3. We (leave) home earlier; now we are late for the guided tour in the Grand Egyptian Museum.

7 Complete the following dialog:

A tourist is phoning a hotel to book a room

Receptionist: Good morning, can I help you?

Tourist : ①

Receptionist: Certainly. ②

Tourist : For three nights.

Receptionist: ③ ?

Tourist : Single, please ④ ?

Receptionist: Forty pounds a night.

Tourist : OK, ⑤ thank you.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A biography about a person in your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word remarkable is opposite in meaning to _____.
a. ordinary b. amazing c. special d. extraordinary
- The prefix "pre-" means _____.
a. before b. after c. again d. during
- The word "assist" means "to _____".
a. help b. ignore c. delay d. prevent
- She handed in her homework _____.
a. on time b. late c. slowly d. carelessly

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

encourage - visitors - plant - pollution - interested

To keep our environment clean, we must ① _____ some trees along the streets. It will help with ② _____ and also encourage more ③ _____ to our town. Who is ④ _____ in joining our project?

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Eating unhealthy food can damage a person's health. Fast food, sweets, and fried snacks contain a lot of sugar, salt, and fat. Eating **these** foods regularly can lead to weight gain, heart problems, and diabetes. Children and teenagers who eat unhealthy food may feel tired, weak, and less able to focus at school. Junk food also lacks important vitamins and minerals that the body needs to grow and stay healthy. People should try to eat more fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and protein. Drinking water instead of sugary drinks also improves health. Preparing meals at home is a good way to control what you eat. Healthy eating helps people feel energetic, prevents diseases, and supports growth. Making **small changes** in eating habits can have big results in improving life quality.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
a. Eating unhealthy food is harmful b. Fast food is tasty
c. Only adults need healthy food d. Sweets improve concentration
- The word "these" refers to:
a. Fruits and vegetables b. Fast food, sweets, and fried snacks
c. Water d. Protein

3. The phrase "small changes" means: -----
- a. Minor adjustments in habits b. Eating more junk food
- c. Drinking soda d. Avoiding exercise

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How does unhealthy food affect students?
-
5. What are healthier alternatives to junk food?
-
6. Why is preparing meals at home recommended?
-

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge -----
- a. Whale b. Sea monster c. Shark d. Giant squid
2. Ned Land became impatient because he longed for -----
- a. the sea b. freedom and fresh air
- c. freedom beneath the ocean d. the treasures of the sea
3. How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land?
- a. As a home b. As a prison c. As a danger d. As unimportant
4. What mystery about Nemo deepened as the story went on?
- a. His true name b. His origin
- c. His hidden treasures d. His invention

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did the companions feel when they finally reached safety?
-
6. What do you think Captain Nemo's silence about his past tells about his character and his relationship with the crew?
-

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I no longer stay up late (used to)
2. She was exhausted because she had worked for hours. (before)
3. The instructor said to the students, "Move quickly to the Tutankhamun gallery!" (ordered)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She enjoys (reads) about the mummies before bed.
2. I asked him when the report (be) completed about the newly discovered tomb.
3. He ordered the guards (stand) at attention during the royal sarcophagus display.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer introduces his new friend to Ayman.

Ayman : Hello, Tamer. How are you?

Tamer : ① What about you?

Ayman : I'm also fine, thank you. ②

Tamer : He is my friend Hany.

Ayman : ③ Hany.

Hany : Pleased to see you, Ayman.

Ayman : ④ ?

Tamer : I live in Sohag, but I moved to this school last week.

Ayman : I'm from Giza but I live in Sohag, now.

Tamer : Ok, we ⑤ to be late, Hurry up.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A biography of someone who has a problem

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- To get the adjective from the noun "friend" we add the suffix.....
 a. -ly b. -ship c. -er d. -ment
- The word thick is opposite in meaning to
 a. dense b. heavy c. thin d. wide
- The word "brave" means
 a. courageous b. cowardly c. afraid d. weak
- A/An is a person who travels to discover new places.
 a. explorer b. traveler c. student d. teacher

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

found - started - university - meetings - manager

Gamal got his job after he finished ① He ② working for the company ten years ago. He has been the ③ of the company since 2010. Gamal has ④ with people from different companies every day.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Stories travel from one place to another through books, films, and even conversations. A story that begins in a small village may later be shared in cities and then around the world. Some stories teach lessons about honesty or kindness, while others entertain us with adventure and mystery. When people share stories, they exchange ideas and learn about different ways of thinking. Today, digital platforms help stories spread faster than ever because anyone can write a short post, record a video, or create an animation. Some modern stories are based on old tales but are rewritten to suit new generations. Stories continue to move because people enjoy imagining new worlds and characters. They remind us that creativity is powerful and that simple words can connect millions of people.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The text mainly discusses
 a. how stories travel and spread b. how films are made
 c. how villages grow d. writing school reports
- The word shared means
 a. kept secret b. recorded c. deleted d. passed to others
- The underlined word they refers to
 a. films b. ideas c. stories d. cities

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do people enjoy sharing stories?

5. How do digital platforms help stories spread?

6. What kind of stories do you personally enjoy? Why?

Story**4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:**

1. What happened at dawn after the storm?

a. They reached the shore

b. The boat sank

c. They were captured

d. They turned back to the submarine

2. Professor Aronnax was invited to join the -----.

a. party

b. voyage

c. army

d. expedition

3. What can we learn from Captain Nemo's leadership in dangerous situations?

a. Courage

b. Wisdom

c. Fear

d. Selfishness

4. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose isolation instead of interacting with the world?

a. To protect his knowledge

b. To punish humanity

c. To explore freely

d. To hide treasures

B. Answer the following questions:

5. What did Aronnax write about the events in the story?

6. Nemo attacked warships without hesitation. Do you think this makes him a hero or a dangerous man? Why?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I no longer miss the guided tour at the museum.

(used to)

2. Why don't we take a guided night tour of the museum?

(She suggested)

3. The guide explained the significance of the statue. Students asked questions about it.

(which)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I didn't use to (studying) at night.
2. She asks her friend where she (live).
3. They requested us (not use) our phones during the tour.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar asks his friend, Yousif about his opinion.

Omar : Good evening, Yousif. Can I ask you some questions ?

Yousif : ① What do you want ?

Omar : I want to do voluntary work. ② ?

Yousif : You should join a charity.

Omar : ③ ?

Yousif : You can go there and fill In a form to Join them.

Omar : Do you know any charities in our neighborhood ?

Yousif : ④

Omar : Can you come with me ?

Yousif : ⑤

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A visit to an interesting place

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Where and when did you go? Who did you go with? | 3. What did you do? (2-3 things) |
| 2. How did you travel? | 5. Would you go again? |
| 4. How did you feel? | |

Test 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is a cart pulled by horses.
a. car b. chariot c. boat d. bike
2. The antonym of the word shelter is
a. protection b. refuge c. exposure d. friendly
3. To get the adjective from the noun "danger", we add the suffix
a. less b. ous c. ness d. ion
4. My room isn't clean as yours.
a. as b. so c. very d. a & b

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

plays - benches - play - fresh - facilities

There are many leisure activities and sports ① in my town. We all love our Town Club. It is really big. I usually ② handball with my friends. We also love our Town Park. It is full of wonderful trees and comfortable ③ It is a nice place where we can breathe ④ air. I sometimes play chess there.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Leadership and teamwork are important skills in school, work, and daily life. A good leader is someone who listens to others, makes fair decisions, and helps the team stay organized. Teamwork means that every member shares ideas, respects different opinions, and works toward the same goal. In group projects, students learn how to divide tasks based on each person's strengths. Sports teams also show strong teamwork because players depend on one another to succeed. Leaders are not always the oldest or the strongest; sometimes quiet students become great leaders because they plan carefully and think before acting. When leadership and teamwork come together, groups can solve problems faster and achieve better results. These skills prepare young people for a successful future.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The text is mainly about
a. school rules b. leadership and teamwork
c. famous leaders d. sports competitions
2. The word strengths means
a. problems b. abilities c. choices d. feelings
3. The underlined word they refers to
a. players b. groups c. young people d. leaders

Answer the following questions:

4. What makes a good leader?

5. How do group projects help students learn teamwork?

6. Do you think teamwork is more important than working alone? Explain.

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who was the inventor of the Nautilus mentioned in the text?
a. Aronnax b. Captain Nemo c. Conseil d. Ned Land
2. Captain Nemo spoke passionately against
a. wealth b. injustice c. education d. discovery
3. How did the companions feel when they finally reached safety?
a. Relieved b. Excited c. Frustrated d. Angry
4. If you were a crew member, how would you have reacted to the dangers described in the text?
a. Panic b. Remain calm c. Fight d. Escape

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Why was Ned Land so restless and angry about being aboard the ship?

6. Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why or why not?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father walked to work every morning. (used)
2. I went out as soon as I had my breakfast (till)
3. The doctor said to me, "Take this medicine after meals." (advised)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (not stay) up any longer .
2. My father started to work in this company (for) 2020.
3. Yesterday, Ramiz (can) win the race.

7 Complete the following dialog:

A tourist is phoning a hotel to book a room

Receptionist : Good morning, can I help you?

Tourist : ①

Receptionist : Certainly. ②

Tourist : For three nights.

Receptionist : ③

Tourist : Single, please ④

Receptionist : Four hundred pounds a night.

Tourist : OK, ①thank you.

Receptionist : You are welcome.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Your personal leadership goal

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية :

1. What you have been doing to develop leadership skills.
2. Why this goal is important to you.
3. Your plan to achieve it.
4. How it will help your future

Test 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The antonym of the word effective is
 a. powerful b. successful c. ineffective d. honor
- are large stone structures in temples or buildings.
 a. Tombs b. Bombs c. Maps d. Columns
- To get the noun from the verb "travel", we add the suffix ...
 a. ed b. or c. er d. al
- The family's long car to Mersa Matrouh took 6 hours.
 a. money b. journey c. turkey d. alley

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

with - provides - more - including - most

New York City is one of the largest cities in the world. Manhattan is the ① popular part of New York ② tourists and has many interesting sights. There is a large number of businesses in this area of the city, ③ the head offices of some of the world's leading companies. New York's metro ④ transport for the city.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Friendship is one of the greatest gifts a person can have. A true friend is someone who stands by you in both good and difficult times. They support you when you feel sad and celebrate your success when you achieve something important. Real friends don't only share fun moments; they also give honest advice when you make mistakes. This advice might not always be pleasant, but it helps you grow and become a better person. A true friend listens carefully when you talk and respects your feelings even if they don't fully agree with you. They don't talk behind your back or leave you when you face challenges. Instead, they offer help, time, and understanding. Many people may come and go in your life, but true friends remain close because their friendship is built on trust and loyalty. That is why choosing your friends wisely can influence your future in a positive way.

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 a. How to solve problems with friends b. Why true friendship is valuable
 c. Ways to celebrate success d. How to become famous

2. The underlined word "they" refers to
 a. moments b. feelings c. true friends d. challenges
3. The word "loyalty" most likely means
 a. being late b. being honest and faithful
 c. being angry d. being surprised

Answer the following questions:

4. Why does a true friend give honest advice?

5. What do true friends do when you face challenges?

6. According to the text, why should you choose your friends wisely?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What was the main risk faced by Captain Nemo and his crew?
 a. A dangerous sea monster b. Cold weather
 c. A submarine breakdown d. Warships
2. Conseil remained between scientific discovery and his master's choice.
 a. torn b. angry c. sad d. determined
3. How did the storm affect the companions' journey and what challenges did it present?
 a. Delayed them b. Made them stronger
 c. Protected them d. Confused them
4. Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his
 a. excitement b. curiosity c. fear d. desire for freedom

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did Professor Aronnax react to the situation on the Nautilus, and why?

6. If you were a crew member, how would you have reacted to the dangers described in the text?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I understood the hieroglyphs easily because I had studied them before. (already)
2. The museum director said, "Send the exhibition plan by Wednesday." (told)
3. "How were the pharaohs' golden masks preserved?" (asked)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She finished (clean) the museum models in the exhibition hall.
2. He wanted to know if I (can) help him with his project.
3. She (apologize) for touching the fragile relic.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Tarek is making a complaint.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Tarek : Yes, ①

Assistant : Oh, dear. ② ..?

Tarek : I ordered a toaster from your website, but the delivery takes three days and I'm still waiting!

Assistant : ③ ..?

Tarek : Yes, it's Tarek, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8.

Assistant : I'll call the delivery company.

Tarek : ④ me back today, please?

Assistant : Yes, of course.

Tarek : ⑤

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A visit to an interesting place

Test 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mike found a challenging job as a computer programmer. "Challenging" is opposite in meaning to.....
 a. difficult b. simple c. stressed d. strong
- The prefix re- in rewrite means.....
 a. before b. not c. again d. without
- The Amazon is a very big and wet.....
 a. rainforest b. ocean c. galaxy d. desert
- She listens to a..... about funny stories while she drives to work.
 a. broadcast b. forecast c. contract d. podcast

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

was able -connect - hearing - sign - communicate

My name is Tarek. My best friend is called Omar. He has ①..... problems. We can ②..... with each other using ③..... language. It was difficult for me to learn at first, but I ④..... to learn it. I joined a class for teaching this kind of language and I'm really happy that we understand each other.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Choosing the wrong friends can have a strong negative effect on a person's life. Bad friends often encourage harmful habits such as lying, wasting time, or skipping important responsibilities. They may make poor choices and expect you to follow them without thinking. A bad friend usually cares only about having fun, even if it causes problems for others. They might also pressure you to do things you know are wrong because they want to feel accepted. Instead of supporting you, they criticize your goals or make you feel small. Over time, being around such people can weaken your confidence and distract you from your studies or future plans. Unlike true friends, bad friends disappear when you need help or when you face difficulties. They only stay when everything is easy. That is why it is important to think carefully before choosing the people you spend your time with. Good friends build your future, but bad ones can destroy it.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 a. How to make new friends b. Why bad friends are dangerous
 c. How to solve school problems d. Why fun is important

2. The pronoun "they" in the text refers to -----
 a. problems b. good friends c. bad friends d. goals
3. The word "pressure" most likely means:
 a. Encourage strongly b. Push someone to do something
 c. Help someone relax d. Teach someone politely

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why can bad friends affect your future?

5. What do bad friends do when you face difficulties?

6. How can bad friends weaken your confidence?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What chance for escape did Ned Land see near Europe?
 a. Using the Nautilus b. Lowering a small boat into the sea
 c. Swimming directly to shore d. Signaling a warship
2. Nemo declared that the sea, not -----, was his only homeland.
 a. the land b. the ocean c. the city d. civilization
3. What was their first feeling when reaching land?
 a. Disappointment b. Relief and stability c. Fear of the sea d. Confusion
4. How long had they been away from land?
 a. A few days b. Many months c. One week d. Several hours

B. Answer the following questions: (2 Marks)

5. Describe the dangers faced by the companions during their final escape.
6. How does the ending reflect the theme of freedom versus curiosity?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I like reading about the ancient Egyptian gods in my free time. (to read)
2. My mother no longer helps me in my homework (used to)
3. The teacher said, "Close your books." (told)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He refused (wait) for us at the museum entrance.
2. I asked him where he (spend) his weekend .
3. The teacher told the students (handed) in their assignments.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer and a booking clerk at a booking office.

Clerk : What can I do for you, sir?

Tamer : ① to Paris.

Clerk : Single or return, sir?

Tamer : ②

Clerk : ③ ?

Tamer : First class.

Clerk : When would you like to travel, by day or at night?

Tamer : ④

Clerk : There's a flight at 2 a.m. Is that suitable for you? Is that right for you?

Tamer : Yes, it is. Make the reservation, please. ⑤ ?

Clerk : It's 800 \$, sir.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

How to use your computer usefully

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The synonym of the word dangerous is
a. risky b. safe c. modern d. pleased
- We add the prefix "....." to the word expected to give the opposite .
a. dis- b. ir- c. un- d. anti-
- The firefighter showed great during the rescue.
a. bravery b. cowardice c. fear d. death
- A good inspires their team and guides them to success.
a. patient b. teamwork c. sailing d. leader

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

website - was - delivery - had - good

Last month, I bought a kettle from an online ① I waited for three weeks for ② When the kettle arrived, it ③ broken. I made a complaint to send it back and get another one. They sent me a ④ kettle and took the broken one. They felt sorry about that mistake. I was happy because the problem was solved

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Teamwork is very important in schools, workplaces, and communities. When people work together, **they** can achieve more than they could alone. Teamwork helps develop communication skills, respect, and **cooperation**. Each member can contribute their strengths and support others' weaknesses. Good teams plan tasks, share responsibilities, and solve problems together. Conflicts may happen, but handling them respectfully strengthens the group. Teamwork also encourages creativity because people exchange ideas and suggest solutions. Students who participate in group projects learn valuable life skills that help them in future careers. In addition, working in teams makes tasks more enjoyable and reduces stress. Learning to work with others effectively is an essential skill for success in life. Whether in school, sports, or work, teamwork helps people achieve common goals faster and more efficiently.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
a. Teamwork is unnecessary
b. Teamwork helps people achieve goals together
c. Only leaders need teamwork
d. Conflicts cannot be solved

2. The pronoun "they" refers to:
 - a. People in a team b. Conflicts c. Tasks d. Schools
3. The word "cooperation" most likely means:
 - a. Working together b. Ignoring problems
 - c. Being creative alone d. Starting conflicts

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How does teamwork help creativity?
.....
5. Why is teamwork important for students?
.....
6. How should conflicts be handled in a team?
.....

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Aronnax write after the voyage?
 - a. Only a diary
 - b. An account of the sea's wonders and dangers
 - c. A guidebook to Europe
 - d. A map of warships
2. What did Aronnax never discover about Nemo?
 - a. His intelligence b. The full truth about his past
 - c. His submarine design d. His treasures
3. What lesson does the story emphasize?
 - a. Knowledge is useless
 - b. Curiosity and knowledge are powerful
 - c. The sea is simple
 - d. Humans are always safe
4. How does ambition mixed with sorrow affect a person, according to the story?
 - a. It leads to isolation. b. It brings happiness.
 - c. It encourages friendship. d. It guarantees success.

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How does Aronnax's reflection at the end connect to the broader themes of the story?
.....
6. Do you think the Nautilus symbolizes human ambition or isolation? Why?
.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I missed the guided tour at the museum. (I wish)
2. Why don't we take a guided night tour of the museum? (She suggested)
3. The curator explained the significance of the statues. Students asked questions about it. (which)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. However, when I _____ (arrive) at the airport, I discovered that I _____ (forget) my ID at home!
2. I _____ (miss) my flight and _____ (have to) reorganize my whole schedule. It _____ (turn out) that this mistake _____ (lead) to an even more surprising adventure.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

Heba : ① _____ that.

Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new job, but she couldn't go.

Heba : It's a ② _____.

Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed.

Heba : ③ _____ difficult!

Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!

Heba : ④ _____! I'm so happy for her.

Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.

Heba : Don't worry . I'm sure she ⑤ _____.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

The importance of hard work

Test 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Our visit to the zoo is unforgettable. "Unforgettable" is similar in meaning to
 a. boring b. favourite c. memorable d. strong
- The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the word "comfort".
 a. -ment b. -able c. -ship d. -ion
- The Olympic Games in Greece more than 2,700 years ago.
 a. appeared b. opened c. started d. rose
- are people who watch or listen and then decide who wins.
 a. Campaigns b. Judges c. Rulers d. Reigns

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

surprised - present - gave - sad - results

We had our exams two weeks ago. I got really good 1, I was 2 and happy. The teacher 3 me a prize. Father will buy me a 4

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Smoking is very harmful to health. Cigarettes contain many chemicals that can damage the lungs, heart, and other organs. People who smoke often cough, feel tired, and may get serious diseases such as lung cancer or heart problems. Secondhand smoke is also dangerous because it affects people around the smoker, especially children. Some smokers think smoking reduces stress, but in reality, it creates more health problems in the long term. **Quitting** smoking is not easy, but it improves life quality and increases life expectancy. Governments and health organizations warn people about smoking and its dangers through campaigns and advertisements. Friends and family can also help smokers stop by encouraging them to live a healthier life. Choosing to avoid cigarettes protects both the smoker and the people around them. Healthy habits, like eating well and exercising, can replace smoking and make life happier.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 a. Smoking is harmful and should be avoided
 b. Smoking reduces stress completely
 c. Smoking is fun and healthy
 d. Children like to smoke

2. The pronoun "it" refers to
 a. Smoking b. Cigarettes c. Stress d. Life
3. The word "quitting" most likely means:
 a. Starting something new b. Stopping smoking
 c. Smoking more d. Feeling tired

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why is smoking dangerous to others?

5. What happens to smokers' health over time?

6. How can people replace smoking with healthy habits?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Aronnax see through the windows of the Nautilus?
 a. Birds and mountains b. Coral reefs, fish, and shipwrecks
 c. Desert sands d. Forests and animals
2. What special equipment did Nemo provide for diving?
 a. Life jackets b. Diving suits
 c. Submarine wheels d. Oxygen tanks
3. What did the underwater explorations reveal?
 a. Only empty seas
 b. Sunken cities and underwater forests
 c. Friendly sea creatures only
 d. Volcanoes above water
4. How did Conseil contribute to the journey?
 a. He navigated the ship
 b. He named marine creatures accurately
 c. He fought warships
 d. He built the submarine

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Describe how the underwater world amazed Aronnax.

6. How does the story show the contrast between scientific curiosity and personal freedom?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. The guide said, "Do not touch the ancient papyrus scrolls." (told)
2. That is the time. We met our teacher for the first time then. (when)
3. I used to watch cartoon films when I was younger (any omre)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They wondered when he (reply) to their messages about the field trip.
2. He ordered the soldier (stand) guard near the ancient royal artifacts.
3. By the time we (reach) the museum, it had got completely dark.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Fatma is at school with her friend Lamia

Fatma : You look ①

Lamia : Yes, I am very worried.

Fatma : ②

Lamia : I'm afraid that I can't find my book.

Fatma : ③ Is this your book?

Lamia : Yes, it is. Thank you! We're discussing the book in my book club.

④

Fatma : yes, I would love to come. Thank you for inviting me.

Lamia : ⑤

Fatma : OK. I'll be there at ⑥

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A short story about a holiday that you enjoyed a lot

Test 13

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The synonym of the word skill is
a. ability b. failure c. weakness d. unsafe
- To get the adjective of the word "success", we add the suffix "....."
a. -ful b. -able c. -ship d. -er
- People in Europe practiced such as archery and fencing.
a. training b. exercising c. preparing d. drilling
- A /An is a plan to share a message and reach a goal.
a. trade b. campaign c. budget d. wealth

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

teaching - taught - tasks - proud - role

I do not think any word or sentence can describe mother. My mother is my
 ① model. She has ② me to respect people. I feel safe
 because she is always by my side. My mother always helps me with my homework
 and other school ③ She organizes everything in my life. I am
 ④ of my mother.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Reading is an important skill for everyone. It helps people learn new information, improve their vocabulary, and think critically. Students who read regularly perform better at school because they understand lessons more easily. Reading also stimulates the imagination and allows people to experience new ideas and cultures. Books, magazines, and online articles can all provide valuable knowledge. In addition, reading helps reduce stress by giving the mind a break from daily problems. Parents and teachers should encourage children to read from a young age to build strong reading habits. Even reading for a few minutes each day can improve focus and memory. A person who reads often becomes more confident and successful in life. Therefore, reading is not only enjoyable but also necessary for personal growth and learning.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
a. Reading is fun and important for learning
b. Reading is a waste of time
c. Only students need to read
d. Writing is more important than reading

2. The word "it" refers to.....
 a. school b. reading c. books d. knowledge
3. The phrase "stimulates the imagination" means.....
 a. Helps the mind think creatively b. Makes people tired
 c. Reduces vocabulary d. Causes problems

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How does reading help students at school?

.....

5. What types of materials can people read for knowledge?

.....

6. How does reading reduce stress?

.....

Story

4 A. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who was Captain Nemo?
 a. A mysterious submarine commander b. A merchant sailor
 c. A famous pirate d. A marine biologist
2. What restriction did Nemo place on his guests?
 a. They could explore the land freely b. They could never return to land
 c. They had to leave immediately d. They could only stay for one day
3. How did Ned Land feel about life on the Nautilus?
 a. Excited and peaceful b. Angry and longing for freedom
 c. Curious about the ocean d. Indifferent to adventures
4. What did the Nautilus contain?
 a. Only bedrooms b. A floating palace with library and museum
 c. Fishing tools d. A small rowboat

B. Answer the following questions:

5. How did Aronnax's curiosity influence his decisions on the Nautilus?

.....

6. Why do you think Ned Land could not appreciate the wonders of the submarine?

.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I no longer waste my time. (used to)
2. The coach said to the players, "Run faster!" (ordered)
3. The teacher explained the tradition. Students asked about it. (which)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mr. Khaled asked(that) I had done my homework.
2. He promised (calling) me after exploring the new exhibition wing.
3. The teacher asked us if we (understand) the history of the artifacts displayed.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sama and Rawan are talking about the Grand Egyptian Museum

Sama : Have you ever visited the Grand Egyptian Museum?

Rawan : ①

Sama : ②?

Rawan : I went there last year with my family.

Sama : ③

Rawan : Because we wanted to see the monuments of King Tutankhamun.

Sama : Did you enjoy the visit?

Rawan : ④ It was amazing.

Sama : ⑤

Rawan : Thank you. I hope you visit it soon.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

How you help people in your community

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 14

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The antonym of the word empathy is
 a. understanding b. indifference c. compassion d. inspiration
- To get the noun from the verb "survive", we add the suffix ".....".
 a. -tion b. -ful c. -al d. -able
- A car uses both gasoline and electricity.
 a. fast b. new c. hybrid d. small
- Athletes from more than 200 come together to compete.
 a. nations b. friends c. games d. rings

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

museums - busy - life - visit - visited

I have lived in a village in the south of Egypt all my ① I have never been to another country, but last years I ② Cairo with my uncle and my cousins. It was so big and ③, but it was fun. We went to lots of ④ because I am interested in history.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Exercise is essential for a healthy life. People who exercise regularly feel stronger, more energetic, and happier. Physical activity strengthens the heart, muscles, and bones, and helps maintain a healthy weight. It also reduces the risk of many diseases, such as diabetes and high blood pressure. Exercise is not only good for the body but also for the mind. It improves focus, memory, and mood. Simple activities like walking, running, swimming, or playing sports can make a big difference. Schools should encourage students to join sports clubs and physical education classes. Even spending just thirty minutes a day on exercise can improve overall health. Regular exercise helps people sleep better and increases their confidence. Developing a daily exercise routine is one of the best ways to lead a long, healthy, and happy life.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 a. Exercise is harmful
 b. Exercise improves health and happiness
 c. Only athletes need exercise
 d. Exercise is boring

2. The word "it" refers to
 a. Physical activity b. School c. Sports clubs d. Confidence
3. The word "routine" most likely means
 a. a regular habit b. a special game
 c. a one-time activity d. a type of food

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How does exercise benefit the body?

5. How does exercise help the mind?

6. How much daily exercise is suggested in the text?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did sailors report seeing in the mid-nineteenth century?
 a. A flying bird b. A huge sea monster
 c. A lost island d. A mysterious storm
2. Who joined Professor Aronnax on the voyage?
 a. Captain Nemo b. Conseil and Ned Land
 c. A French soldier d. Newspaper reporters
3. What happened when the "monster" attacked the ship?
 a. They escaped immediately
 b. Aronnax and companions were thrown into the sea
 c. It sank without resistance
 d. The crew captured it
4. What was revealed about the "monster"?
 a. It was a whale b. It was a giant squid
 c. It was a man-made submarine d. It was a sea dragon

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Explain why Professor Aronnax decided to join the voyage despite the risks.

6. Do you think chasing the "monster" was justified? Why or why not?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. After I had eaten, I went out (till)
2. My mother said, "Help your brother with his homework." (asked)
3. A festival is a special event. People celebrate it every year. (when)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Riham came late because she (miss) the bus.
2. Ali kept (asks) questions about the newly discovered mummy case.
3. Hatem wanted to know if he (can) help him with the museum project.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sama is asking Rawan about her personal experiences.

Sama : Have you ever got a prize?

Rawan : ①

sama : ②?

Rawan : I got it two years ago.

Sama : ③?

Rawan : Because I wrote a story.

Sama : Did you get any other prizes?

Rawan : ④ a medal in karate.

Sama : ⑤

Rawan : It's kind of you.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A Review about Your City

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The antonym of the word achievement is _____.
 a. success b. failure c. greatness d. development
- To get the opposite of the adjective "credible", we add the _____ "in".
 a. suffix b. synonym c. antonym d. prefix
- Athletes are expected to compete fairly and show _____ to others.
 a. friendship b. respect c. victory d. medals
- Sailors reported seeing a huge _____ moving faster than whales.
 a. boat b. monster c. fish d. ship

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

eaten - ridden - tent - rode - travelled

I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most people in the class have ① _____ Chinese food. Not many people have ② _____ a horse or slept in a ③ _____. Even fewer people have snorkelled. Most people in the class have never ④ _____ by plane.

3 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Hard work is the key to success in any field. People who work hard consistently reach their goals and achieve their dreams. Success does not come easily; it requires effort, patience, and **dedication**. Students who study regularly and practice skills improve their knowledge and abilities. Athletes who train every day get stronger and better at their sport. Hard work also teaches responsibility, discipline, and time management. Even when results take time to appear, the effort is never wasted. People who give up easily often fail, while those who keep trying succeed in the long run. Hard work builds self-confidence because people know **they** have earned their achievements. Friends and family notice the results, which encourages a person to continue working hard. In short, consistent effort is the secret to achieving great things in life.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- What is the main idea of the text?
 a. Hard work leads to success
 b. Success comes easily
 c. Students should relax
 d. Friends are more important than work

2. The word "they" refers to
 a. results b. students c. people who keep trying d. friends
3. The word "dedication" most likely means
 a. strong commitment b. relaxing
 c. being tired d. giving up

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What qualities does hard work teach?

5. Why do some people fail according to the text?

6. How does hard work affect confidence?

Story

4 A: Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following did Nemo consider his homeland?
 a. The city b. The sea c. Europe d. The desert
2. What kinds of treasures did Nemo collect?
 a. Modern paintings b. Pearls, gold, and ancient artifacts
 c. Land maps d. Jewelry from friends
3. How did life on the Nautilus affect the companions' perception of the ocean?
 a. It became mundane b. Filled with wonders and dangers
 c. Only scary d. Only peaceful
4. How did the submarine operate?
 a. Steam engines b. Electricity c. Wind power d. Human rowing

B. Answer the following questions:

5. Explain how the ocean is depicted as both beautiful and dangerous.

6. How did Nemo's character influence the companions' understanding of life under the sea?

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. After I had left the museum late, I missed the shuttle back. (before)
2. My mother said, "Help your sister organize her sketchbook notes." (asked)
3. This is the archaeologist. We interviewed him in the museum documentary. (whom)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He looks exhausted. He (go) to the Pharaoh's Hall earlier last night for the special late tour.
2. He refused (wait) for us near the statue chamber.
3. I (not used to) tell lies.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed is talking to Omar who has left his job.

Ahmed : You look so sad. ①

Omar : ②

Ahmed : Oh, dear! ③

Omar : As the manager is always unkind to me.

Ahmed : When did you leave your job ?

Omar : ④

Ahmed : What will you do then ?

Omar : ⑤

Ahmed : I hope you'll find another job soon.

Omar : That's very kind from you.

8 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A sports tournament

(verb)
(noun)
(base form)
(past tense)

Al Azhar 1 Test

A: Language Function

1 Finish the following dialog:

Ali is talking to his brother Adel who spends much time on social media

Ali : Where are you , Adel ?

Adel : ①

Ali : ②

Adel : I am chatting with my friend.

Ali : Have you done your homework?

Adel : ③

yet .

Ali : You should care about your lessons more.

Adel : Of course I will do it my brother.

B: Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- This bird is very in the northern regions.
a. familiar b. local c. widespread d. common
- The word tradition is closest in meaning to
a. custom b. practice c. ritual d. ceremony
- The manager asked him why late again.
a. he was b. was he c. he is d. is he
- The sign told people on the grass.
a. not walking b. not to walk c. to not walk d. don't walk

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

student - farmer - village - city - peaceful

I have lived in a ① in the south of Egypt. The place is wonderful and ② I don't like the crowdedness of the ③ Living in countryside is healthy. I'm a ④ in a prep school.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- The boy is my cousin. He plays football. (who)
- I used to play so much (don't)
- I like reading about the ancient Egyptian . (to read)
- The doctor said to me, "Take this medicine twice a day. (advised)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One of the greatest achievements in the human life is the development of communications. Imagine that once in the past there was no phones, e-mail text, messages or even telegrams. Man started to develop and invent new ways to communicate. One of the oldest ways is using the birds Like pigeons. But it wasn't before 100 BCE that the Chinese invented paper but this didn't help enough as they carried messages to different places on foot or on the back of horses. In 1850 telegrams made things better and sending messages were internationally. In 1972 Roy Tomlinson invented emails and all communications take seconds to reach.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How was the communication around 1835?

.....

2. What's the passage about?

.....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to

a. paper

b. birds

c. phones

d. Chinese

4. In the past people used to communicate.

a. the internet

b. emails

c. pigeons

d. mobile phones

d. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 4 sentences on:

Your last visit to the zoo

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al Azhar 2 Test

A: Language Function

1 Finish the following dialog:

Rasha is making a complaint about a coffee machine that she has bought

Rasha : Hello ! Can I speak to the manager, please?

Assistant: Yes , of course. ①

Rasha : I have bought a coffee machine and I want to make a complaint.

Assistant: ②

Rasha : It doesn't work well.

Assistant: Did you read the instructions well?

Rasha : ③

Assistant: Sorry , give me your address and your phone number and I will send you another one.

Rasha : Thank you.

B: Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A is a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature.
a. voyage b. tomb c. safari d. flight
- The synonym of harmony is
a. balance b. peace c. unity d. calmness
- We agreed earlier next time to avoid traffic.
a. to leaving b. leaving c. to leave d. to leaving
- I went to sleep I had finished my homework .
a. before b. till c. after d. while

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

much - to - both - are - spare

My friend and I ① looking for some voluntary work. We want ② help elderly people or young children. We ③ like little children. We read a lot in our ④ time

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Re-write the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- First , he apologized , then we accepted. (till)
- Can the security staff guard the museum for long hours? (wondered)
- Where did she live when she was a child? (use)
- He didn't come with us to the wedding. (refused)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Many young people choose their favorite football teams for different reasons, but supporting Al-Ahly is truly special. Al-Ahly has a long history of success and millions of loyal fans. The club teaches its supporters the values of patience, teamwork, and determination. When you support Al-Ahly, you become part of a big family that stands together in victory and defeat. The team always works hard to make its fans proud. Al-Ahly also represents national pride because it has won many local and international titles. For many people, being an Ahly supporter is more than just football; it's a way of life filled with passion and excitement.

A: Answer the following questions .

1. Why do Ahly fans feel like one family?

.....

2. What makes supporting Al-Ahly more than just football?

.....

B: Choose the correct answer .

3. Al-Ahly teaches its fans the value of

a. fear b. teamwork c. weakness d. laziness

4. People admire Al-Ahly mainly because of its

a. short history b. small fan base
c. great achievements d. new stadium

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 4 sentences on:

A sports event.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al Azhar 3 Test

A: Language Function

1 Finish the following dialog:

Khalid and Fawzi are talking about going the Space Exhibition.

Khaled: Hi Fawzi. Would you like to come to the Space Exhibition tomorrow? My dad is taking me

Fawzi: Yes, please! What time does it start?

Khaled: ① We're going by metro.

Fawzi: ②?

Khaled: The first metro train leaves at 8.00 and arrives at 8.30.

Fawzi: That's an hour before the exhibition starts!

Khaled: Perhaps we can leave later.

Fawzi: What time does the exhibition finish?

Khaled: It finishes at 1:00 p.m.

Fawzi: OK. ③?

Khaled: Yes, one leaves at 1:15 p.m. and arrives at 4:00, so we can get back home early.

Fawzi: Great! Let's take that.

B: Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- play means treating others honestly in games.
a. Fair b. Pair c. Role d. Fun
- The movie was so that it made everyone cry.
a. effective b. motivated c. emotional d. clear
- The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the word "danger".
a. -ous b. -able c. -ship d. -ion
- The opposite of the word "inspire" is
a. discourage b. support c. help d. encourage

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

carpets - colourful - history - look - looking

Egypt has a long ① of making beautiful ② These

③ carpets will ④ nice in any house.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Re-write the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Where did your father live when he was a child? (use)
2. My mother said, "Help your sister organize her sketchbook notes." (asked)
3. This is the archaeologist. We interviewed him in the museum documentary. (whom)
4. I didn't sleep until I had finished my homework. (After)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Umar Ibn Al-Khattab was the second caliph of Islam and one of the strongest supporters of the Prophet ﷺ. He was famous for his powerful personality, fairness, and strict sense of justice. When Umar became caliph, he worked hard to protect the weak and ensure that everyone received their rights. He expanded the Islamic state and organized many important systems, such as courts and security. Umar lived a simple life and always cared about the poor. His leadership made the Muslim community stronger and more united. He is remembered as one of the greatest leaders in Islamic history.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Umar care deeply about the poor?
.....
2. How did Umar strengthen the Islamic state?
.....

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Umar was famous for his sense of
a. injustice b. confusion c. justice d. carelessness
4. Umar worked hard to protect
a. the weak b. only the rich c. himself d. foreign leaders

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 4 sentences on:

A custom in your family or country

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....